A·FIRST·LATIN·BOOK

HALE

A BRIEF ON

Hale's First Latin Book

The "biography of a book" is the
biography of an IDEA. This is doubly
true of any book that pretends to be
a contribution to a subject or to be
in any sense creative. The success-
ful school books of the past have been,
almost without exception, books that
embodied an IDEA, and that had a long
existence previous to being presented
to the public.

The opening of the biography of
Dr. Hale's "A First Latin Book" dates
back to the time when he was Professor
of Latin in Harvard University. The
second chapter of the biography was
written when he was Head of the De-
partment of Latin at Cornell Univer-
sity; the third chapter, while Head of
the Latin Department of the University
of Chicago; the fourth and last chapter,
while he was teaching a class of first
year boys and girls at the University
High School and taking his own son
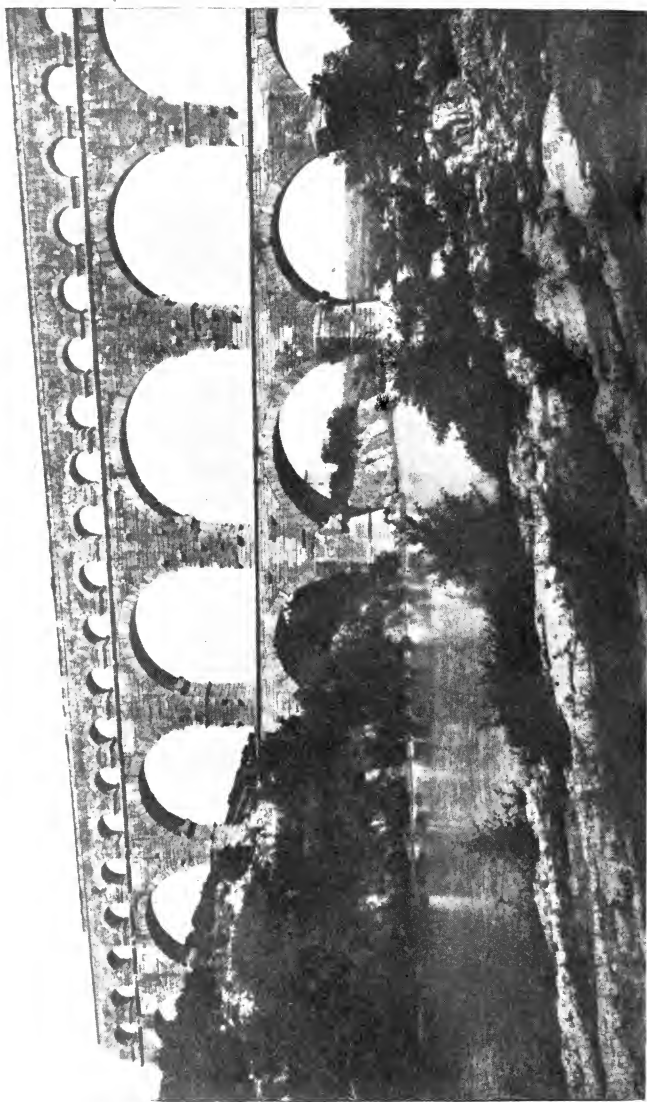through his preparatory Latin course.

REMAINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT NEAR NÎMES, IN SOUTHERN FRANCE

Probably built about 19 B.C. Lower arcade now serves as a bridge (Pont du Gard)

A
FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM GARDNER HALE

PROFESSOR AND HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO AND PROFESSOR OF
THE TEACHING OF LATIN IN THE
SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
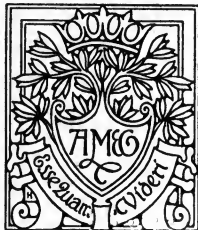
Prodi, parve liber.   Precor ut te discipulusque
    Atque magister ament, quantum ego amavi et amo.

GIFT

PREFACE

This book is the product of class-room experience and practice, at my own hands and those of many other teachers who have used it in mimeographed form, and, in the present year, in advance sheets. This is the fifth revision of the original draft.

The method employed in the past in teaching beginners in Latin has been either to make them attack a piece of continuous narrative, written for mature Roman readers, and necessarily without grammatical arrangement, or to furnish them with exercises made up in the main of short bits, without connection. But let us suppose, now, that we could command the services of some ancient Roman teacher. What should we tell him that we wanted for a First Latin Book, or,— and this is the same thing,— what would he, if a good and practical teacher, think of on his own account? A beginning with easy words, standing for familiar ideas connected with home life. The opening sentences should be simple and interesting,— about the dinner, good or bad, the servants, the boy and girl friends, and the like. A fruitful topic, next, would be the school, with its work and play. In time the sentences would group themselves into paragraphs, and paragraphs into stories, making up the Reading Matter of a lesson, and setting the Roman before the student as a living being belonging to a living people.

Then the story would become a "serial" from lesson to lesson, still remaining natural and interesting, and thus easy to read and to remember. For its subject, a hint might be taken from Horace's mimic battle (Letters, I, XVIII, 58–64), in which boys delighted to fight Actium over again, "till victory crowned the one side or the other." If the teacher should decide to have the boys in his classes read and write accounts of a mimic war, he would naturally use many of the words and phrases in a great general's story of his conquest of Gaul. He could depend upon the war-interest to help him in the teaching of a syntax and vocabulary fitted to the later needs of his students; and, every-

where, the presence of a *context*, a *situation*, would make both the force of the construction and the meaning of the words easier.

This book is an attempt to supply just such a lack.

Some may object to modern Latin. But all beginner's books (except those which start with Caesar, who certainly did not have beginners in mind) are made up of modern Latin. Even the occasional Caesar sentences are rewritten. Which is better from a modern, a continuous story, or incoherent bits?

I have tried to lead my readers by a carefully graded road to the lower levels of Caesar. I have sought to interest them by plain ideas plainly stated in easy Latin, and woven at the earliest possible moment into a connected narrative. There is not a word about Caesar,—the whole war is a boys' affair. Then, when forms and constructions have been learned, Caesar appears, not as a writer of a school-book, but as a vigorous and effective person, dramatically rescuing the remains of his army and saving the situation. With few and slight changes the story is in his own words. The reading of this episode is likely to leave the student with a taste for more.

The attention of teachers is called to the following:

Vocabulary. In spite of its starting in simple affairs of home life, 91½ per cent. of the moderate but sufficient vocabulary of 961 words are from the Gallic War, and cover the most important words. So large a proportion has never before been reached. In this reckoning, groups like *bonus, melior, optimus*, count as one. Verbs like *amō, certō, clāmō, currō, fīdō, legō, mūtō, rumpō, suādeō*, are counted as non-Caesarian, though appearing in compounds in Caesar, and thereby demanding all the more that they be inserted. Of the total number of non-Caesarian words, namely 82, 69 appear in the vocabularies of our texts of Cicero or Virgil, or both, leaving only 13 words in this book[1] that are not in High School Latin. It would hardly be possible to go farther than this, and still preserve a normal and natural vocabulary.

Repetition. In the first forty-eight Lessons (after the first three, in which repetition of words without identity of sentences is at points difficult), every new word is used in two successive Lessons at

---

[1] They are *amīca, āthlēta, Capreae, coqua, exemplar, herī, impigrē* (but *piger* and *impiger* occur), *Iūlia, lapillus, Pompeī*, and *schola*.

least, besides reappearing later. This feature, which is new, would appear to be an indispensable one.

Organization of Vocabulary. Words closely connected are put, as far as possible, in the same Lesson, or in Lessons not far apart. Thus in §345 are given *iungō* and *cōiungō; optimus* and *optimē; prior, prius* and *priusquam; suādeō* and *suāvis.* In Lesson XLIX, *optō* is given, to make it easy for the student to understand and remember the term Optative Subjunctive in Lesson L.

English Vocabulary. The English vocabulary is of substantially the same length as the Latin — likewise a novel feature. The student knows his Latin words better, if he has used them from both directions. Principal Parts are given for all verbs, just as genitives are given for nouns. The purpose is to afford the student every opportunity to make his knowledge certain by the repeating of impressions. The same holds for the mention of the more troublesome constructions.

Forms. The forms are all given in the body of the book (except the unimportant list of numerals), and never in a mass, unless the parts of the mass are alike. There is much repetition, to show likeness or contrast (as of the active, when the passive is given). This takes space, but lessens labor. Every set of forms is put to immediate use in a context which enforces its meaning.

The Reading Matter is largely in dialogue, both for greater naturalness, and to fix the persons of the verb.

Syntax. The system is of extreme simplicity. Its categories are merely answers to the questions: What *are* the ideas which the Romans expressed by the cases ? What *are* the ideas which the Romans expressed by the moods ? In a given case, the student has only to know what the Latin *means* to name the construction.

A Summary of Syntax is given immediately after the Supplementary Reading. It may be useful by way of review with this reading.

Excepting for the place-usage with names of towns (§409) the words employed in the sentences given to illustrate new constructions have already been made familiar. A needless difficulty has thereby been removed.

In many instances, these illustrative sentences are taken from what the student has already read or written. He has, in fact, often come to *feel* the construction before he is asked to formulate it. In this and similar respects, the whole series of exercises and explanations will be found to be carefully woven together.

Index. The Index, being intended for the convenience of the teacher, is full, with constant cross repetitions.

The book has been made in the class-room. At every stage it has received and profited by the criticism of other teachers who were using it. I wish to thank Mr. W. E. Moffatt, formerly of the Bradley Institute, Peoria, Mr. C. H. Van Tuyl, Mr. H. F. Scott, Miss Frances S. Pellett, Mr. S. C. Johnston, Mr. O. M. Washburn, and Mr. W. L. Carr, of the University High School, all of whom have helped by their confidence, and all but two by many criticisms. Nor should I forget other teachers, mostly strangers to me, who in the present year have similarly aided me, in spite of the difficulties of using advance sheets, in successive pamphlets, and without a general Vocabulary,—namely in the Shortridge High School, Manual Training School, and eleven Grammar Schools in Indianapolis; the High Schools of Goshen and Princeton, Ind., Holyoke, Mass., Ishpeming, Mich., and Houston, Tex.; the Biggsville Township High School, Biggsville, Ill., and the Princeton Township High School, Princeton, Ill.; the Public School, Pleasant Hill, Ala.; the Academy of Miami University, Oxford, O., and the Preparatory Schools of the University of Idaho, Moscow, Ida., and Rockford College, Rockford, Ill.; the Lagrange Female College, Lagrange, Ga.; the Kenwood Institute, Chicago, the Blees Military Academy, Macon, Mo., and the Bartholomew-Clifton School, Cincinnati, O. I am also indebted, for the sympathetic granting of every facility, to President Harper, of the University of Chicago, Professor W. B. Owen, Dean of the University High School, and Professor N. Butler, Dean of the School of Education. To Mr. Edward Manley, of the Englewood High School, Chicago, I owe much wise and helpful counsel. And finally, I am deeply indebted to Mr. Carr, now of the Shortridge High School, Indianapolis, to Mr. C. H. Beeson, formerly of the Peoria High School, and to Mrs. C. H. Beeson, formerly of the University of Indiana, for invaluable criticism and assistance in the preparation of the present edition of the book.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION (To the Student)

PART I: PRONUNCIATION

PART II: LEARNING TO READ

PART III: SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE GALLIC UPRISING OF 54 B. C.

(From Caesar's Story of the Gallic War, Book v.)

SOUTHERN WALL OF PERMANENT
ROMAN CAMP

At Saalburg, near Homburg. Partly re-
stored. From Jacobi

INTRODUCTION

(To the Student)

Latin is the language spoken by the ancient Romans.
It was at first the language only of Rome and its immediate neighborhood. But as the power of the city extended itself, it became first the language of the whole of Italy, and then the dominant language of the entire civilized world. And this it remained, for more than a thousand years.

But no language stands still. Changes are constantly going on, in the words employed, in their forms, in the pronunciation of them, in their meanings, and in the ways of putting them together to express ideas. Try, for example, our own poet Chaucer. You can make out a good many single words, but you cannot *understand* at all at first. And if you went back still further, say to the writings of King Alfred, you probably could not make out more than one word in ten. In the Lord's Prayer of Alfred's time, out of the 49 different words used, you would recognize only *and, we, us, to, on,* and *of*, while you would not understand the ways in which some of these are used,—and would not even know that it was the Lord's Prayer which you had before you. English is thus, you see, a living, growing, and changing thing.

Now of course *Latin* was also a living and growing and changing thing. And it changed somewhat differently in different parts of the world,—say in Italy, in France, and in Spain. The form which it took in Italy we call

Italian, in France, French, and in Spain, Spanish. Now we speak of the English of King Alfred's time as Early English. You see that, in the same way, it would be correct to speak of Latin as Early Italian, and Early French, and Early Spanish. Or you might say that the Italian, the Frenchman, and the Spaniard speak Modern Latin.

But it isn't these people only that speak Modern Latin. We do it ourselves. Our language is only in part descended from Early English, or, as we might call it for greater clearness, Anglo-Saxon English. Two-thirds of the words which we have at our command (that is, the words found in a dictionary) are Latin; while, in our ordinary daily speech, half the words we use outside of what we may call the "small change" of language,—such words as *and*, *we*, *us*, *to*, *on*, *of*, spoken of above,—are Latin. The little boy who says in the street, "please give me a cent, Mister," is speaking just one-half Anglo-Saxon English and one-half Latin English ("give," "me," and "a" have come down from Anglo-Saxon, and "please," "cent," and "Mister" from Latin). Moreover, the words that have come down from Anglo-Saxon are mostly very simple words. The words in which we express our finer distinctions in our thinking are mainly Latin. Latin is thus a good language to know. It is just as much our mother tongue as Anglo-Saxon is. Indeed, we should speak more properly if we called *Latin* the mother tongue, and Anglo-Saxon the *father* tongue. Our language of today is the child of both. It gets a good deal of its strength, though not all, from the father, and a good deal of its refinement, though not all, from the mother.

To know Latin, then, is to understand English better, and to use it more intelligently and effectively. You will come to feel, as you go on, how much it is your own language that you are really studying.

Moreover, our *civilization* comes mainly from Rome. It was Rome, and not England or Germany or Norway and Sweden, that first conquered the world; and Julius Caesar, who subdued France and Belgium (you will sometime read his own story of his wars), enormously influenced your life and mine. Rome spread its modes of living, its laws, its forms of literature, and its ways of thinking over the whole world. We are really, in all these things, *Romans*, or, more exactly (since Rome got its own arts and letters in part from Greece), we are Greeks and Romans. The story of our various forms of literature,—history, the oration, the essay, lyrical poetry, epic poetry, tragedy, comedy, everything, in short, except satire,—begins with Greece; and satire began in Rome. Science and philosophy, too,—the first methodical thinking, in the part of the world to which we belong, about the processes of nature, and the meaning of life, arose in Greece. Our arts, likewise, except for those that have sprung up quite recently in connection with the wonderful progress of natural science, came from Rome. Your great grandfathers and grandmothers had no ways of building, heating, and lighting their houses, or of traveling or communicating with one another, that they had not inherited from Roman times; and in general they lived much less comfortably than the Ancient Romans.

So, then, you want to know these people. Strains of their blood probably actually run in the veins of a great

many of us. But, at any rate, they are our intellectual ancestors. The first thing to do is to learn their language. Then, if you are so fortunate as to have the opportunity, you want to come to know their best books, and something of their arts,—especially their sculpture, and their architecture. You will not be any the less free and independent if you do so; for it is not really the ignorant man who thinks most effectively for himself, and the real freeman is the man to whom most doors are open.

And one thing more. Don't think of these people as "ancient." The great days of Rome are indeed eighteen and nineteen hundred years back. That might seem a long time; it is really extremely little in the history of man, and little, even, in the life of *civilized* man, as we know him, say, in Egypt. But the Romans are not intellectually so far back as the dates would make us believe. There was a long stretch of time in which the civilized world was in the main moving backward, until it began to return to where it had been, largely through the rediscovery of Latin and Greek literature, from which our modern literature and our modern science start. If you drop out these lost centuries, Rome isn't twice as far back as our own Shakespeare. The Romans were very like ourselves. If a man of the eleventh century, say, were to come back and lecture to us, you would find that he was living in an entirely different world from ours. If Horace or Pliny or Tacitus were to do the same thing, you would find him as modern as any of us, and that he looked at life in very much the same way. Think of these men, then, as Romans of only the other day, and of their literature and art as a part of our direct inheritance. And get all you can for yourself out of the family treasure.

PART I: PRONUNCIATION

(For Reference)

THE ALPHABET

I.   The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that Latin has no *w* and no *j*.

CLASSIFICATION

II.   The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.   The remaining letters are Consonants.

PRONUNCIATION

III.   The Vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as in the first syllable of *aha*.   ā as in *father*.
e as in *let*.   ē about as in *they*.
i as in *pin*.   ī as in *machine*.
o about as in *obey*.   ŏ about as in *no*.
u as in *pull*.   ū as in *rude*.

y and **ȳ** (rare, not occurring in this book)
      like French short and long *u*.

IV.   The Diphthongs (two-vowel sounds) are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.   eu as *é(h)-oo*, smoothly pro-
au like *ou* in *out*.   nounced in the same breath-
oe like *oi* in *coin*.   impulse.
ei like *ei* in *deign*.   ui as *oó-i*, smoothly pronounced
                                          in the same breath-impulse.

1

V. Most Consonants are pronounced as in English, but the following points are to be noted:

c always has the *k* sound as in *cat*, never the *s* sound as in *center*.

g always as in *get*, never as in *gem*.

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*.

s as in *hiss*, never voiced (*z*) as in *his*.

b before s and t like **p**. Thus urbs as urps.

x (value of *two* consonants) like *ks* as in *extra*.

n before **c, g, qu** has the sound of *ng* in *singing*. Before s it lost its consonantal value, the preceding vowel being lengthened and nasalized. So **trāns = trās** with nasal **ā**.

r rolled as in French.

i consonantal (beginning a syllable) as *y* in *yet*.

v as *w* in *wet*.

u has the same sound in **qu, ngu**, and in **suāvis, suādeō, suēscō**, and their compounds. Compare *quarter, anguish, persuade*.

ch, ph, th like *k, p, t*, but with added rough breath, as in *uphill*.

Double letters represent real double consonants, pronounced with separate and distinct articulation and in different syllables, as in *book-case, hop-pole, well-laid*. So **sic-cus, op-pō-nō, il-le**.

DIVISION OF SYLLABLES

VI. A Latin word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The division is as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel. Thus **do-mi-na**. It does not add appreciably to the time taken in pronouncing the vowel of its syllable.

2. A consonant followed by l or r goes with the l or r. Similarly q, g, and s go with u in the combinations given under u in V. Thus **du-plex, a-grī, pa-tris, a-li-qua, per-suā-de-ō**.

3. In all other cases a consonant followed by another goes in the same syllable with the preceding vowel. Thus **an-nus, dic-tus, mag-nus, cas-tra, sānc-tus**.

a. A consonant thus blocked by another may be called *obstructed*.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

VII. Vowels are long or short according to the length of time taken in pronouncing them. Long vowels are shown thus: **ā, ē, ī, ō, ū**. Unmarked vowels are short.

a. The difference between a long vowel and a short one is a real difference in sound. Thus the difference between Latin i and ī is as great as between *fit* and *feet* in English.

b. A Latin long vowel (similarly a diphthong) takes about twice as much time in pronouncing as a short vowel.

General Facts of Quantity

VIII. 1. A vowel is long before **ns**, **nf**, **nx**, or **nct**, as in **īnsequor**, **īnferior**, **iūnxī**, **iūnctus**.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel, or **h**, as in **eŏ**, **vehŏ**.

3. A vowel is short before final **m** or **t**, before **nt** and **nd** anywhere, and, except in words of one syllable, before final **r** or **l**. Thus in **amem**, **amet**, **amantis**, **amandus**, **amer**, **animal**.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

IX. Syllables are long or short according to the length of time taken in pronouncing them.

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong (*two*-vowel group); for example the first syllable in **mā-ter**, **au-di-ŏ**.

2. A syllable is also long, even when the vowel is short, if this is followed by two consonants (except as in VI, 2). Thus in **dic-tus** the **i** is short. But the clear pronunciation of the **c** before the **t** (as clear as of the corresponding sounds in "Dick took cold") takes as much time as the pronunciation of the vowel.

3. A syllable is short if it ends in a short vowel, as in **i-ta**.

X. In Roman speech, combinations *between* words were pronounced in the same way as *within* words.

a. Thus **at amīcus** was pronounced **a-ta-mī-cus** (so that **at** was here short; compare our unconscious pronunciation of *at all* as *a-tall*), and **at quaerŏ** was pronounced **at-quaerŏ** (so that **at** was here long, just as in the single word **at-que**).

ACCENT

XI. 1. In words of two syllables the accent is upon the penult (syllable before the last). Thus: **mágis**, **tégŏ**.

2. In words of more than two syllables the accent is upon the penult if this is long, otherwise on the antepenult (syllable *before* the penult). Thus **a-mī′-cus**, **ma-gís-ter**, but **vá-li-dus**.

PART II: LEARNING TO READ

LESSON I

PRINCIPLES

1. Specimen Sentence:

Serva cēnam parat, *the servant prepares the dinner.*

You will see that in this sentence three different things are presented to the mind, something *acting* (**serva,** *the servant*), something *acted upon* (**cēnam,** *the dinner*), and an *act* (**parat,** *prepares*).

2. Specimen Sentence:

Domina servam laudat, *the mistress praises the servant.*

Here again three things are presented to the mind, something acting (**domina,** *the mistress*), something acted upon (**servam,** *the servant*), and an act (**laudat,** *praises*).

3. If you compare the two sentences, you see that words end differently, according as they represent that which acts, or that which is acted upon. Thus in the first sentence the servant *acts*, and the ending is -a (**serva**); while in the second the servant is *acted upon*, and the ending is -am (**servam**).

4. In both sentences, there is a word that expresses an act (**parat, laudat**), and it ends in the same way, namely in -at.

5. Notice that the Latin order differs from the English, putting the word for an *act* last.

6. Latin has no article ("the" or "a"). Thus **cēna** may correspond, according to the rest of the sentence, to "dinner," "*a* dinner," or "*the* dinner."

7. Direction. In learning the Latin words in the Vocabularies, be sure that you *pronounce them rightly in your mind*, making the long sounds long, and the short short, and making the consonants full and clear. Then, when you have occasion to *write* the Latin words, you have merely to write them as they sound in your memory.

8. VOCABULARY

(Commit these words to memory, so that you can at once give the English for the Latin, and the Latin for the English.)

amīca, *friend* (used only of a woman or girl).

cēna, *dinner.*

domina, *mistress.*

serva, *servant* or *slave* (used only of a woman or girl).

culpat, *blames, censures.*

laudat, *praises.*

parat, *prepares, gets.*

et, *and.*

9. READING MATTER

(Before translating a sentence, make out its meaning, according to what you have learned above of the force of the endings in **-a, -am,** and **-at.** *Then* translate it into English.)

1. Domina cēnam laudat.
2. Serva cēnam parat, et domina servam laudat.
3. Amīca cēnam laudat.
4. Domina cēnam laudat et servam.
5. Domina servam culpat, serva dominam.[1]

10. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

(Write these sentences in Latin, remembering what you have learned about the way of expressing the person *acting*, the person *acted upon*, and the *act*, and also the order in which these are put. In writing, indicate how you pronounce each word. Thus, if you pronounce **cēna**, don't write **cena**.)

1. The servant praises the mistress.
2. The mistress blames the servant.
3. The friend praises the dinner, the mistress the servant.[1]
4. The friend praises the dinner and the servant.

---

[1] Words easily understood can be omitted. What is omitted here?

LESSON II

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

11. Specimen Sentences:

Domina bona cēnam laudat, *the good mistress praises the dinner.*

Domina cēnam bonam laudat, *the mistress praises the good dinner.*

12. Here we have words ending alike,—for instance, **domina** and **bona** in the first example,—but evidently of different natures. **Bona** expresses a *quality* (tells *of what kind*). Such words are called *Adjectives.* Words like **domina, cēna,** etc., are *names* of persons or things. Such words are called *Nouns.*

13. You can tell which of two Nouns an Adjective goes with by the ending of that Adjective. Thus if you have **domina bona servam,** it is of course the **domina** of whom **bona** is said ("good mistress"); if you have **domina bonam servam,** it is the **servam** of whom **bonam** is said ("good servant"). This going-together of one word with another is called *Agreement.*

14. Words expressing acts or states, for example **laudat,** are called *Verbs.* Words like **et,** which join others together, are called *Conjunctions.*

15. Varying forms of a given noun, adjective, etc. (as **serva servam, bona bonam**) are called *Cases.* The form in -a used above is called *Nominative,* the one in **-am** *Accusative.*

a. Look now at the sentences you have had, and see what is the case which represents a person or thing as *acting*, and what the one which represents a person or thing *acted upon.*

b. The Nominative in Latin corresponds to the Nominative in English Grammar. The Accusative corresponds to the Objective case in English Grammar.

16. A word that qualifies or limits another on which it depends is said to *modify* that word, and is called a *modifier.*

Thus in the phrase[1] "good mistress" the word "good" modifies the word "mistress;" and in the statement "praises the servant," the word "servant" modifies the verb "praises."

17. VOCABULARY

NOUN:
rēgīna, *queen.*

VERB:
amat, *loves, likes.*

ADJECTIVES:
bona, *good.*
mala, *bad.*
dūra, *hard, stern, harsh.*

CONJUNCTION:
et . . . et . . . i. e.,[2] et doubled, *both . . . and . . .*

18. READING MATTER

(In sentences 1 to 3 the order is the normal[3] one. In 4, bona is made emphatic by its position, and in 5 the whole phrase bonam servam is made emphatic in the same way. See if you can express this emphasis in your translation by position or by stress of voice.)

1. Rēgīna dominam bonam laudat.
2. Domina servam malam culpat.
3. Serva bona dominam dūram culpat.
4. Bona serva dominam amat.
5. Bonam servam domina et laudat et amat.

---

[1] A Phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A more exact definition will be given later (**148,** 2).

[2] The letters i. e. stand for the Latin words id est, meaning *that is.*

[3] I. e., the regular one, where no special emphasis is to be given.

NORMAL ORDER AND EMPHATIC ORDER

19. From the above sentences you may make out the following rules[1] of order, to guide you in writing, and help you in reading:

1. *The normal order in a Latin sentence is:*

Subject, with its modifiers	*modifiers of verb, with verb*
Thus: **Serva bona**	**dominam dūram culpat**

2. *The Adjective normally follows its noun.*
Thus: **Serva bona,** *a good servant* (no special emphasis).

3. *A word or phrase may be put out of its normal position to give it emphasis.*

Thus: **Bona serva,** *a* GOOD *servant.*

Bonam servam domina et laudat et amat, *a* GOOD *servant the mistress both praises and loves.*

a. Remember, then, that Latin expresses by position what in English we generally have to express by stress of voice.

20.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. The harsh mistress blames the servant.

2. The queen blames the harsh mistress.

3. The queen blames both the harsh mistress and the bad servant.

4. The queen both praises and loves a *good*[2] mistress.

5. A *good*[2] mistress both praises and loves a good servant.

---

[1] A "rule" is a brief statement of usage, summing up what you have learned.

[2] Be sure to express the emphasis by your order.

DISHES AND SPOONS FROM POMPEII (SILVER)

LESSON III

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

21. Specimen Sentences:

1. **Domina bona est,** *the mistress is good.*
2. **Serva bona est,** *the servant is good.*
3. **Serva coqua est,** *the servant is a cook.*

a. The verbs which we have had before have expressed *action.* We have now a verb, **est,** of a new kind, expressing *state.*

22. Verbs *say* ("predicate") something about a person or thing. That of which something is said is called the *Subject* (as "Julia" in "Julia cooks"). That which is said ("predicated") is called the *Predicate* (as "cooks").

23. The verbs we have thus far had are called *Finite* (the meaning of this word will be explained later). The subject with every one of them (that which acts or is) has been in the Nominative. We can, then, lay down the rule that:

24. *The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative.*

25. We have now seen two ways of making an adjective go with a noun:

1. In the first way, the adjective was directly attached to the noun, as in **domina bona cēnam laudat,** *the good mistress praises the dinner.* So attached, the adjective is called *Attributive.*

2. In the second way, seen in the specimen sentences of this Lesson, the adjective *is a part* of that which is *predicated,* as in **domina bona est,** *the mistress is good* (here "good" is just as much asserted of the mistress as "is"). Thus used, an adjective is called a *Predicate Adjective.*

26. A *noun* may, in the same way, be a part of the predicate, and is then called a *Predicate Noun*, as **coqua,** *cook*, in **serva coqua est,** *the servant is a cook*.

a. Since the predicate noun or adjective is said of the subject, you will of course expect it to *agree* with the subject.

27.   **VOCABULARY**

ADJECTIVE:	VERBS:	NOUNS:
benigna, *good-natured, kind*.	**est,** *is*. **vocat,** *calls*.	**coqua,** *cook*. **Iūlia,** *Julia*.

28.   **READING MATTER**

1. Serva cēnam parat. Cēna bona est.
2. Iūlia coqua bona est.[1]
3. Bona coqua Iūlia est.[1]
4. Domina dūra coquam vocat.
5. Domina dūra est, serva mala.
6. Domina benigna est, serva bona.

29.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. The dinner is bad.
2. The cook is bad.
3. The stern mistress blames the cook.
4. Julia is a bad cook.
5. Julia is a *bad* cook (or, a *bad* cook Julia is).
6. The kind queen calls the cook, and praises the good dinner.

---

[1] What is the difference in meaning between sentences 2 and 3?

BRONZE COOKING-UTENSILS
FROM POMPEII

LESSON IV

DEFINITIONS

30. A noun that denotes a particular person, place, or thing, is called a *Proper Noun.* Thus **Iūlia,** *Julia.*

31. A noun that denotes *any* person or thing of a class is called a *Common Noun.* Thus **serva,** *servant.*

a. A noun that denotes a number of persons or things taken together is called a *Collective Noun.* Thus **turba,** *crowd.*

32. Instead of nouns, we often use other words to denote persons or things. Thus instead of saying "I saw John this morning. John was looking well," we say "I saw John this morning. He was looking well." Words like *he, they, you, I, this, who,* etc., because they stand instead of nouns, are called *Pronouns.*

33. Some of these pronouns clearly tell us to which of the possible kinds of persons they refer, namely the person speaking (*I,* called the first person), the person spoken to (*you,* called the second person), or the person spoken of (*he, she, it,* called the third person). They are therefore called *Personal Pronouns.*

34. Corresponding words like *my, your, his, her,* which indicate persons as possessing, are called *Possessive Adjectives.*[1]

a. Possessive adjectives have the same position as other adjectives. That is, they normally follow their nouns. Thus:

> **serva mea bona est,** *my servant is good,* but
> **mea serva bona est,** MY *servant is good.*

---

[1] Often called Possessive Pronouns. But they are not really pronouns.

35. In Latin, personal pronouns and possessive adjectives are freely omitted, when the meaning is clear without them. Thus after the question, **serva bona est?** *is the servant good?* the answer *she is good* would be expressed simply by **bona est.**

36. A word that modifies the meaning of a verb is called an *Adverb;* but adverbs may also modify adjectives or other adverbs. Thus:

He does it *willingly* (modifying a verb).
He does it *very* willingly (modifying another adverb).
He is *very* willing, or, He is *not* willing (modifying an adjective).

37. Notice the position of the Latin Adverb in the following sentences (**semper** means *always* and **saepe** *often*):

Domina servam semper culpat, *the mistress always blames the servant.*

Serva dominam saepe culpat, *the servant often blames the mistress.*

From these we may lay down the rule that:

38. *Adverbs normally precede the words which they modify.*

a. But of course an adverb, like any other word, may be put out of its normal position to give it emphasis.

39. **VOCABULARY**

PERSONAL PRONOUNS:

mē, *me.* Accusative.
tē, *thee, you* (in speaking to a single person). Accusative.

ADVERBS:

nōn, *not.*
saepe, *often.*
semper, *always.*

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES:

mea, *my, mine.*
tua, *thy, thine, your, yours* (in speaking to a single person).

CONJUNCTION:

sed, *but.*

NOUN:

turba, *crowd, mob.*

40. **READING MATTER**

1. Iūlia coqua mea est. Bona[1] coqua Iūlia est.

2. Coqua mea bona cēnam parat;[2] et cēnam semper parat bonam.[1]

3. Mea coqua cēnam parat; sed malam saepe parat cēnam.

4. Coqua tua bona est? (Answer) Mala est.

5. Rēgīna mē amat, nōn tē.

6. Rēgīna benigna est. Amat et tē et mē.

7. Rēgīna tē vocat.

8. Rēgīna turbam[3] nōn amat.

41. **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. My cook is good, yours bad.

2. Is Julia your cook? (Answer) Julia is my cook. (Question) Is she a good cook? (Answer) She loves a good dinner, but she is a bad cook.

3. The queen is a good friend.

4. A *good* friend the queen is!

5. The queen loves *you*, not *me*. She always praises you.

6. The queen *often* praises you.

7. A mob calls you.

---

[1] What is the effect of the order? [2] Translate by *is getting*.
[3] Does this probably mean *the* mob, or *a* mob?

BRONZE PITCHERS AND DRINKING-HORN FROM POMPEII

LESSON V

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

42. Specimen Sentences:

Coqua cēnam parat, *the cook gets dinner,* or *the cook is getting dinner,* or *the cook does get dinner.*

Coqua cēnam parat? *is the cook getting dinner?* or *does the cook get dinner?*

a. Notice that the single verb **parat** is used in Latin where English uses three distinct forms, *gets, is getting, does get.* You must, therefore, translate always according to what is the most probable force in the given place. And in translating English into Latin, you must always use the one Latin form.

43. Specimen Sentences:

Iūlia coqua cēnam parat, *Julia, the cook, is getting dinner.*

Domina Iūliam coquam laudat, *the mistress praises Julia, the cook.*

a. In these sentences, you see that the word **coqua** is put alongside of **Iūlia,** and **coquam** alongside of **Iūliam,** to tell us something more particularly about **Iūlia** or **Iūliam.** Such a *putting-alongside* is called *Apposition,* and the word so attached to another is called an *Appositive.*

b. An appositive must, of course, show by its form with what word it goes. Hence:

44. *An Appositive Noun agrees in case with the Noun or Pronoun to which it belongs.*

45. There is, in the forms which we are now studying, another case, precisely like the Nominative, named the *Vocative* (from **vocat**, *calls*), because used in speaking to (addressing) a person. Thus:

> **Cēna, coqua, parāta est?** *Cook, is dinner ready?*

a. A Vocative normally stands after one or more words.

46. Certain words loosely thrown into the sentence ("interjected") are called *Interjections.* Thus **ō**, English *O* or *Oh*.

47. VOCABULARY

NOUNS:

culīna, *kitchen.*
culpa (noun corresponding to the verb **culpat**), *fault, blame.*
fīlia, *daughter.*
vīlla, *villa.*

ADJECTIVES:

magna, *great, large, big.*
parva, *small, little.*
parāta (connected with the verb **parat**), *prepared, ready.*
pulchra, *beautiful.*
splendida, *splendid.*

VERB:

exspectat, *expects, awaits, waits for.*[1]

ADVERB:

cūr, *why.*

48. READING MATTER

1. Domina cēnam exspectat. Coquam vocat.

2. (The mistress says to the cook) Cēna[2] cūr nōn parāta est? (The cook answers) Est, domina, parāta.

3. (The mistress says) Cēna tua, coqua, saepe mala est. (Answer) Culpa, domina, nōn mea est. (Mistress) Cūr nōn tua est? (Answer) Culīna parva et mala est.

4. (The cook says) Domina cūr mē semper culpat?

5. (A dialogue of mothers) Fīlia tua pulchra est. (Answer) Fīlia mea pulchra sed dūra est. Tua et pulchra est et benigna.

6. Vīlla tua, amīca mea, magna et splendida est.

7. Turba magna est!

---

[1] "Waits for" is really a single idea, just as "awaits" is.

[2] The thing of most consequence is put first to *arrest the attention*, as if we should say "the *dinner* now: why isn't it ready?"

EMPHATIC ORDER, CONTINUED

49. Evidently the order in Latin is very nearly free. Let us see, then, how, in a sentence of several words, this freedom may be employed to give *emphasis*.

1. In the second sentence in **48** above, the *dinner* was the important thing. Notice how this was expressed by putting **cēna** at the *head* of the sentence.

2. In the second sentence of **40** (turn back), the *goodness* of the dinner was the important thing. Notice how this was expressed by putting **bonam** at the *end* of the sentence.

From these instances we may see that:

50. *The most emphatic places in a Latin sentence; or group of words, are the first and the last.*

a. This is just what we should expect in any language in which the order was free. For, evidently, emphasis may be obtained *either* by putting an important thing before the hearer immediately, or by holding it back for a time, to stimulate his curiosity, or to surprise him with an added idea (principle of *Suspense*).

Apply these principles in your own writing.

51.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Mistress, the dinner is served.[1]

2. Your servant, my daughter, is a good cook. (Answer) The dinner is *often* good, (but[2]) not always.

3. Julia, the cook, is preparing dinner. But my mistress does not expect a *good* (one[2]). (Question) Why does she not expect a good (one)? (Answer) The kitchen is bad, and the cook is bad.

4. Julia, the dinner is always bad. The fault is yours.

5. Your villa is splendid. (Answer) My villa is *splendid*, but it is not *beautiful*. *Your* villa is small, but beautiful.

6. A big mob calls (for) you.

---

[1] Use the word for "prepared," "ready."

[2] Omit in translating, as unnecessary. In general, words in parentheses ( ) are not to be translated.

LESSON VI

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

52. Specimen Sentence:

Vīlla rēgīnae splendida est, *the villa of the queen* (or *the queen's villa*) *is splendid.*

a. The case of **rēgīnae** is called the *Genitive*. It corresponds to our English Possessive case, or the equivalent phrase with *of*. As you see in this example,

53. *The Genitive may express that to which something belongs* (Genitive of *Possession*). And

a. A Genitive normally follows its noun.

54. There is, in the set of forms with which we have begun, another case, called the *Dative*, identical in form with the Genitive (thus **rēgīnae**), but with an entirely different meaning, as in:

Fīlia mea rēgīnae cēnam dat, *my daughter is giving a dinner to the queen* (or *for the queen*). **Rēgīnae** is here Dative.

Rēgīna fīliae meae benigna est, *the queen is kind to my daughter.* **Fīliae** is here Dative.

As you see in these examples,

a. The Dative normally precedes the word or words which it modifies.

55. The Dative expresses *Figurative Direction*[1] of various kinds. Hence it may be called the "*to, toward,* or *for* case."

---

[1] That is, not literal direction in space, but the direction in which an act, a quality, etc., operates,—that *toward which* it goes out.

Notice that, in English, literal direction and figurative direction are expressed in one and the same way. Compare "go to the city" and "be kind to me" (the same word "to" in both). We shall see later that Latin has a different way for expressing literal direction (**78,** *b*).

a. Compare the following, in which the English word "to," "toward," or "for," expresses this same idea of figurative direction:

He gives a letter to me (direction taken by an *Act*).

This is pleasant to (or *for*) *me* (direction taken by a *Quality*. The pleasantness goes out *toward me*).

He is opposed to me (direction taken by an *Attitude*).

He is unfriendly toward me (direction taken by an *Attitude*).

He is near to me (direction taken by a *Relation*).

56. VOCABULARY

NOUNS:

epistula, *epistle, letter.*
silva, *wood, forest.*

PRONOUNS:

mihi, (*to* or *for*) *me;* Dative.
tibi, (*to* or *for*) *you;* Dative.

VERBS:

cēnat (verb corresponding to the noun **cēna**), *dines.*
dat, *gives.*

ADVERB:

tam, *so.*

ADJECTIVES:

adversa, *adverse, opposed.* (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)
grāta, *gratifying, pleasing, agreeable.* (Word of Quality, taking Dat.)
inimīca, *unfriendly, hostile.* (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)
īrāta, *angry.* (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)
propinqua, *near.* (Word of Relation, taking Dat.)

57. READING MATTER

Caution.—When you meet a doubtful form, e. g.,[1] the Genitive-or-Dative form in **-ae**, or the Nominative-or-Vocative form in **-a**, you must carefully hold your judgment in suspense until all the evidence has come in. *Do not jump at the first possibility that comes into your mind.*

1. Vīlla rēgīnae silvae magnae propinqua est.
2. Vīlla mea parva mihi grāta est.
3. Serva dominae epistulam dat.
4. Domina coquae cūr īrāta[2] est ? (Answer) Cēna mala est.
5. Rēgīna cēnat. Tē, fīlia mea, exspectat.
6. Rēgīna, fīlia mea, tē nōn amat. Tibi semper adversa est.
7. Rēgīna mihi cūr tam inimīca est ?

---

[1] This stands for **exemplī grātiā,** meaning *for example.*
[2] *Angry toward the cook.* But we say in English *angry at.*

58.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The queen loves the great forest.

2. My villa is near[1] (to)[2] the splendid villa of the queen. But the queen is unfriendly toward me.

3. My friend, why is the queen always so opposed to you? Why is she angry at (= toward) you?

4. My daughter gives (to) me a letter.

5. Your letter is pleasing to me.

6. The mistress is dining. The dinner is good.

---

[1] A predicate noun or adjective regularly stands next to the verb, since the two together make one idea.

[2] In English, we omit the preposition "to" in such a combination.

IN THE RUINS OF HADRIAN'S VILLA NEAR
TIVOLI (TĪBUR)
Fifteen miles from Rome

LESSON VII

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

59. The verbs which we have been using have all represented an act or state as a *fact*. Such verbs are said to be in the *Indicative Mood*. They have dealt with present time, and hence are said to be in the *Present Tense*. Thus **coqua cēnam parat,** *the cook prepares* (or *is preparing*) *dinner* (a fact, in the Present).

a. *Mood* is the expression of the way in which the act is looked at, e. g., as a *fact* (Indicative).

b. *Tense* is the expression of the idea of time through the form of the verb.

c. The *negative* (*denying* word) for the Indicative is **nōn,** *not*, as we have already seen.

60. The ending **-t,** which we have had in all our verbs, indicates the action of a person or thing *spoken of*, called the *third person*. In the same way, the ending **-ō** indicates the person *speaking* ("I"), called the *first person.* Thus **cēnam parō,** *I am preparing dinner.* The first person of **est,** (*he*) *is*, is **sum,** (*I*) *am.*

a. The endings alone are enough to indicate the person, without the use of any word for "I," "he," "it," etc. Thus **rēgīna sum** *must* mean "*I am queen*," not "*she is queen*," nor "*you are queen*."

61. *A Transitive Verb* is one that expresses an act immediately affecting some person or thing. The person or thing immediately affected is called the *Direct Object.* Thus **servam** is a Direct Object in **Anna servam laudat,** *Anna praises the servant.* We have repeatedly seen that:

62. *The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is put in the Accusative.*

63. An *Intransitive Verb* is one that expresses an act *not* immediately affecting any person or thing, or a *state*. Thus **cēnō,** *I dine,* **sum,** *I am.*

a. From its nature, such a verb cannot have a Direct Object.

64. We have also seen another case depending upon a verb, as in:

Domina mihi servam laudat, *the mistress praises the servant to me.*

a. Here the case of **mihi** (the *to*-case, or Dative) expresses the person *indirectly* affected by the act. This is called the *Indirect Object.*

We may then lay down the rule that:

65. *The Indirect Object of a Verb is put in the Dative.*

From the above example note also that:

a. The Indirect Object normally precedes the Direct Object.

66. We may likewise make a *short rule* combining the other uses of the Direction-Case seen in various examples in the last Lesson. These uses are essentially one and the same. Compare the following:

Vīlla mihi grāta est, *the villa is agreeable to me.*
    QUALITY of the villa, going out toward *me.*   (**mihi**, Dative)
Rēgīna mihi adversa est, *the queen is opposed to me.*
    ATTITUDE of the queen toward *me.*   (**mihi**, Dative)
Vīlla silvae propinqua est, *the villa is near (to) the wood.*
    RELATION of the villa to the *wood.*   (**silvae**, Dative)

We see, then, that:

67. *The Dative is used to express that toward which a Quality, Attitude, or Relation is directed.*

68.   READING MATTER

1. Fīliam tuam, rēgīna mea, laudō. Bona est et benigna.

2. Amō rēgīnae fīliam; sed rēgīnae nōn grāta sum. Mihi dūra est.

3. Rēgīna mihi semper benigna est. Tibi cūr tam inimīca est?

4. Domina mea rēgīnae cēnam magnam dat.

5. (The mistress says) Rēgīna, coqua, cēnam meam nōn laudat. Culpa tua est. Tibi īrāta sum.

6. Vīlla amīcae meae silvae pulchrae propinqua est.

7. Epistula tua mihi nōn grāta est. Tibi īrāta sum.

69. **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Your mistress is kind to you. Mine is always angry at me.

2. Cook, I do not praise your dinner. It is (a) big (one); *good* it is not. Why is it not good? (The honest cook's answer) The fault is mine, mistress. I am not a good cook.

3. The villa of the queen's daughter is near (to) mine. It is a splendid villa.

4. I am angry[1] at the daughter of the queen. She is always opposed to me.

5. Your letter, my friend, is not agreeable to me.

[1]When you are puzzled how to express a given idea, look at the Latin Reading Matter and see how it was expressed there. Thus if the "at" of "angry at" troubles you, look in the Latin sentences of section **57** for an **īrāta**, and see how the idea was there expressed.
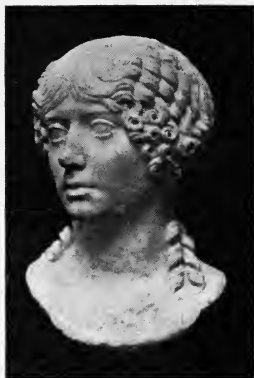
YOUNG ROMAN LADY, POR-
TRAIT BUST

From Excavations in widen-
ing the Tiber, 1880

LESSON VIII

PRINCIPLES AND NAMES

70. Specimen Sentences:

Coqua ā culīnā abest, *the cook is absent from the kitchen.*
Coqua cum dominā in culīnā est, *the cook is with the mistress in the kitchen.*

a. In **culīnā** and **dominā,** we have a new case, with the same letters as the Nominative, but *sounding* differently, having a final long **a.** This case is called the Ablative.

71. The Latin Ablative is a mixed case, being made up of the remains of three cases, which originally were entirely distinct, in form as well as in meaning: the true Ablative, or *from*-case,[1] expressing separation; the Sociative, or *with*-case, expressing association; and the Locative, or *in*-case, expressing location. It inherited the forces of all these cases, and thus expresses the *from*-idea, the *with*-idea, and the *in*-idea.

72. According to its forces, it is convenient to speak of the case as:

1. The *Separative Ablative,*[2] answering the question "whence?" "from what place?"

2. The *Sociative Ablative,* answering the question "with whom?" or "with what?"

3. The *Locative Ablative,* answering the question "where?"[3]

73. Words like *from, with, in,* which define the relation of a noun or pronoun to another word, are called *Prepositions.*

---

[1] The case is named from this use. The word "ablative" *means* "the case of taking-away."

[2] Or Ablative of *Separation.*

[3] The word Locative is the best word to use, but not a perfect one. It should be understood as covering *exact* location only—English *in, on,* or *under*—but no other ideas of place.

74. **VOCABULARY**

(New verbs will henceforth be given in the first person.)

PREPOSITIONS:

ā or **ab,**[1] *from, away from.* Takes Abl.

cum, *with.* Takes Abl.

in, *in, on.* Takes Abl.

VERBS:

absum (ab+sum), *am away, am absent, am distant.*

ambulō, *walk.*

ADVERBS:

hīc, *in this place, here.*

hodiē (on this day=), *today.*

ibi, *there.*

ubi, *where.*

quoque, *also, too.* (Postpositive, i. e., "placed after." Stands just after the word modified.)

75. **READING MATTER**

1. Iūlia hīc est? (Ans.) In culīnā est.

2. (Said by a servant to a caller) Domina ā vīllā abest. (Ques.)[2] Ubi est? (Ans.)[2] In silvā est. (Ques.) Ubi silva est? (Ans.) Silva vīllae propinqua est.

3. Rēgīna hodiē cum fīliā meā cēnat. (Ans.) Amat rēgīna fīliam tuam; meae inimīca est.

4. Ubi domina tua est? (Ans.) In silvā cum amīcā ambulat. Silvam amat. (First speaker) Mea quoque domina silvam amat, et ibi saepe ambulat.

76. **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Where is your mistress? Is she here? (Ans.) She is in the kitchen with the cook.

2. Why is your daughter absent from the villa? (Ans.) She is dining today with the daughter of the queen.

3. My friend's villa is near a great forest, where I often walk. I *love* the forest.

4. *My* daughter also loves the forest, and often walks there.

---

[1] Ab before vowels and h, ā before consonants. But before most consonants ab may also be used.

[2] We will now use the abbreviations *Ques.* and *Ans.* for *Question* and *Answer.*

LESSON IX

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

77.   **VOCABULARY**

PREPOSITIONS:

ad, *at,* (near) *by;* with verbs of motion, *to, toward.* Takes Acc.

ante, *before, in-front-of.* Takes Acc.

post, *behind, after.* Takes Acc.

trāns, *across, beyond.* Takes Acc.

per, *through.* Takes Acc.

in (same word as before), *into,* when used with Accusative.

VERB:

habitō, *inhabit, dwell, live.*

ADVERB:

nunc, *now.*

NOUN:

casa, *cottage, cabin.*

CASE USES AND SPECIMEN SENTENCES

78. Only Prepositions having a *from, with,* or *in* force take the Ablative. You will find that Prepositions expressing *other* space-relations[1] take the Accusative. Thus:

    silva post vīllam est, *the wood is behind the villa.*

    vīlla ante silvam est, *the villa is before* (in-front-of) *the wood.*

    vīlla ad silvam est, *the villa is by the wood.*

    ad silvam ambulat, *she walks to the wood.*

    in silvam ambulat, *she walks into the wood.*

    But **in silvā ambulat,** *she walks in the wood.*

Notice that, in accordance with the principle above, and the one given in **72,** 3:

  a. The Accusative is used with **in** *to express the Place To Which something moves, the Ablative to express the Place In Which something is or is done.*

  b. Literal Direction in Space is thus expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition (e. g., **ad** or **in**). The *Dative* expresses *Figurative Direction* only.

  c. Only the Accusative and Ablative are used with Prepositions.

---

[1] In the real force of the *Latin* prepositions. But *our* expression, with our preposition, may sometimes be quite different.

THE DECLINING OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

79. We have seen all the six Latin cases, with their fundamental forces, and all the forms of the Singular number (that is, the number which indicates *one* person or thing) in the first set of case-forms, called the *First Declension.*

We shall now learn to give in order the six cases for **serva,** *servant,* then for **bona,** *good,* and then for **serva bona,** *good servant,* together (thus Nom. **serva bona,** Gen. **servae bonae,** etc.). This is called *Declining.*

80.　　　　　First Declension: Singular Number

Noun	Adjective in Agreement	English Translation	Case	Fundamental Case-Meanings
serva	bona	*the good servant*	Nom.	Subject.
servae	bonae	*of the good servant,* or *the good servant's*	Gen.	That to which something belongs.
servae	bonae	*to* or *for the good servant*	Dat.	Figurative Direction.
servam	bonam	*the good servant*	Acc.	Space-Ideas (except *from, with* and *in* ideas), and Direct Object.
serva	bona	*(O) good servant*	Voc.	Address.
servā	bonā	*from, with,* or *in the good servant*	Abl.	*From, with,* and *in* Ideas.

81. We have now had all the Latin Parts of Speech, which are as in English, minus the Article,—namely: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

a. Henceforth words will be arranged in the vocabularies in alphabetical order, unless there is a special reason for bringing particular words together.

82. READING MATTER

1. Fīlia tua hodiē hīc est? (Ans.) Ā vīllā abest. In silvā cum amīcā ambulat. (First speaker) Mea quoque fīlia ibi nunc ambulat.

2. Ubi Iūlia coqua est? In culīnā nōn est. (Ans.) Ad casam amīcae ambulat. (Ques.) Ubi casa est? Est ad silvam? (Ans.) Trāns silvam amīca habitat. Nunc per silvam coqua ambulat.

3. Vīlla mea ante silvam magnam est. (Ques.) Fīlia tua saepe in silvā ambulat? (Ans.) Saepe ā vīllā ad silvam ambulat; sed in silvam nōn ambulat. Fīlia parva est, silva magna.

4. Ubi amīca tua habitat? Post silvam habitat.

83. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Why is the cook absent from the kitchen? (Ques.) She isn't there? (Another servant says) Here she is.

2. A friend of the cook lives in a little cottage behind the wood.

3. Where is your daughter now? (Ans.) She is dining with the queen today. (First speaker) *My* daughter, too, is dining with the queen.

4. Where does your friend live? Does she live in-front-of the wood? (Ans.) She lives beyond the wood. (Ques.) Does she often walk into the wood? (Ans.) She often walks *through* [1] the wood to my villa.

---

[1] Always keep the preposition before its noun or pronoun. When, then, you want to emphasize a preposition, put the whole group into an emphatic place.

SILVER PITCHERS FOUND IN BOSCOREALE

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION (FINISHED)

84. We may now finish the First Declension by adding the Plural (that is, the number which indicates more than one person or thing). The *case-meanings* are the same.

85. Words of the First Declension are called ā-Stems, because their stems originally ended in -ā- throughout.[1]

a. The stem of a word is the part which remains constant, and to which the endings are added as the word changes in inflection.

b. When the stem ends in a vowel, a change in the stem or the ending, or in both, may take place, so that sometimes neither appears as it originally was. But in such cases it is still convenient to use the word "ending" for the *apparent* ending.

86.   FIRST DECLENSION: a-*Stems*

	NOUN	ADJECTIVE	
Stem	servā-	bonā-	
	SINGULAR		*Endings*
Nominative	serva	bona	-a
Genitive	servae	bonae	-ae
Dative	servae	bonae	-ae
Accusative	servam	bonam	-am
Vocative	serva	bona	-a
Ablative	servā	bonā	-ā
	PLURAL		
Nominative	servae	bonae	-ae
Genitive	servārum	bonārum	-ārum
Dative	servīs	bonīs	-īs
Accusative	servās	bonās	-ās
Vocative	servae	bonae	-ae
Ablative	servīs	bonīs	-īs

[1] In the First Declension, you can see something of the *a*-sound in almost every form. But the original *long* sound has been shortened in several places.

a. Learn to decline **serva** and **bona** separately and together.

b. You will find that, *in the Plurals of all Declensions, Nominative and Vocative are alike, and Dative and Ablative are alike.*

c. Notice, that in the First Declension, the Genitive and Dative Singular are like the Nominative and Vocative Plural. *You must be on your guard* when you meet one of these doubtful forms.

87. The Infinitive is a kind of verb-noun. It expresses the mere idea of action or being. Thus **amāre**, *to love*, Present Infinitive of **amō**, *I love*.

a. An Infinitive that completely fills out the meaning of another verb, as in **ambulāre amō**, *I love to walk*, is often called a Complementary Infinitive ("complementary" is from a Latin word meaning "fill out").

b. In general, the Infinitive in Latin is used in much the same way as in English, e. g., as Subject, Object, or Complement. Differences will be pointed out later.

88. The third person plural of the Present Indicative is shown by the ending **-nt.** Thus **amant,** (*they*) *love,* **sunt,** (*they*) *are.*

89.   **VOCABULARY**

beāta, *happy, blessed, fortunate.*
cūra, *care, anxiety.*
fēmina, *woman.*
multa, *much.* In Plural, *many.*
pecūnia, *money.*

rūstica, *rustic, country.*
sine, Prep., *without.* Takes Separative Ablative.
tranquilla, *tranquil.*
vīta, *life.*

90.   **READING MATTER**

1. Epistulās ab amīcīs nunc exspectō.

2. Amō amīcās meās: mē amant amīcae meae.

3. Amīcae meae fīliās amō. Et pulchrae et bonae sunt.

4. Amō per silvās cum amīcīs meīs ambulāre. (Ans.) Amīcae quoque meae amant in silvīs ambulāre.

5. Sunt[1] pulchrae vīllae et ad silvam et trāns silvam.

6. Vītam tranquillam, amīcae meae, sine multā pecūniā et multīs cūrīs amō. Beāta est vīta rūstica.

7. Multīs fēminīs vīta splendida grāta est: mihi grāta est vīta tranquilla. Cūra multārum servārum mihi nōn grāta est.

91.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. The mistresses of good servants are happy.

2. Much money gives many anxieties. (Ans.) But money is agreeable.

3. There are many cottages by the forest. (Ans.) There are many *beyond* the forest too.

4. Many women love a tranquil country life without care.

5. A tranquil country life is agreeable to me, and to my friends also.

6. My friends live by a forest.

7. My daughters love to walk with friends through forests.

8. I often walk *to* the forest, not often *into* the forest.

9. Dinner is ready, my daughters. Where are my friends?

---

[1] *There are.* The English "there" is merely "expletive" (i. e., a "filling-out" word). **Sunt** is not emphatic, but, like "there," is put first in order that the more important words may be held up (Suspense).

FARMER AND WOOD
Ruins of ancient Aqueduct in distance

LESSON XI

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

92. There are four regular types of Verb Inflection, known as the *Four Conjugations.* They are distinguished by the vowel which ends the stem in the Present ("characteristic vowel"). This is most conveniently seen in the Present Infinitive. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM ENDS IN
I	amō	amā-re, *to love*	-ă- (amā-)
II	moneō	monē-re, *to warn*	-ē- (monē-)
III	tegō	tege-re, *to cover*	-e- (tege-)
IV	audiō	audī-re, *to hear*	-ī- (audī-)

93. A few verbs, called *Irregular*, are inflected in a different way. Thus **sum,** *am*, Infinitive, **esse,** *to be.*

94. We have already had half of the group of First Conjugation forms with which we began (namely **amō, amat, amant**). The whole group will now be given, together with the forms for **sum.**

95.   **PRESENT INDICATIVE**

FIRST CONJUGATION   IRREGULAR

    Stem **amā-**   *Personal Endings*

1st Pers. Sing.	amō, *I love*	-ō or -m	sum, *I am*
2d " "	amās, *you love*	-s	es, *you are*
	or *thou lovest*		or *thou art*
3d " "	amat, *he (she, it) loves*	-t	est, *he (she, it) is*
1st Pers. Pl.	amāmus, *we love*	-mus	sumus, *we are*
2d " "	amātis, *you love*	-tis	estis, *you are*
3d " "	amant, *they love*	-nt	sunt, *they are*

a. **Amō** originally was **ama-ō** (the -ă- being shortened before a vowel). But the a and ō ran together and the a disappeared.

b. The forms of these verbs show the Number and Person of the Subject. When, then, the Subject is expressed, the verb will *agree* with it in Number and Person.

96.   **VOCABULARY**

iūsta, *just.*   ō, *O,* or *Oh* (often used in address,
iuvō, *help.*   though never necessary).
laeta, *joyous, glad, happy.*   quia, Conj., *because.*

97.   **READING MATTER**

1. Dominam tuam amās? (Ans.) Dominam meam amō. Servīs semper benigna est.

2. Dominam, ō servae, cūr semper laudātis? (Ans.) Dominam laudāmus, quia semper iūsta et benigna est.

3. Multae fēminae pecūniam cum cūrīs amant, nōn multae vītam rūsticam tranquillam et beātam.

4. Cūr, fīliae meae, tam laetae estis? (Ans.) Laetae sumus quia amīcās exspectāmus.

5. (The mother calls) Ubi es, fīlia mea? (The daughter) Hīc sum. (The mother) Ubi "hīc" est? (The daughter) In culīnā sum. (The mother) Cūr in culīnā es? (The daughter) Coquam iuvō. Cēnam parāmus.

6. Fīliārum tuārum amīcae tē quoque amant. Beāta es.

98.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Do you (said to one person) often walk in the forest? (Ans.) I *love* to walk in the forest, because I am always happy there.

2. Where are you, my friends (use ō for practice)? (Ans.) We are waiting-for you and your daughter in-front-of (= before) the villa. Is she ready?

3. I give a-great-deal-of (= much) money to my servants.

4. The queen loves a just mistress.

5. I love to dine with friends.

6. The dinners of *my* friends are often splendid, but not always good.

7. I love to help the cook in the kitchen.

LESSON XII

FIRST CONJUGATION (Repeated) AND SECOND CONJUGATION

99. **PRESENT INDICATIVE**

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	Personal Endings
	Stem amā-	*Stem* monē-	
1st Sing.	amō, *I love*	moneō, *I warn*	-ō (or -m[1])
2d "	amās, *you love*	monēs, *you warn*	-s
3d "	amat, *he (she, it) loves*	monet, *he (she, it) warns*	-t
1st Pl.	amāmus, *we love*	monēmus, *we warn*	-mus
2d "	amātis, *you love*	monētis, *you warn*	-tis
3d "	amant, *they love*	monent, *they warn*	-nt

a. Given the differing stems (-ā- and -ē-), the First and Second Conjugations are formed in precisely the same way in the Present Indicative, except that the First Conjugation has lost the final -ā- of the Stem in the first person singular (originally **ama-ō**, like **moneō**).

b. You will now need to learn the following Rules, which will explain various changes to be seen here or later:

100. 1. *A vowel is regularly short before another vowel or* h.

a. Thus **ama-ō** (becoming **amō**), not **amā-ō**, and **mone-ō**, not **monē-ō**.

2. *Every originally long vowel was regularly shortened before final* m *or* t, *before* nt *and* nd *anywhere, and, except in monosyllables,*[2] *before final* r *or* l.

a. Thus **amā-t** and **amā-nt** became **ama-t** and **ama-nt,** and **monē-t** and **monē-nt** became **mone-t** and **mone-nt.**

---

[1] We have seen the ending -m in the verb **sum,** *am.*

[2] I. e., words of one syllable.

101. Certain Latin verbs express Quality, Attitude, or Relation, just as adjectives do, and hence are followed[1] by a Dative of Figurative Direction (general rule in **67**).

a. Thus, just as one says **vīta rūstica mihi grāta est,** *country life is agreeable to me,* so one says **vīta rūstica mihi placet,** *country life is pleasing to me* (or *country life pleases me*).

102.   VOCABULARY

causa, *cause, reason.*
ferē, Adv., *generally;* (then) *about, almost.*
habeō, *have; hold; regard.*

moneō, *admonish, warn, chide, instruct.*
placeō, *am pleasing, please.* (Word of Quality, taking Dat.)

103.   READING MATTER

1. Nunc, coqua, parāta sum tē iuvāre.

2. Fīliās tuās saepe monēs? (Ans.) Fīliās meās nōn saepe moneō, quia mihi ferē semper placent.

3. Domina mea mē saepe sine causā monet. Iūsta nōn est.

4. Pecūniam, amīcae meae, nōn multam habētis. Cūr tam laetae estis? (Ans.) Pecūniam nōn habēmus multam; sed multās nōn habēmus cūrās.

5. Vīta rūstica tibi grāta est? (Ans.) Vīta rūstica mihi placet. Tranquillam amō vītam.

104.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I am happy. My country villa pleases (= is pleasing to) me.

2. Your life pleases you, mine (pleases) me.

3. We love to help the cook, because she is always kind.

4. Do we please you? (The mother answers) You do please me almost always. I have *good* daughters.

5. I do not please my mistress. She is generally harsh to me.

6. My friends often chide me without reason. They are not just.

---

[1] "Followed by" does not refer to the order of the sentence, but only to the effect of one word upon another.

LESSON XIII

GRAMMATICAL GENDER[1]

105. Nouns of the First Declension are feminine, except a few which denote males. These are masculine.

106. In the Second Declension, to which we now pass, nouns in **-um** are neuter. Most others are masculine.

  a. In this Declension, the stem originally ended in -o-.
  b. The Declension of Adjectives closely follows that of Nouns.

107. SECOND DECLENSION: o-*Stems, in* -us *and* -um

	servus, slave, M.[2]	bonus, good.	dōnum, gift, N.[2]	bonum good.	*Endings*	
Stem	servo-	bono-	dōno-	bono-		
					M. and F.[2]	N.
		SINGULAR				
Nom.	servus	bonus	dōnum	bonum	-us	-um
Gen.	servī	bonī	dōnī	bonī	-ī	
Dat.	servō	bonō	dōnō	bonō	-ō	
Acc.	servum	bonum	dōnum	bonum	-um	
Voc.	serve	bone	dōnum	bonum	-e	-um
Abl.	servō	bonō	dōnō	bonō	-ō	
		PLURAL				
Nom.	servī	bonī	dōna	bona	-ī	-a
Gen.	servōrum	bonōrum	dōnōrum	bonōrum	-ōrum	
Dat.	servīs	bonīs	dōnīs	bonīs	-īs	
Acc.	servōs	bonōs	dōna	bona	-ōs	-a
Voc.	servī	bonī	dōna	bona	-ī	-a
Abl.	servīs	bonīs	dōnīs	bonīs	-īs	

  a. It is only in the Masc. and Fem. Sing. of Second Declension words in -us *that the Voc. regularly differs from the Nom.*
  b. Learn to decline **servus** and **bonus** separately and together, and **dōnum** and **bonum** separately and together.

---

[1] Gender is in Latin quite as much a matter of termination and of relationship to other words as of sex.
[2] M. means masculine, F. feminine, and N. neuter.

108.   VOCABULARY

agricola (Masculine), *farmer.*
amīcus, (man or boy) *friend.*
bene, Adv. (cf.[1] bonus), *well.*
dominus, *master.*
dōnum, *gift, present.*
Gallus, *a Gaul.* Also a man's
   name, *Gallus.*
hortus, *garden.*

labōrō, *labor, work.*
male, Adv. (cf. malus), *badly.*
Mārcus, *Mark,* a name.
numquam, Adv., *never.*
satis, Adv. and Noun, *sufficiently,*
   enough.
servus, (man) *servant* or (man)
   slave.

109.   READING MATTER

1. Mihi placet in hortō cum agricolā labōrāre.

2. Casa Gallī servī parva sed satis magna est. (Ans.) Casae
servōrum parvae ferē sunt.

3. Tibi, Galle, dominus tuus saepe īrātus est. (Ans.) Bonus
sum servus, et bene ferē labōrō. Dominō cūr numquam placeō?
Mē semper sine causā monet.

4. Bonōs, Mārce, habēs servōs. Beātus es. Meī servī male
labōrant.

5. Dōnum tuum, amīce, mihi placet. Bonus es.

6. Servīs meīs dōna parva saepe dō. Satis bonī servī sunt.
(Ans.) Bonum habent dominum.

110.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Where is Gallus? (Ans.) He is with the farmer in the
garden.

2. Gallus, your master's garden is small. (Ans.) It is large
enough.

3. Mark, why do you chide your slaves without reason? (Ans.)
I chide my slaves because they often work badly.

4. Why do you never give little presents to your slaves?

5. The slaves of *kind* masters are generally good.

6. I love my master, because he is always kind.

7. I love to work well, because I love to please my master.

8. Why do you chide your friend?

---

[1] For the Latin cōnfer, meaning *compare.*

LESSON XIV

SECOND DECLENSION (Cont'd): SHORTENED ro-STEMS

111. The Second Declension includes a number of Nouns and Adjectives, called **ro-** and **rā**-Stems, in which the Nominative ending has been shortened.[1] Thus:

	NOUNS			ADJECTIVES	
	puer, *boy,* M.	**ager,** *field,* M.	**vir,** *man,* M.	**miser,** *miserable*	**piger,** *lazy*
Stems	**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**	**misero-**	**pigro-**

SINGULAR

Nom.	puer	ager	vir	miser	piger
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	miserī	pigrī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	miserō	pigrō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	miserum	pigrum
Voc.	puer	ager	vir	miser	piger
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	miserō	pigrō

PLURAL

Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	miserī	pigrī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	miserōrum	pigrōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	miserīs	pigrīs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	miserōs	pigrōs
Voc.	puerī	agrī	virī	miserī	pigrī
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	miserīs	pigrīs

a. Decline these new words separately. Then decline **puer piger** together, and **vir miser** together. Then decline **amīcus miser** together (Gen. amīcī miserī, Dat. amīcō miserō, etc.)

b. Notice that the endings of these new words differ from those of **servus** and **bonus** *only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.* You have thus but one new form to learn.

---

[1] Originally the forms were the same in **servus, puer, ager,** etc., namely Nom. **servo-s** (becoming **servus** later), **puero-s, agro-s,** etc. But the ro-stems *lost* the -os in the Nominative. Thus original **pueros** became **puer.** If in such stems the r immediately followed a consonant, an e-sound crept in. Thus original **agros** became **agr,** then **ager.**

IRREGULAR FORMS OF DECLENSIONS I AND II

112. 1. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** have the Genitive Singular in -ī (not -iī). Thus **Cornēlius**, *Cornelius*, Gen. **Cornēlī**; ingenium, *intellect*, Gen. ingenī.

2. Nouns in **-ius** form the Vocative in -ī. Thus **Cornēlius**, *Cornelius*, Voc. **Cornēlī**; fīlius, *son*, Voc. fīlī.

a. These contracted Genitives and Vocatives in -ī have the accent on the penult, even if it is short. Thus ingénī.

b. **Meus**, *mine*, has the irregular Voc. Sing. Masculine mī.

113. Fīlia, *daughter*, has the form fīliābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, to avoid confusion with fīliīs, *sons*, from fīlius.

114. **VOCABULARY**

(From here on, the Genitive of every noun will be given, together with the Gender, indicated by M., F., or N., and the Declension; also, for adjectives, the three Nominatives, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.)

ager, agrī, M. 2, *land, field.*

Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2, *Cornelius*, a name.

discipulus, -ī, M. 2, *pupil, schoolboy.*

fāma, -ae, F. 1, *fame, report, reputation.*

fīlius, fīlī, M. 2, *son.*

ingenium, ingénī, N. 2, *intellect, ability.*

magister, -trī, M. 2, *master* (= teacher).

miser, misera, miserum, *miserable, unhappy.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy.*

impiger, impigra, impigrum (from in, meaning not, + piger, lazy), *energetic, industrious.*

puella, -ae, F. 1, *girl.*

puer, -ī, M. 2, *boy.*

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*

validus, -a, -um, *strong.*

vir, virī, M. 2, *man.*

115. **READING MATTER**

1. Fīliīs meīs grātum[1] est in hortō et agrīs cum agricolīs labōrāre, fīliābus meīs placet coquam in culīnā iuvāre.

2. Dominus servīs impigrīs dōna multa dat.

---

[1] Translate: *It is agreeable*, etc. This "it" is merely an "expletive."— Notice that an adjective (as **grātum**) agreeing with an infinitive (as **labōrāre**) is neuter.

3. Tē, Galle, dominus numquam laudat. Male labōrās.

4. Tē, puer piger, magister saepe monet. Nōn bene labōrās.

5. Cornēlī, fīlī mī, satis impiger nōn es. Nōn amō puerum pigrum.

6. Fāma ingenī Cornēlī nōn magna est. Bonus nōn est discipulus.

7. Magister puerōrum pigrōrum et puellārum pigrārum miser est.

8. Vir validus et impiger es. Amīcī tuī tē et laudant et amant.

9. Iūlia nōn pulchra est, sed bene labōrat. Bona est coqua.

10. Fīliī tuī, amīce mī, pulchrī sunt, fīliae tuae pulchrae.

116.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. My son has good ability. Why does he work badly? Does he like a bad reputation?

2. Cornelius, my son, you are strong, and have good enough ability; but you are lazy. You are a bad pupil.

3. It pleases my daughters to work. They are energetic girls.

4. You work well, girls. You please me.

5. The lazy boy is generally unhappy.

6. The energetic man is almost always happy.

7. Why do you chide me, master? (Ans.) Because you work badly in the fields.

ROMAN SCHOOL, FROM POM-
PEIAN WALL PAINTING
Ancient Aids to Learning

LESSON XV

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Summary)

117. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are declined like nouns of similar form.

bonus, *good* (Masculine like **servus**)

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, *miserable* (Masc. like **puer**)   **piger,** *lazy* (Masc. like **ager**)

SINGULAR / SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

PLURAL / PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

a. You have had all these forms before, with those of the corresponding nouns. But you must now learn to *recite the three genders side by side for each case* (thus **bonus, bona, bonum,** etc.), in order that you may quickly recognize a given case and gender, and quickly form one in writing Latin.

b. The Stems of **bonus** are **o-** and **ā-**Stems, those of **miser** and **piger ro-** and **rā-**Stems.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

118. We have constantly seen the Adjective taking different forms, according to the *gender*, the *number*, and the *case* of the word to which it belongs. Thus we find **serva bona, servārum bonārum, servus bonus, servum bonum, servōrum bonōrum,** etc., etc. We can then state the usage in the following rule:

119. *Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.*

a. This of course does not mean that a Noun and its Adjective must necessarily have the same *endings*. Thus, if we wish to say "the good farmer," the masculine form must be used for "good," since **agricola** is masculine. The declension will then be:

> *Nom.* agricola bonus
> *Gen.* agricolae bonī
> *Dat.* agricolae bonō
> *Acc.* agricolam bonum
> *Voc.* agricola bone
> *Abl.* agricolā bonō

and similarly in the plural.

120. **READING MATTER**

1. Mārcus agricola vir validus et impiger est.
2. Agrī agricolae bonī semper pulchrī sunt.
3. Mārcus, Mārcī agricolae fīlius, bonus est discipulus.
4. Fāma Mārcī, Mārcī fīlī, bona est. Impiger est discipulus.
5. Ingenium tuum, Cornēlī, nōn malum est, fāma tua mala.

6. Discipulus piger magistrō nōn placet. Impigrum amat magister puerum.

7. Hortus fīliārum meārum pulcher nōn est. Pigrae sunt puellae.

8. Fīliae meae pigrae et miserae sunt, tuae impigrae et laetae. Beātus es.

121.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. It often pleases little boys to work in gardens.
2. *My* little sons love to help the farmers in the fields.
3. The good farmer is kind to the little boys and girls.
4. Mark is both an energetic farmer and a good man.
5. Mark, your son's[1] ability is great. You are fortunate.
6. (To another father) Your son Cornelius has sufficiently good ability and is strong. 7. But he is lazy. Lazy boys give a teacher many cares.

---

[1] "The ability of your son."

YOUNG ROMAN, PORTRAIT BUST

LESSON XVI

VOICE

122. The Active Voice represents the Subject of the Verb as *acting*, the Passive represents it as *acted upon*. Thus **moneō,** *I warn* (Active), **moneor,** *I am warned* (Passive).

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

123.   Present Indicative, Active[1] and Passive

FIRST CONJUGATION, *Stem* amā-.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	amō, *I love*	amor, *I am loved*
2d "	amās, *you love*	amāris or -re, *you are loved*
3d "	amat, *he (she, it) loves*	amātur, *he (she, it) is loved*
1st Pl.	amāmus, *we love*	amāmur, *we are loved*
2d "	amātis, *you love*	amāminī, *you are loved*
3d "	amant, *they love*	amantur, *they are loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION, *Stem* monē-.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	moneō, *I warn*	moneor, *I am warned*
2d "	monēs, *you warn*	monēris or -re, *you are warned*
3d "	monet, *he (she, it) warns*	monētur, *he (she, it) is warned*
1st Pl.	monēmus, *we warn*	monēmur, *we are warned*
2d "	monētis, *you warn*	monēminī, *you are warned*
3d "	monent, *they warn*	monentur, *they are warned*

124. The Personal Endings are thus seen to be as follows:

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.		-ō (or -m)	-r
2d	"	-s	-ris or -re
3d	"	-t	-tur
1st Pl.		-mus	-mur
2d	"	-tis	-minī
3d	"	-nt	-ntur

---

[1] Repeated for review and comparison.

125. Notice and remember the following, which are true of all the passive forms of the Finite Verb[1] made from the stem seen in the Present Indicative:

1. The Second Person Plural always ends in -minī.
2. All other forms contain an r somewhere in the termination.

THE AGENT OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

126. *The Agent of the Passive Voice* (the person *by whom* the act is performed) *is expressed by the Ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab.**[2] Thus:

Servus ā dominō culpātur, *the servant is blamed by the master.*

127.   READING MATTER

1. Domina mē amat (Active). Ā dominā amor (Passive).
2. Magister puerum pigrum monet. Puer piger ā magistrō monētur.
3. Ā magistrō saepe monēris. Piger es discipulus.
4. Bene, fīliī meī, nōn labōrātis. Ā magistrō saepe monēminī.
5. Agrī Mārcī, agricolae validī, pulchrī sunt, et ā multīs[3] laudantur.
6. Impigrī sumus servī, sed ā dominō numquam laudāmur.
7. Impigrae estis puellae, et ā magistrō laudāminī saepe.

128.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The queen blames the harsh master (Active). The harsh master is blamed by the queen (Passive).
2. Gallus, you are often admonished by the mistress.
3. I am often praised by my kind mistress.
4. My daughters, you are not admonished by a kind teacher without reason. 5. You are lazy girls. 6. I am not happy. I do not love lazy[3] (people).

---

[1] The Finite Verb, as will be seen later (**338**), is made up of the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

[2] The meaning was originally *from*, the conception being that of the person *from whom* the action started. Compare "an arrow shot from a well-experienced archer." Shakespeare, Per. i. 1. 164.

[3] Adjective used as a Noun (Masculine, because general).

LESSON XVII

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

129. Nine Adjectives, called Pronominal, are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, *except in the Genitive and Dative Singular*, which have the peculiar *Pronominal*[1] *Endings* **-īus** and **-ī** in all genders. But **alius** has Neuter **aliud**, and its Genitive is generally replaced by **alterīus**, from **alter**. The nine words are:

ūnus, *one, only*   alius, *other, another* (of several)
ūllus, *any*   alter, *the other, another* (of two)
nūllus, *none, no*   uter, *which?* (of two)
sōlus, *sole, alone*   neuter, *neither* (of two)
                    tōtus, *total, whole*

a. Except **ūnus** and **sōlus**, these lack the Vocative.

130. The Declension in the singular is thus as follows:

	tōtus, *whole*			alter, *the other*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	alius, *another*			uter, *which?* (of two)		
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	(alterīus	alterīus	alterīus)	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	utrum	utram	utrum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	utrō	utrā	utrō

---

[1] These endings will be seen later in many pronouns, as ille, *that* (**145**).

a. The Plural is like that of any other Adjectives of the First and Second Declension. Thus Nominative **aliī, aliae, alia,** Genitive **aliōrum, aliārum, aliōrum,** Dative **aliīs, aliīs, aliīs,** etc.

b. Note that in these words the Nominative Plural Masculine is identical with the Dative Singular (thus **aliī** is in either case). Be on your guard, then, when you meet such a form.

131. When **alius** is repeated (**alius** . . . **alius** . . .), the meaning is *one . . . another* . . . (in the Plural, *some . . . others* . . .). When **alter** is repeated (**alter** . . . **alter** . . .), the meaning is *one . . . the other* . . . (in the Plural, *one party . . . the other party* . . .).

132. You will notice, in the Reading Matter below, that the pronominal adjectives precede their nouns. And you will find, as you go on, that this is only one illustration of a general usage, which may be briefly stated as follows:

133. *Words of Exactness, Quantity, or Number*[1] *normally precede their nouns.*

134.   **VOCABULARY**

(Add the Pronominal Adjectives learned in **129**)

an, Conj., *or* (in second part of a question).

faveō, *be favorable to, favor.* (Word of Attitude, taking Dat.)

magis, Adv., *more.*

minus, Adv., *less.*

nōnnumquam, Adv. (**nōn** + **numquam,** not never) *sometimes.*

quam, Adv., *how, as, than.* Thus: **quam multī,** *how many;* **tam quam,** *so* (*much*) *as, as* (*much*) *as;* **magis quam,** *more than,* **minus quam,** *less than.*

-que, Conj., *and* (enclitic[2]). Represents closer connection than et.

schola, -ae, F. 1, *school.*

135.   **READING MATTER**

1. Ūnus discipulus ā magistrō saepe laudātur. Cūr nōn aliī tam laudantur quam Mārcus? Cūr nōn tōta schola nōnnumquam laudātur? (Ans.) Quia nūllus alius discipulus semper bene labōrat. Nōn favet magister discipulō ūllī.

---

[1] E. g.: "this" man, the "other" man (exactness); "much" money, the "whole" school (quantity); "one" boy, "ten" pupils (number).

[2] Enclitic means "leaning back upon" something else.

2. (The master) Cornēliō nōn minus faveō quam Mārcō. Sed alter piger est, alter impiger.

* 3. (A visitor remarks) Quam male labōrat Cornēlius! (Ans.) Piger est discipulus, et saepe culpātur monēturque ā magistrō.

4. (A pupil to the teacher) Utrī magis favēs, Mārcō an Cornēliō? (Ans.) Neutrī magis quam alterī faveō. Tōtīus scholae, nōn ūnīus sōlīus discipulī, magister sum. Sed aliōs discipulōs laudō, aliōs[1] moneō, quia aliī bene labōrant semper, aliī[1] nōnnumquam pigrī sunt.

136. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Some pupils the master often praises; others he censures and[2] warns. *One* he always *praises*.

2. (A pupil says) Teacher, I often work well. 3. Why do you not sometimes praise me as (much) as Mark?[3]

4. Other pupils are lazy sometimes, and are sometimes admonished. 5. Mark alone *always* works well, and is *never* admonished.

6. (Cornelius) Which does the teacher favor, you or me? 7. (Mark) He favors neither. He favors *no*[4] pupil more than any others. 8. He is ready to help the whole school. 9. He is kind to the whole school; he is the *friend* of the whole school.

10. (The master) I am ready to help Cornelius not less than Mark. 11. But one (of the two) always works well, the other *sometimes*.

---

[1] Where, as in this sentence, there is an obvious pair of contrasting ideas, Latin generally does not use a conjunction, while English generally does (*and, but, while,* etc.). Thus **aliōs laudō, aliōs moneō,** *I praise some, (while) I warn others.*

[2] Show the close connection of the ideas "censures" and "warns" by your choice between **et** and **-que**.

[3] Look out for your case! The meaning is "praise me as-much as (you praise) Mark."

[4] Emphatic. Make your Latin word so by your order.

LESSON XVIII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

PRESENT IMPERATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

137. The Imperative Mood expresses Command, Advice, Request, Entreaty, etc., as in English. In the Present of the First and Second Conjugations the Second Persons Singular and Plural are formed as follows:

		PRESENT ACTIVE	PRESENT PASSIVE
I			
Conj.	*2d Sing.*	amā, *love (thou)*	amāre, *be (thou) loved*
	2d Pl.	amāte, *love (ye)*	amāminī, *be (ye) loved*
II			
Conj.	*2d Sing.*	monē, *advise (thou)*	monēre, *be (thou) advised*
	2d Pl.	monēte, *advise (ye)*	monēminī, *be (ye) advised*
Irreg.	*2d Sing.*	es, *be (thou)*	*(be* can have no passive)
	2d Pl.	este, *be (ye)*	

a. Note that the 2d Sing. Imperative Active is the same as the bare stem (amā-, monē-; cf. **92**).

b. Note that the 2d Sing. Imperative Passive is the same as the Infinitive Active (amāre),[1] and the 2d Pl. the same as the 2d Pl. Indicative Passive (amāminī).

THE PRESENT INFINITIVES, ACTIVE (Repeated) AND PASSIVE

138. The Infinitives Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations are formed like the following:

		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Conj.	*I*	amāre, *to love*	amārī, *to be loved*
"	*II*	monēre, *to warn*	monērī, *to be warned*

---

[1] Thus amāre can mean either *to love* or *be (thou) loved;* etc., etc. It is only the *surroundings* (called the *context*) that can tell you which is the meaning in a given case.

a. Note that, to form the Present Infinitive, you add **-re** to the stem for the Active, and **-rī** for the Passive (**amā-re, amā-rī; monē-re, monē-rī**). And

b. To make the Passive Infinitive from the Active, you change **-re** to **-rī** (thus **culpā-re,** *to blame,* **culpā-rī,** *to be blamed*).

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN **ipse,** *self, very.*

139. The Intensive Pronoun **ipse,** *self,* is declined precisely like the Pronominal Adjectives, except for the single form **ipse.** Thus:

ipse, *self*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse[1]	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Voc.	———	———	———	———	———	———
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS

140. Since the form of the verb shows its person and number, the Personal Pronouns are generally not expressed as subjects. But they are necessarily expressed where *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended. Thus:

Ego culpor, tū laudāris, I *am blamed,* YOU *are praised.*

141.

ego, *I.* Nominative.

etiam, Adv., *even, also.*

impigrē, Adv. (cf. **impiger**), *energetically, vigorously.*

ipse, -a, -um, *self.* In English we say (my)self, (him)self, etc.

ita, Adv., *in such a way, thus, so.*

itaque, Adv. (**ita** + **que**), *and so, therefore, accordingly.*

lūdus, -ī, M. 2, *play, sport, game.*

sōlum, Adv. (cf. **sōlus**), *only.* **Nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam . . .** *not only . . . but also . . .*

studeō (cf. **studium** below), *be zealous for, be eager for, be devoted to; study.* (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

studium, studī, N. 2, *zeal, interest; study.*

tū, *thou, you* (Sing.) Nominative.

---

[1] In many forms of various pronouns, it is difficult to distinguish the ending. Accordingly the terminations will nowhere be given in special type.

142.   READING MATTER

1. Tū studia an lūdōs magis amās? Ego lūdōs magis amō.

2. Impiger es,[1] fīlī mī, et cum studiō labōrā. Ego ipse labōrō.

3. Impigrī este, fīliī meī. Bene studēte, et ā mē laudāminī.[1]

4. (The father) Cūr, fīlī mī, ā magistrō semper laudātur Mārcus, tū culpāris monērisque? Monērī magis amās quam laudārī? (Ans.) Ego laudārī tam amō quam Mārcus amat; sed magister Mārcō favet, mihi nōn favet.

5. (The father answers) Ita nōn est. Magister discipulō favet nūllī.[2] Tē nōn minus parātus est iuvāre quam Mārcum. Sed tū lūdīs sōlīs studēs, Mārcus nōn sōlum lūdōs sed etiam studia amat. Itaque tū ā nūllō[3] laudāris, Mārcus laudātur et ā magistrō et ab ipsīs discipulīs. Tū quoque nunc impigrē studē, et ā magistrō laudāre, nōn monēre.

143.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Do *you* like[4] better[4] to be praised or to be blamed?

2. *I* like better to be praised, and-so I work.

3. The master favors others.

4. (Ans.) It isn't so. The fault is yours, my friend.

5. Work as energetically as Mark (works).

6. Love not only your sports but also your studies.

7. Be an energetic pupil; study with interest, and be praised by the master and your friends.

8. Be energetic pupils. Study well, and be praised, not warned.

9. (Dialogue of pupils) Cornelius has good ability.

10. (Ans.) He *has* good ability, (but) *no* interest.

11. He is-devoted-to sports alone.

12. I myself love and[5] praise sports not less than studies, but I praise no lazy boys.

---

[1] How do you know whether this is Indicative or Imperative?

[2] What effect has the suspense?

[3] " By *no (man)*"=" by *nobody*." **Nūllus** is here used like a Noun.

[4] Use **amō** and **magis**.

[5] Use the conjunction of close connection.

LESSON XIX

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

144. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	IRREGULAR
	I was loving,	*I was warning,*	*I was,*
	you were loving, etc.	*you were warning,* etc.	*you were,* etc.
1st Sing.	amābam	monēbam	eram
2d "	amābās	monēbās	erās
3d "	amābat	monēbat	erat
1st Pl.	amābāmus	monēbāmus	erāmus
2d "	amābātis	monēbātis	erātis
3d "	amābant	monēbant	erant

a. The Tense-Sign of the Imperfect Indicative is -bā-, which is added to the stem seen in the Present. Thus amā-bā-m, monē-bā-m, shortened to amā-ba-m, monē-ba-m; cf. **100**, 2.

b. The Imperfect represents an action as going on at some point or period in past time (English "Past Progressive Tense"). It thus expresses a *past state of affairs, a past situation*, as in cēnābam, *I was dining.*

145. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE[1] PRONOUN ille, *that*,[2] *he*[3]

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. **Iste,** *this* (of yours), *that* (of yours), *he,* is declined like **ille.**

---

[1] A Determinative Pronoun (also called Demonstrative) shows just *who* or just *what* is meant, as in "*That* is the man; *he* did it, not I."

[2] "That" (Plural "those"), the English "Demonstrative" Pronoun.

[3] "He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" pronoun.

SUBSTANTIVES DEFINED.—PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES AS SUBSTANTIVES

146. Words which express persons or things are conveniently called *Substantives*. A noun is thus a Substantive. So is a personal pronoun like tū. Thus, if I say, **tū, Cornēlī,** *you, Cornelius,* both words are Substantive.

a. The Determinative Pronouns may be used in all cases as Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. Thus, **ille,** *he,* **illa,** *she,* **illud,** *it;* **illīus dōnum** (the gift of him), *his gift;* **illī,** *to him,* etc.

b. We have several times seen that *Adjectives may be used as Substantives,* i. e., as if they were in themselves expressions of persons or things. Thus **ā multīs laudantur,** *they are praised by many.*

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS AS ADJECTIVES

147. The Determinative Pronouns are also used as Determinative Adjectives, agreeing with a Noun. Thus **ille puer,** *that boy,* **illa puella,** *that girl,* **illud dōnum,** *that gift.*

a. The Determinative Adjectives normally precede their nouns, under the principle of **133.**

"CLAUSE" AND "PHRASE" DEFINED

148. 1. A Clause is a member of a sentence containing a Finite Verb of its own, or an Infinitive of corresponding value. Thus, in "it pleases me that you do this," the words "that you do this" are a Clause. Similarly, in "it is sweet to die for fatherland," the words "to die for fatherland" are a Clause.

a. An enclitic conjunction introducing a clause or phrase is naturally attached to the first word. Thus:

Cornēlium iuvā, illīque favē, *help Cornelius and favor him.*

2. A Phrase is a group of associated words *not* containing a Finite Verb, or Infinitive of corresponding value.

a. Thus, in **cum studiō labōrā,** *work with zeal,* **cum studiō** is a Phrase.

149. **VOCABULARY**

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill.*

aegrē, Adv., *in an ill manner, ill, with difficulty.*

bellum, -ī, N. 2, *war.*

enim, Conj., *for.* Like **nam,** but postpositive in its clause.[1]

nam, Conj., *for.* Cf. **enim.**

Germānus, -ī, M. 2, *a German.*

ille, -a, -ud, *that; he, she, it.*

iste, -a, -ud, *this (of yours)* or *that (of yours); he, she, it.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um (nōn + nūllus, = not none), *some.* In Pl., *some, several, not a few.*

novus, -a, -um, *new.*

nūper, Adv., *recently.*

ōtium, ōtī, N. 2, *ease, repose; leisure; peace.*

perīculum, -ī, N. 2, *peril, danger.*

probō, *approve.*

timeō, *fear, be afraid.*

tum, Adv., *at that time, then.*

READING MATTER

(In the following sentences, a past state of affairs and a present state of affairs are contrasted, by the use of the Imperfect and Present tenses.)

150. 1. Mārcus nūper bene labōrābat. Fāma illīus discipulī magna erat. Illum et magister et tōta schola laudābant. Nunc ita nōn est. Nōnnūllī illum etiam culpant.

2. (The teacher) Nūper, Mārce, bene labōrābās, studiumque tuum tōta schola laudābat. Nunc impigrē nōn labōrās. (Ans.) Ita est. Validus tum eram. Nunc aeger sum; itaque aegrē labōrō. Tū ipse mihi favē, mēque iuvā.

3. Nūper, amīcī meī, ōtium laudābātis, ōtiō studēbātis. Nunc bellum sōlum laudātis. (Ans.) Tum nūllum timēbāmus perīculum. Nunc Germānōs timēmus. (First speaker) Istud ōtium tum nōn probābam. Nunc istī studiō novō nōn faveō; nam ego (or ego enim) perīculum ā[2] Germānīs timeō nūllum.

151. **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Recently, my friends, you were favoring peace. Why are you now favoring war? 2. (Ans.) At-that-time we feared[3] no danger. Now we are expecting war from the Germans themselves.

---

[1] I. e., *placed after* the first word of its clause, as in **ille enim,** *for he; sometimes* after a prepositional phrase, as in **ab illō enim,** *for by him.*

[2] *From.*   [3] "Feared" here = "were fearing,"— a past *situation.*

3. That war was just: this new war (of yours) is not just. 4. I approved[1] that: I do not approve this.

5. *Some* (people) never favor war.

6. My son, I do not favor this friend (of yours). 7. His[2] reputation is not good. 8. He is strong, but works badly.

9. Warn and help this friend (of yours), for he is not working well now. 10. (Ans.) He is ill, and is working with difficulty.

---

[1] = *was approving;* past situation.
[2] See section **146**, *a* for the way to express "his."

VILLA D'ESTE, AT TIVOLI (TĪBUR). BUILT IN 1549

LESSON XX

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

152. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE (Repeated) AND PASSIVE

	FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	I was loving, etc.	*I was being loved,* etc.	*I was warning,* etc.	*I was being warned,* etc.
1st Sing.	amābam	amābar	monēbam	monēbar
2d "	amābās	amābāris *or* -re	monēbās	monēbāris *or* -re
3d "	amābat	amābātur	monēbat	monēbātur
1st Pl.	amābāmus	amābāmur	monēbāmus	monēbāmur
2d "	amābātis	amābāminī	monēbātis	monēbāminī
3d "	amābant	amābantur	monēbant	monēbantur

a. The stem of the passive is the same as in the active (amābā-, monēbā-). The personal endings are the regular ones seen in **124.**

153. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE PRO-NOUN is, *this*,[1] *that*,[1] *the*,[2] *he*,[3] *she*, *it*

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī *or* iī (ī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius[4]	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)

a. In the Pl., the preferred forms are spelled with two i's, but pronounced with one.

---

[1] "This" (Plural "these") and "that" (Plural "those"), the English "Demonstrative" Pronouns.

[2] "The," the English *Definite* Article.

[3] "He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" Pronoun.

[4] Pronounce as if written with two i's, ei-ius (= ĕh¹-yoos). The first syllable is thus long. So regularly with e-i, a-i.

154. VOCABULARY

anteā (ante + eā), Adv., *before this; before that; formerly.*

condiscipulus, -ī, M. 2 (con- = cum), *fellow pupil, schoolmate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, *all* (together), *whole.* In Pl., *all, everybody.*

dīligentia, -ae, F. 1, *diligence.*

is, ea, id, *this, that, the; he, she, it.*

magnopere (first part from magnus, second from a word meaning work), Adv., *greatly.*

sī, Conj., *if.*

155. READING MATTER

1. (A schoolmate of Cornelius, to his father) Cornēlius nūper male labōrābat, eiusque fāma mala erat. Is ā magistrō et ā condiscipulīs nōnnūllīs culpābātur. Nunc cūnctī eī puerō favent, cūnctī eum probant: nunc enim labōrat. (The father) Sī ita est, id¹ mihi magnopere placet.

2. Anteā, mī fīlī, ā magistrō saepe monēbāris; nunc ab eō laudāris. (Ans.) Ita est. Anteā ōtium amābam, et saepe culpābar. Sed illa fāma mala mihi nōn placēbat. Itaque nunc cum studiō labōrō. (The father) Ista nova dīligentia mihi placet.

3. Fīliī meī anteā ā magistrō culpābantur. Nunc laudantur.

4. Anteā, fīliī meī, ā magistrō saepe culpābāminī. (Ans.) Ita est. Anteā culpābāmur. Sed nunc laudāmur. Laudārī magis amāmus.

156. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Recently Cornelius was being blamed. 2. Now, all his schoolmates approve him, all are praising his new diligence.

3. Formerly, my friends, you were being praised by everybody.² 4. Now you are (being) warned by many. 5. This does not please me greatly. 6. (Ans.) *Then* we were not sick, *now* we are.

7. Recently no dangers were feared. 8. Now danger is feared from the Germans; for they are strong, and are-eager-for war.

9. Recently, my friend, you were (being) censured. 10. If some (people) are now praising you, I am glad.

---

¹ *This* (thing), *this, it.* 　　　　² Use **cūnctī**, *all*, in the proper case.

LESSON XXI

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

157.   THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	ENDINGS	IRREGULAR
	I shall love, or	*I shall warn,* or		*I shall be,*
	I shall be loving, etc.	*I shall be warning,* etc.		etc.
1st *Sing.*	amābō	monēbō	-bō	erō
2d "	amābis	monēbis	-bis	eris
3d "	amābit	monēbit	-bit	erit
1st *Pl.*	amābimus	monēbimus	-bimus	erimus
2d "	amābitis	monēbitis	-bitis	eritis
3d "	amābunt	monēbunt	-bunt	erunt

a. The Tense-Sign of the Future Indicative in the First and Second Conjugations is -b- plus a variable vowel (-bō-, -bi-, -bu-, etc.).

b. The Future Indicative represents an act either as *going on* at some point or period in future time, or *indefinitely* in the future.

158.   DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUN īdem, *the same*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
Nom.	eīdem *or* īdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)

a. Ī́dem corresponds to **is**, with **-dem** added to every form. Before the d, m becomes n. (Thus Acc. **eun-dem** for **eum-dem.**)

b. Note that **īdem** (long i) is Masculine, and **idem** (short i) Neuter.

c. Remember the following for the Plural of **is** and **īdem:** In the Pl. of **is**, the preferred forms are spelled with two i's but pronounced with one i; in the Pl. of **īdem**, the preferred forms are spelled, as well as pronounced, with one i.

159. For **ego**, the Nom. Pl. is **nōs** (also Acc.); for **tū**, it is **vōs** (also Acc. and Voc.). Like **ego** and **tū**, these words are generally not expressed as Subjects, since the form of the Verb itself shows the person and number. But they are necessarily expressed where *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended. Thus:

Nōs culpāmur, vōs laudāminī, WE *are blamed,* YOU *are praised.*

160. In *if*-clauses referring to the future, we commonly use a Present Indicative in English. Latin is generally more exact. Thus:

Sī bene labōrābis, beātus eris, *if you* (*shall*) *work well, you will be happy.*

This will be found to be true in many constructions. Remember, then, that:

161. *In general, Latin expresses relations of time more exactly than English.*

162.   **VOCABULARY**

certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure, assured, fixed; trusty.*

certē, Adv., *certainly, surely; at any rate, at least.*

dēsīderō, *desire.*

displiceō, *be displeasing, displease* (Verb of Quality, taking Dat.).

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*

mox, Adv., *soon.*

nimis, Adv., *too much, too.*

nōs, *we, us.* Nom. and Acc. Pl. of **ego.**

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*

persevērō, *persevere.*

umquam, Adv., *ever.* (Cf. **numquam,** *never.*)

vērus, -a, -um, *true, real.*

vērō, Adv., *in truth, really, indeed.* Often merely emphasizes.

vester, vestra, vestrum (cf. **vōs** below), *your* (when two or more persons are addressed).

vōs, *you.* Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. of **tū.**

163.   READING MATTER

1. Magister tuus et ipsī condiscipulī nūper tē culpābant. Nunc bene labōrās. Sī persevērābis, īdem magister et īdem condiscipulī dīligentiam tuam laudābunt. Studia tua nūper tibi displicēbant. Eadem studia mox placēbunt, tibique certam dabunt[1] fāmam. Tū ipse laetus eris. (Ans.) Persevērābō certē. Sī studia umquam amābō, beātus erō. Sed id vērō nōn exspectō.

2. (Cornelius serves as an example. A father says to his sons) Cornēlius nūper ā cūnctīs condiscipulīs culpābātur. Eiusdem puerī fāma nunc bona est: eīdem puerō cūnctī favent, eundem cūnctī magnopere laudant; nam is bene nunc labōrat. Vōs sī impigrē studēbitis, eadem fāma mox vestra erit. Magister vester et cūnctī vērī amīcī vestrī vōs laudābunt. Etiam studia vestra amābitis. (One of them answers) Nōs studēbimus, tū sī id dēsīderās, et laetī erimus; sed studia nostra certē numquam nimis amābimus.

164.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. You will please me, my son, if you (shall) work well, and you yourself will soon be happy, for you will have a real and assured reputation. 2. You displease me now. 3. (Ans.) I will work well, and I shall really be happy, if I (shall) please you. 4. But I shall not love my studies too-much.

5. You will please me, my sons, if you (shall) work well, and you yourselves will be happy. 6. (Ans.) We will work well, if you desire this greatly, and we shall be fortunate if ever you (shall) praise us. 7. We will persevere at any rate.

8. Our son and your son Mark are studying in the same school. 9. They have the same friends, the same studies, and the same sports.

---

[1] **Dō** has a short **a** in inflection, except in words of one syllable. Thus **dare, dabam, dabō**, etc. (but **dās**). All other verbs of the first conjugation have the long **a** everywhere (except as by **100**, 2).

LESSON XXII

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

165. FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE (Repeated) AND PASSIVE

	FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	I shall love, etc.	*I shall be loved,* etc.	*I shall warn,* etc.	*I shall be warned,* etc.
1st Sing.	amābō	amābor	monēbō	monēbor
2d "	amābis	amāberis *or* -re	monēbis	monēberis *or* -re
3d "	amābit	amābitur	monēbit	monēbitur
1st Pl.	amābimus	amābimur	monēbimus	monēbimur
2d "	amābitis	amābiminī	monēbitis	monēbiminī
3d "	amābunt	amābuntur	monēbunt	monēbuntur

a. The stem of the passive is the same as in the active. The personal endings are the regular ones already seen in the present and imperfect.

166. DECLENSION OF THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN
hic, *this,*[1] *he*[2]

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius[3]	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic[4]	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. **Hic** is made up of a true pronoun, to which in certain forms a -c is added, itself meaning something like "this" or "here."

b. Notice **hae-c** in the Nom. Sing. Fem., and the Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl. The **ae** in these forms is a *special pronominal ending*, which you will see again in several pronouns.

---

[1] "This" (Plural "these"), the English "Demonstrative" pronoun.
[2] "He" (Plural "they"), the English "Personal" Pronoun.
[3] Pronounce **hui-ius** (= *hooi-yoos*).   [4] Pronounce *hooic.*

167. 1. Of the Determinative Pronouns **hic, iste,** and **ille** (now learned), **hic** means *this, he* (near the speaker), **iste** *this* (of yours), *that* (of yours), *he* (near you), and **ille** *that, he* (over there).

2. **Is,** *this, that, he* is less sharply specific, and is therefore preferred when there can be no mistake about the reference.

3. Latin has thus *four* words, **hic, iste, ille,** and **is,** used as Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. **Is** is the most common.

168. READING MATTER

1. Magister tuus tē nūper culpābat. Sī bene labōrābis, ab hōc eōdem magistrō mox laudāberis. Studia tibi anteā nimis displicēbant. Sī bene umquam studēbis, haec eadem studia ā tē[1] vērō amābuntur. Persevērā, et tū ipse laetus eris.

2. Hic puer impigrē labōrat. Haec puella cūr tam pigra est?

3. Cūnctī condiscipulī nostrī nōs culpant. Ab hīs numquam satis probābimur, etiam sī impigrē studēbimus. (Ans.) Ā mē[1] certē probābiminī; magnopere enim dēsīderō vōs laudāre.

4. Cūr tū huic scholae favēs? (Ans.) Quia cūnctī eius[2] discipulī vērī discipulī sunt.

169. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (A student, sick and despondent) I shall be censured if I do[3] not work well, even if I am[3] ill. 2. (Ans.) You will be censured by no one. All will favor you.

3. My sons, you will be censured if you do[3] not work well.

4. These new pupils are really working vigorously. 5. (Ans.) *They* will be praised by our teacher. 6. *We* shall be censured by him, even if we shall really work well.

7. This school was formerly bad. 8. Its master will not soon be happy; for the new pupils alone will work well.

9. This school is good, that (one) is too bad. 10. Therefore I favor this (one), and censure that (one).

---

[1] **Mē** and **tē** are Ablative as well as Accusative.

[2] For **eius,** following **huic,** see **167,** 2.

[3] Look out for the real tense-meaning.

LESSON XXIII

THE THIRD CONJUGATION

170. The Third Conjugation, like the others, is best recognized in the Present Infinitive. The forms are repeated below from **92.**

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM ENDS IN
I	amō	amāre, *to love*	-ā- (amā-)
II	moneō	monēre, *to warn*	-ē- (monē-)
III	tegō	tegere, *to cover*	-e- (tege-)

a. The Present Infinitive Passive of the Third Conjugation is formed with only the ending -ī. Thus **tegere** (Active) *to cover*, **tegī** (Passive) *to be covered.*

171. THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

tegō, *cover;* Stem **tege-**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1st Sing.	tegō	tegor
2d "	tegis	tegeris *or* -re
3d "	tegit	tegitur
1st Pl.	tegimus	tegimur
2d "	tegitis	tegiminī
3d "	tegunt	teguntur

a. Notice that these endings are precisely the same as those which you have just learned for the *Future* of **sum** (**erō, eris, erit,** etc.).

b. Remember that the characteristic vowel of the Third Conjugation is *variable* (thus **tege-re,** but **tegi-t, tegu-nt,** etc.).

172. THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT IMPERATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

	PRESENT ACTIVE	PRESENT PASSIVE
2d Sing.	tege, *cover (thou)*	tegere, *be (thou) covered*
2d Pl.	tegite, *cover (ye)*	tegiminī, *be (ye) covered*

a. **Tege,** like **amā** and **monē,** is the bare stem.

"YES" OR "NO" QUESTIONS, AND ANSWERS TO THEM

173. Questions calling for the answer "Yes" or "No" may be asked in the four following ways:

1. With no sign but that of the inflection of voice, or, in print, of the "question mark."

2. With **-ne** (attached to the emphatic word), implying nothing about the answer (= *a question mark at the beginning*).

3. With **nōnne**, implying the answer "yes."

4. With **num**, implying the answer "no."

Thus:

1. **Mārcus adest?** *Is Mark present?*
2. **Mārcusne adest?** *Is Mark present?*
3. **Nōnne Mārcus adest?** *Isn't Mark present?*
4. **Num Mārcus adest?** *Mark isn't present, is he?*

174. 1. Answers to "Yes" or "No" Questions may be given, as we have seen, by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Or,

2. "Yes" may be expressed by **ita, etiam, vērō, certē,** etc. (*so, even, in truth, certainly,* etc.), and "no" by **nōn, minimē,** etc. (*no, not at all,* etc.).

175.   **VOCABULARY**

(Infinitives will hereafter be given for new verbs.)

cadō, cadere, *fall.*

dē, Prep., *down from, from,* of descent. Takes Separative Abl.

equus, equī, M. 2, *horse.*

ex or **ē,** Prep., *out of, from.* Takes Separative Abl. **Ex** and **ē** before consonants, **ex** before vowels.

iam, Adv., *by this time, already, now.*

inimīcus, -ī, M. 2 (in, not, + amīcus, not friend, =) *enemy.*

minimus, -a, -um, *smallest,* or *very small.*

minimē, Adv., *in the smallest degree; not at all.*

nōbīs, Dat.-Abl. Pl. of **nōs.**

-ne, enclitic interrogative Adv., implying nothing about the answer.

nōnne, *not?* interrog. Adv., implying "yes."

num, interrog. Adv., implying "no."

petō, petere, *aim at, attack; seek, ask.*

properō, -āre, *hurry, hasten.*

regō, regere (make straight), *direct, guide, rule.*

saxum, -ī, N. 2, *stone, rock.*

tegō, tegere, *cover; shield, hide, protect.*

via, -ae, F. 1, *way, street, road.*

vōbīs, Dat.-Abl. Pl. of **vōs.**

176. READING MATTER

1. Parvīne puerī ā puerīs magnīs vestrā[1] in scholā petuntur?[2]

2. Inimīcī mē petunt; mē tege, amīce mī.

3. Nōnne tū ab amīcīs tegeris? (Ans,) Vērō. Nūllī mē petunt.

4. Nōnne vōs, puerī parvī, ab amīcīs magnīs vestrīs tegiminī? (Ans.) Ita. Semper tegimur. Amīcī nōbīs bonī sunt.

5. Ā mē regere,[3] fīlī mī. Ego tibi vērus erō amīcus.

6. Ā mē regiminī,[3] fīliī meī. Ego vōbīs certus erō amīcus.

7. Hic puer minimus est, sed equum magnum iam regit. (Second speaker) Num equus magnus ā puerō tam parvō regitur?

8. Saxa viārum dūra sunt. Nōnne tū, puer parve, saepe dē equō in ea[4] cadis? (Ans.) Minimē. Ego numquam cadō. (First speaker) Meī fīliī iam magnī sunt, sed saepe dē equīs cadunt.

9. Ex scholā properāte. Vōs in viā exspectant amīcī.

177. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I don't attack you, boys, do I? Why do you attack me?

2. Why are you attacked? Don't you yourself attack others?

3. We are attacked by our enemies. 4. If you are true and sure friends of-ours (say "to us"), protect us.

5. Does it please you, big boys, to attack little (ones)? 6. In our[5] school the smallest boys are never attacked. 7. Be guided by me. Attack no(body).

8. Are you sometimes attacked by big boys in school, my sons? 9. (Ans.) Yes, but other big boys protect us. We don't fear at all.[6]

10. You are already big, but you fall from your horses upon the stones of the street. Aren't they hard?

11. Why are you hurrying out of the street? 12. (Ans.) We are-afraid-of[7] those horses.

---

[1] **Vestrā** goes with **scholā** (a common group-order,— Adj., Prep., Noun).
[2] **Petō** has here its simple meaning, *attack*.
[3] What is this doubtful form? Consider context.
[4] "Upon them." **Ea** is Acc., because **cadis** expresses motion.
[5] Cf. footnote 1.   [6] "We fear not-at-all."   [7] "We fear."

LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued).—THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

178. 1. The Fourth Conjugation has the characteristic vowel -ī-. Thus, **audiō, audīre,** *hear.*

2. Besides these Fourth Conjugation verbs in **-iō,** there are also certain *Third* Conjugation verbs in **-iō.** Thus **capiō, capere,** *take.*

a. These were originally of the Fourth Conjugation, but came to belong to the Third through a shortening of the characteristic vowel.

b. There are thus *two* Third Conjugation types, namely in **-ō** and **-iō.**

179. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS WITH INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Conj.	Present Stem ends in		PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFIN. ACTIVE	PRESENT INFIN. PASSIVE
I	-ă-	(amā-)	amō	am-āre	am-ārī
II	-ē-	(monē-)	moneō	mon-ēre	mon-ērī
III	-e-	(tege-)	tegō	teg-ere	teg-ī
		(cape-)	capiō	cap-ere	cap-ī
IV	-ī-	(audī-)	audiō	aud-īre	aud-īrī

a. Remember carefully that the Present Passive Infinitive of the Third Conjugation, in either type, ends merely in -ī (thus **tegī, capī**); while in all the other Conjugations it ends in -rī added to the characteristic vowel (-ārī, -ērī, -īrī).

b. From here on, the Conjugation of each new verb occurring in the Vocabularies will be indicated by a number, which is to be repeated when you are asked to give the verb.

THIRD CONJUGATION (Both Types), AND FOURTH CON-
JUGATION

180.   Present Indicative, Active and Passive

	THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION

Active

1st Sing.	tegō, *cover*	capiō, *take*	audiō, *hear*
2d "	tegis	capis	audīs
3d "	tegit	capit	audit
1st Pl.	tegimus	capimus	audīmus
2d "	tegitis	capitis	audītis
3d "	tegunt	capiunt	audiunt

Passive

1st Sing.	tegor	capior	audior
2d "	tegeris *or* -re	caperis *or* -re	audīris *or* -re
3d "	tegitur	capitur	audītur
1st Pl.	tegimur	capimur	audīmur
2d "	tegiminī	capiminī	audīminī
3d "	teguntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

a. Note that all verbs showing i before another vowel in conjuga-
tion (-iō, -iunt, etc.) must belong to the Third or Fourth Conjugation.

b. Remember that i is short in the Third Conjugation, and long
in the Fourth (except, of course, in the places of regular shortening).

181.   VOCABULARY

atque or **ac,**[1] Conj., *and.* Of close
connection, like -que.

neque or **nec,**[1] Conj., *nor.* Neque
. . . , neque . . . , *neither . . .
nor* . . .

audiō, audīre, 4, *hear.*

capiō, capere, 3, *take, take up.*

cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous.*

cupiō, cupere, 3, *desire, wish,
want.*

cum, Conj., *when.*

dēsistō, -ere, 3, *desist, stop.*

faciō, facere, 3, *make, do; per-
form; act.*

fugiō, fugere, 3, *flee, run away.*

iaciō, iacere, 3, *throw.*

mūrus, -ī, M. 2, *wall.*

pugnō, pugnāre, 1, *fight.*

quid, *what?* Neut. Nom.-Acc.
Sing.

sciō, scīre, 4, *know.*

sonus, -ī, M. 2, *sound.*

stō, stāre, 1, *stand.*

videō, vidēre, 2, *see.*

---

[1] Neque generally before vowels, nec generally before consonants; atque
before either, ac only before consonants.

182. READING MATTER

1. (A quarrel begins) Nōnnūllī puerī in[1] condiscipulōs dē mūrō saxa iaciunt. (One says) Nōs dē mūrō petimur. (A passer-by) Hī puerī neque ipsī saxa capiunt nec fugiunt. (To the boys) Cūr hīc stātis? Ex viā properāte. Petī cupitis? (One of the boys) Cupidī nōn sumus. (The passer-by) Ex perīculō fugite. (Another of the boys to the rest) Minimē. Cūr nōn ipsī saxa capimus atque illōs puerōs petimus? Cūr nōn pugnāmus? Num nōs timēmus?

2. Saxa capiuntur et iaciuntur. Haec in viā cadunt. Sonus ā magistrō audītur. (He says to others) Audītisne? (They answer) Audīmus. (He goes out and calls) Ō puerī, quid facitis? Cūr saxa iacitis? Mēne audītis? Dēsistite. Hīc[2] nōn est lūdus, sed bellum vērum. Magnō in perīculō cūnctī estis. Nōnne id scītis? Haec[3] cum facitis, tum[4] vērō[4] vōbīs īrātus sum.

3. Vidē illum puerum parvum! Dē equō cadit!

183. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. *That*[5] boy *never*[5] falls from his horse.

2. Do you want to fight? (Ans.) I am not desirous. Stop.

3. What are you doing, boys? (Ans.) We are standing on the wall. 4. (The teacher) Yes, I see that myself. 5. But I hear the sound of stones. Why are you throwing them? 6. *This*[6] (is what) I want to know.

7. Do *your* pupils often throw stones? 8. (Ans.) They never throw at schoolmates. 9. But when they are attacked by boys from (=out of) other schools, they sometimes take-up stones; for they love neither to be attacked nor to run-away.

10. (A boy shouts) Protect us, friends! (To his mates) We are heard, and other boys are hurrying to us from our school.

---

[1] *Into,*= English *at.*
[2] Masc., because the *Predicate* is.
[3] *These things* (*things like these*). Note the emphatic position.
[4] *Then indeed,*= then . . . *really.*
[5] Make emphatic by position.
[6] Say merely "I want to know *this.*"

LESSON XXV

184. DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS, quis, quī

quī, Relative Pronoun, *who*, and   quis, Interrog. Pronoun, *who?*
Interrog. Adjective, *what?*   (as Substantive).

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius[1]	cuius	cuius	cuius[1]	cuius
Dat.	cui[2]	cui	cui	cui[2]	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quem	quid
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quō	quō

PLURAL (same for both words)

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Notice that quis and quī are declined alike in the Plural, and differ in the Singular only in the pairs quis, quid, and quī, quod. But quis does not distinguish between Masc. and Fem. in the Sing.

b. Notice also the ending -ae in the Nom. Fem. Sing. and the Nom. and Acc. Neut. Pl. of quī, just as in hae-c from hic (166).

c. In the Acc. Masc. Sing. quem, notice the new Acc. ending in -em.

185. The translations differ with the genders.   Thus:

Interrogative Substantive: quis? *who?* quid? *what?*
Interrogative Adjective: quī? *what? which?*
Relative: quī, *who, that* (Masc. or Fem.); *which, that* (Neuter).

---

[1] Pronounce cui-ius (= *cooi-yoos*).   [2] Pronounce *cooi*.

186. The Interrogative Pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. Thus **quem vocās?** *whom are you calling?*

a. Note the difference in form between the Interrogative as Substantive and the Interrogative as Adjective:

Quis hic est? *who is this?* (Interrogative *Substantive*).
Quī puer hic est? *what boy is this?* (Interrogative *Adjective*).
Quid parās? *what are you getting up?* (Interrogative *Substantive*).
Quod bellum parās? *what war are you getting up?* (Interrogative *Adjective*).

187. 1. The Relative Pronoun is a *connecting* pronoun referring to something that precedes or follows.

2. The word to which the Relative refers is called the *Antecedent*, because it generally *comes before* the Relative.

3. The part of the sentence consisting of the Relative, its Verb, and all that goes with them, is called the Relative Clause.

188. Examples for the use of the Relative Pronoun:

1. **Hic puer, quem tū culpās, aeger est,** *this boy, whom you are blaming, is sick.*

a. Here **quem** must of course be Masculine and Singular, because it is meant to go with (refer to) **puer,** which is Masculine and Singular; and it must be Accusative, because it is the Object of **culpās.**

2. **Hās fēminās laudō, quae bene labōrant,** *I praise these women, who work well.*

a. Here **quae** must of course be Feminine and Plural, because it is meant to refer to **fēminās,** which is Feminine and Plural; and it must be Nominative, because it is the Subject of **labōrant.**

Evidently these principles must always hold. Hence the rule:

189. *Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents in Gender and Number, but their Case depends upon their relations in the Clauses to which they belong.*

190.   READING MATTER

1. (Same subject as in **182,** 2. The teacher says) Quem sonum audiō? Quī saxa dē mūrō iaciunt? (Some one says)

Ego videō. Illī quī saxa iaciunt discipulī ex hāc scholā sunt. (The teacher, to the boys above) Quid facitis? Quod bellum parātis? Vōs quī saxa iacitis, dēsistite. Hī puerī quī in viā stant magnō in perīculō sunt. Nōnne id scītis? Haec cum facitis, tum vērō mihi magnopere displicētis.

2. (A neighbor says) Haec schola, quae tibi placet, mihi nōn placet. Nōn probō eam[1] scholam cuius discipulī in condiscipulōs saxa iaciunt.

3. Quam magnus equus![2] (Ans.) Sed hic īdem equus ā puerō parvō amat regī.

191.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. In what school are you studying? (Ans.) In the same school in which Mark is studying. 2. (First speaker) But of what school (Genitive) is Mark? (Second speaker) Don't you know that?[3]

3. (One father to another) What school do you approve? (Ans.) I favor a school in which the pupils desire to study.

4. I love the same studies that[4] you love, the same friends.

5. What are you doing? What danger are you fleeing? 6. (Ans.) Some boys are throwing stones from the wall. Don't you see?

7. When stones are thrown by your boys, what do you do? 8. (Ans.) I admonish the boys, and[5] they[5] stop.

---

[1] *That school whose, a school whose.*   [4] Here "that" = "which."
[2] *How big a horse! what a big horse!*   [3] Use **id.**   [5] Say "and these."

STAIRWAY PATH, VILLA D'ESTE

LESSON XXVI

DECLENSION OF quīcumque, *whoever*, and quīdam, *a certain*

192. The Generalizing or Indefinite Relative Pronoun **quīcumque,** *whoever*, is declined like **quī** (**184**) with **-cum-que**[1] added to each form.   Thus:

Nom.	quīcumque	quaecumque	quodcumque
Gen.	cuiuscumque	cuiuscumque	cuiuscumque
Dat.	cuicumque	cuicumque	cuicumque, etc., etc.

193. The Indefinite Pronoun **quīdam,** *a certain*, is declined like **quī** with **-dam** added, except that in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular there is a *second* form **quid-,** which is used Substantively.[2]   The declension is as follows:

SINGULAR

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam *or* quiddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam *or* quiddam
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. Notice that in **quīdam** (just as in **īdem** in **158**), m becomes n before d.   Thus **quendam** (for quemdam), **quandam** (for quamdam), etc.

---

[1] The **-que** of **quī-cum-que** is an indefinite particle, meaning *any*. **Quī-cum-que** thus = *who-any-when*, i. e., *who at any time*, i. e., *whoever*.

[2] Thus **quoddam dōnum,** *a certain gift*, but **quiddam,** *a certain thing*. This distinction,—that the *Substantive* form is **quid** and the Adjective form **quod**,—you will find to hold for all compounds in this book having **quī** or **quis** for one element.

194.   PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF ALL FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Active

Conj.	I	II	III		IV
2d Sing.	amā	monē	tege	cape	audī
2d Pl.	amāte	monēte	tegite	capite	audīte

Passive

	I	II	III		IV
2d Sing.	amāre	monēre	tegere	capere	audīre
2d Pl.	amāminī	monēminī	tegiminī	capiminī	audīminī

a. Note that the passive forms are ambiguous (read **137**, *b* again).

195.   **VOCABULARY**

accipiō, accipere, 3 (ad + **capiō,** take to oneself), *take, receive, accept.*

animus, -ī, M. 2, *mind, spirit; feeling.*

aut, Conj., *or.* **Aut ... aut ...,** *either ... or ...*

auxilium, -ī, N. 2, *aid, help.*

cēdō, cēdere, 3 (originally move, then, with Dative, *move for,* =) *yield; give way.* (Verb of Attitude, taking Dative.)

dīcō, dīcere, 3, *say, speak.*

discēdō, -ere, 3 (dis-, apart, + cēdō, move[1]), *move off, depart.*

imperātum, -ī, N. 2, *command.*

incipiō, incipere, 3 (in + **capiō,** take on), *begin.*

iniūria, -ae, F. 1, *injury, wrong.*

lapillus, -ī, M. 2, *pebble.*

pellō, pellere, 3, *drive (out or off).*

pugna, -ae, F. 1, *fight.*

quīcumque (192), *whoever.*

quīdam (193), *a certain.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, left;* as Subst. in Pl., *the rest.*

vel ... vel ..., Conj., *either ... or ...* (where a choice is offered).

vertō, vertere, 3, *turn; change.*

196.   **READING MATTER**

1. (A neighbor to the teacher) Nōnnūllī discipulōrum tuōrum nōnnumquam saxa in condiscipulōs iaciunt. Tū hunc lūdum aut nōn vidēs aut probās. Ego nōn probō. (Ans.) Lapillōs, nōn saxa, iaciunt. Sed certē neque ego probō.

2. (To the pupils, later) Mē audīte. Quiddam ā quibusdam discipulīs petō. Aliīs imperātum quoddam dare dēsīderō.

---

[1] The original meaning *move* is lost in the simple verb cēdō, but appears in all the compounds, as in discēdō in this lesson. **Dis-** is used only in composition, at the beginning of a word (hence called an "inseparable prefix").

3. (A boy) Quid ā nōbīs petis?[1] Quodcumque tū cupis, id nōs facere cupimus. 6. (The teacher) Quīdam ex vōbīs lapillōs in condiscipulōs nōnnumquam iaciunt. Hī illīs[2] nōn cēdunt. Ita pugna vēra incipit. Schola nostra magnam accipit[3] iniūriam.

4. Nunc iīs quī hās pugnās incipiunt haec dīcō: Quīcumque haec facit, is scholae iniūriam facit. Itaque vel animōs vestrōs ad aliōs lūdōs vertite, vel ex hāc scholā pellīminī; vel cēdite vel discēdite. Ā reliquīs hoc petō: Per vestrum auxilium fāmae bonae scholae nostrae favēte.

197. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The same ideas, in English) Certain boys of this school throw pebbles at little schoolmates. They[4] do not desire to do[5] harm[5] to them.[4] 2. But in whatever school pupils do these things, that school soon begins to be blamed. 3. Therefore I say to these boys: Either[6] desist or[6] depart. This is my command.

4. (A boy says to the teacher) We do not approve (of) these boys. 5. (The teacher) Then I ask help of (= from) you and the rest; for these fights do harm[5] to our good fame. 6. Say[7] to these boys that[8] which[8] you say to me, and be *heard* by them.

7. (The boy to the teasers) Either yield, or leave[9] the school, or be driven out. 8. To yield is good. It will be *bad* either to leave[8] the school, or to be driven out.

---

[1] For the meaning of **petō**, look back at Vocabulary, **175.**

[2] *These to those = the latter to the former.*

[3] *Receives injury = suffers injury.*

[4] Say "those . . . to these." Latin is more exact than English in the use of pronouns.

[5] Use **iniūriam** and **faciō** ("do an injury").

[6] This means, let them take their *choice*. Which should you use, **aut** or **vel**?

[7] **Dīc** not **dīce.** See footnote, page 204.

[8] **Id quod.**   [9] "Depart from."

LESSON XXVII

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (Finished)

198. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Conj.	II (Repeated)	III		IV
		Active		
1st Sing.	monēbam	tegēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
2d "	monēbās	tegēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
3d "	monēbat	tegēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
1st Pl.	monēbāmus	tegēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
2d "	monēbātis	tegēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
3d "	monēbant	tegēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant
		Passive		
1st Sing.	monēbar	tegēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
2d "	monēbāris	tegēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
	or -re	*or* -re	*or* -re	*or* -re
3d "	monēbātur	tegēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
1st Pl.	monēbāmur	tegēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2d "	monēbāminī	tegēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3d "	monēbantur	tegēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

a. Notice that the formation in the 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations is the same, except that the -iŏ Verbs have the additional -i-.

b. Remember now that -bā- marks the *Imperfect Indicative.*

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN quisquam, *any at all*

199. Quisquam is declined like **quis (184)**, with **-quam** added.

	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam[1]
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam[1]
Voc.	——	——
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

---

[1] For quid-quam (the q affecting the d). **Quidquam** also occurs.

a. **Quisquam** has no Plural. The *Adjective* use is supplied by **ūllus.**

b. **Quisquam** and **ūllus** are used especially with *negative ideas,* expressed or implied.

200. THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUN **quisque,**[1] *each, every*

| | AS ADJECTIVE | | | AS SUBSTANTIVE | |
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quaeque	quodque	quisque	quidque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quemque	quidque
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōque	quōque

a. Notice that **quisque** is declined exactly like **quis** (**184**) with **-que** added, except that the form **quisque** itself is used both as substantive and as adjective (whereas for **quis** the adjective form is **quī**).

b. The Plural is not common. (The forms, where used, are like those of **quis** plus **-que.** See **184**).

c. An Indefinite Pronoun **quispiam,** to be used later (**564**), is declined with **quis-** as in **quisque.**

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (or THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

201. Specimen Sentences:

Multī condiscipulōrum meōrum impigrī sunt, *many of my school-mates are energetic.*

Nūllus amīcōrum meōrum piger est, *not one of my friends is lazy.*

a. Notice that the Genitive **condiscipulōrum** (first sentence) here expresses the whole body of schoolmates, while **multī** expresses a *part* of them; and similarly that **amīcōrum meōrum** (second sentence) expresses the whole body of friends, while **nūllus** expresses a part of them.

The usage is thus as follows:

---

[1] **Quis-que** = **quis** plus the indefinite **-que** already seen = *any-who* = *every, each.*

202. *The Whole to which a Part Belongs may be expressed by the Genitive.*

a. But there is also another way in which the same idea may be expressed, as follows:

b. After most words, the whole to which a part belongs may also be expressed by dē *or* **ex** *with the Ablative.* So *regularly* with **quīdam,** and with Cardinal Numbers (one, two, three, etc.). Thus:

Multī ex·amīcīs meīs, *many of my friends* (many *out of* my friends).

Quīdam dē meīs amīcīs, *a certain one of my friends* (a certain one *from* . . . .).

Ūnus dē meīs amīcīs, *one of my friends* (one *from* . . . .).

203. VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse (ad + sum), *be by, be present, be at hand.*

contrā, *against.* Prep. of Space-Relation, taking Acc.

fleō, flēre, 2, *weep, cry.*

incommodum, -ī, N. 2, *trouble, misfortune.*

iterum, Adv., *again.*

lacessō, lacessere, 3, *worry.*

maneō, manēre, 2, *remain, continue.*

memoria, -ae, F. 1, *memory.*

modo, Adv., *just, only; just now.*

noceō, nocēre, 2, *be hurtful to, hurt, injure.* (Verb of Quality, taking Dat.)

quisquam (199), *any at all.*

quisque (200), *each, every one.*

respondeō, -ēre, 2, *respond, answer.*

Sextus, -ī, M. 2, *Sextus,* a name.

vestrum, *of you.* Gen. Pl. of tū. Cf. **vōs.**

victōria, -ae, F. 1, *victory.*

204. READING MATTER

1. (The teacher) Quis modo flēbat? (Ans.) Quīdam puer parvus. (Teacher) Cūr id faciēbat? (Ans.) Ā quibusdam puerīs magnīs lacessēbātur.

2. (Teacher) Magna haec victōria erat! Sed quis erat, quī lacessēbātur? (Ans.) Sextus erat. (Teacher) Quī eum lacessēbant? (The boys are silent. The teacher says) Nūllam habētis memoriam?[1] Cūr nōn respondētis? Certē aut scītis aut nōn scītis. (Ans.) Scīmus.

---

[1] Notice the emphasis given to **memoriam** by the slight suspense. This is an extremely common order. Use it yourself.

3. (The teacher) Videō. Scītis, sed dīcere nōn cupitis. Bene.[1]
Animum[2] vestrum probō. Num vōs hōs puerōs probātis? (One
answers) Minimē. Nōs iīs adversī sumus. Sed cum tū modo
Sextum audiēbās, nōs nōn aderāmus. Nec quisquam[3] aderat
amīcōrum Sextī, nec quicquam aliud auxilī.[4] Sōlus erat cum
iīs puerīs quī eum lacessēbant.

4. (The teacher) Auxilium vestrum contrā hōs quoque puerōs
petō. Nam id quod ūnī discipulō nocet, cuique discipulō nocet.
Itaque schola iniūriam iterum accipit. Vel hoc vel illud mihi
displicet. Manet incommodum[5] scholae.

205. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Sextus, why were you crying just-now? 2. (Sextus is silent)
Why don't you answer? Is your memory so bad? 3. (Sextus)
I was (being) worried by certain big boys, and I wished[6] to be
heard. 4. (Teacher) You were certainly (being) well heard.

5. (To the whole school) Certain of you[7] were recently throw-
ing pebbles at fellow-pupils. 6. Now a new game begins, and
our trouble remains. 7. Some[8] of you are worrying our little
boys. 8. This spirit does not please me, nor does any[9] (one) of
you[10] approve it.

9. Therefore I again say to each of you who is doing these
things: 10. You are injuring the school; either stop or leave[11]
it. 11. To the rest who are-present I say: Give me your aid
against the[12] boys who are doing these-things. 12. The
victory will be yours.

---

[1] *Very well.*

[2] *Spirit, feeling.*

[3] Why is quisquam chosen?

[4] *Nor anything else of help, nor
any other help.* What kind of Geni-
tive is auxilī?

[5] *Trouble remains for the school.*

[6] = *was wishing.* State of Affairs.

[7] Read **202, b** again.

[8] Use nōnnūllī (Plural).

[9] What pronoun after a negative?

[10] Use vestrum, Gen. Pl.

[11] Say "depart from it."

[12] Means "*those boys who.*"

LESSON XXVIII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

206.   FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

	THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION
	in -e-		in -ī-

Active

		THIRD		FOURTH
1st Sing.	tegam	capiam		audiam
2d "	tegēs	capiēs		audiēs
3d "	teget	capiet		audiet
1st Pl.	tegēmus	capiēmus		audiēmus
2d "	tegētis	capiētis		audiētis
3d "	tegent	capient		audient

Passive

		THIRD		FOURTH
1st Sing.	tegar	capiar		audiar
2d "	tegēris or -re	capiēris or -re		audiēris or -re
3d "	tegētur	capiētur		audiētur
1st Pl.	tegēmur	capiēmur		audiēmur
2d "	tegēminī	capiēminī		audiēminī
3d "	tegentur	capientur		audientur

a. Remember now that, in the formation of the Future, the four Conjugations *divide in the middle,* the First and Second forming it in -bō, -bis, -bit, etc., the Third and Fourth in -am, -ēs, -et, etc. Thus:

	PRESENT	INFINITIVE	FUTURE
I	amō	amāre	amābō
II	moneō	monēre	monēbō
III	tegō	tegere	tegam
	capiō	capere	capiam
IV	audiō	audīre	audiam

207. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN **aliquis**, *some, any*

	As Adjective			As Substantive	
			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	aliquis	aliquid
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod	aliquem	aliquid
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō

PLURAL (same for Substantive and Adjective)

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Note that **aliquis** is declined like **quis** (**184**), except that in the Nom. Fem. Sing. and Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl. it has the regular ending **-a**, not the special pronominal ending **-ae**.

b. An indefinite pronoun **quis**, to be used later (**397**) is declined like the **quis** at the end of **ali-quis**.

THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

208. Specimen Sentences:

Memoria huius victōriae diū manēbit, *the memory of this victory will long remain.*

Hī puerī pugnae cupidī sunt, *these boys are desirous of a fight.*

a. In both sentences, the Genitives really express an *Object.* The meaning in the first is that people will long *remember* the victory, and in the second, that these boys *desire* a fight. **Pugnae cupidī sunt** really means the same thing as **pugnam cupiunt**.

Hence we may lay down the rule:

209. *The Genitive may be used Objectively with many Nouns and Adjectives, or Participles used as Adjectives* (Objective Genitive).

210.   VOCABULARY

aliter, Adv., *otherwise, differ-*   resistō, -sistere, 3, *resist.* (Word
ently. (Cf. alius.)   of Attitude, taking Dat.)
aliquis (**207**), Indefinite Pro-   sententia, -ae, F. 1, *feeling, idea,*
noun, *some, any one, any.*   *view.* (Cf. sentiō below.)
dēfendō, -ere, 3, *defend.*   sentiō, -īre, 4, *perceive* (by the
diū, Adv., *for a long time, long.*   senses); *feel, think.*

211.   READING MATTER

1. (A friend to one of the teasers) Tū modo dīcēbās, "mihi pla-
cet puerōs parvōs lacessere, iīsque flēre nōn nocet." Ego aliter
sentiō; atque tū ipse, sī in istā manēbis sententiā, aliter sentiēs;
aut in hāc scholā diū nōn manēbis.

2. Puerī parvī tibi cēdunt, quia tē timent. Sed Mārcus atque
quīdam amīcī eius tē nōn timēbunt. Pugnae cupidī nōn sunt;
sed, tū sī persevērābis, tibi resistent. Sī aliquem tū discipulum
lacessēs, eum Mārcus atque reliquī contrā tē dēfendent. Nec
victōria tua erit.

3. Hī sine ūllō perīculō pugnābunt. Sī aliqua pugna ā
magistrō audiētur, Mārcus iterum laudābitur, tū ex scholā pel-
lēris. Memoria istīus incommodī tibi nocēbit. (Ans.) Sī aliquem
ego lacessere cupiam, lacessam. Nec quemquam vestrum timeō.

212.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Mark to the above) Why do you worry these little boys?
It is a misfortune for the school. 2. (Ans.) Because it pleases me
to do so. 3. (Mark) You will soon feel differently. 4. They do
not resist you, because they fear to fight. 5. *I* am not desirous
of a fight, but I shall not yield to you. 6. This is *my* idea.

7. Listen to (hear) me. 8. If any pupil shall do anything
against the reputation of the school, I shall be his enemy (an
enemy to him). 9. If any one shall do any wrong to any pupil,
I shall defend that pupil.

10. Nor will any-one help you. 11. The victory will be mine,
the memory of the wrong will long be yours.

LESSON XXIX

INFLECTION OF THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

213. 1. The Personal Pronouns indicate the speaker, the person spoken to, or the person (or thing) spoken of. Thus, **tū mē amās,** *you love me,* **tū eum amās,** *you love him.*

a. We have already had all of the forms of these Pronouns, except certain Genitives in -ī.

2. The Reflexive Pronouns *refer back* to the subject of the verb. Thus, **ego mē amō,** *I love myself,* **tū tē amās,** *you love yourself,* **is sē amat,** *he loves himself.*

a. The forms of these two kinds of Pronouns are in Latin largely similar, and they are therefore given below in immediate succession.

214. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS (*I, you, he, she,* or *it*)

	First	Second	Third
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *thou*	is, ille, hic, or iste,
Gen.	meī	tuī	*he,* etc. (declined in
Dat.	mihi	tibi	**153, 145,** and *a,*
Acc.	mē	tē	**166**)
Voc.	———	tū	
Abl.	mē	tē	

		PLURAL	
Nom.	nōs, *we*	vōs, *you*	
Gen.	nostrum *or* nostrī	vestrum *or* vestrī	
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	
Acc.	nōs	vōs	
Voc.	———	vōs	
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	

a. The Genitive forms in **-um** are Genitives of the Whole, while those in **-ī** are Objective Genitives. Thus:

> **multī vestrum,** *many of you.*
> **memoria vestrī,** *the memory of you.*

215. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (*myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* etc.)

	First	Second	Third
	SINGULAR		
Gen.	meī, *of myself*	tuī, *of yourself*	suī, *of himself, her-*
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi *self,* or *itself*
Acc.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	PLURAL		
Gen.	nostrī, *of ourselves*	vestrī, *of yourselves*	suī, *of themselves*
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

216. The Possessive Adjectives, Personal and Reflexive, are:

1. Personal Possessive Adjectives:

> 1st Person, meus, *my* (for **ego**); noster, *our* (for **nōs**)
> 2d Person, tuus, *thy, your* (for **tū**); vester, *your* (for **vōs**)
> 3d Person, supplied by the Genitive of is, ille, hic, or iste
>> **Victōria mea magna est,** *my victory is great.*
>> **Victōria tua magna est,** *your victory is great.*
>> **Victōria eius magna est,** *his victory is great.*

2. Reflexive Possessive Adjectives:

> 1st Person } Same as the *Personal* Possessive Adjectives
> 2d Person }
>
> 3d Person, suus, *his, theirs,* etc. (same for Singular and Plural)
> **Ego meum fīlium amō, tū tuum,** *I love my son, you* (love) *yours.*
> **Nostrum fīlium amāmus,** *we love our son.*
> **Fīlium suum cūr laudat?** *why does he praise his son?*
> **Fīlium suum cūr laudant?** *why do they praise their son?*

217. VOCABULARY

dictum, -ī, N. 2, *saying, word.*

glōria, -ae, F. 1, *glory.*

maleficium, -ī, N. 2 (cf. **male** and **faciō**), *wrong-doing.*

posteā (**post**+**eā**) Adv., *after that, afterward* (opposite of **anteā**).

prohibeō, -ēre, 2, *prohibit, prevent, keep (from).*

servō, -āre, 1, *preserve, save, guard, keep.*

suī, *of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

suus, -a, -um, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

vincō, -ere, 3 (cf. **victōria**), *vanquish, conquer, win.*

218. READING MATTER

1. (Mark to one of the little boys) Cūr nōn tē dēfendis? Tū sī resistēs, ego tē iuvābō.

2. (The teacher, to Mark and his backers) Vōs vincētis. Memoria vestrī dictōrumque vestrōrum hōs puerōs ā maleficiō prohibēbit. Sē contrā vōs nōn dēfendent, sed ex perīculō sē servābunt; nam vērae pugnae nōn cupidī sunt, nec cupiunt ā condiscipulīs suīs culpārī. Vōbīs nōn resistent. Quam diū[1] hīc manēbitis, nūllum puerum lacessent. Sī aliquī puerī parvī posteā lacessentur, aliī puerī magnī idem facient quod vōs nunc facitis. Ita vestra victōria iniūriam scholae in glōriam vertet.

3. (Mark) Sententia tua nōbīs grāta est, multī enim nostrum idem sentiunt.[2] Sed aliī ūnam et alteram[3] pugnam exspectant.

219. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (One of the small boys) If anybody attacks me I shall defend myself. 2. Mark will help me after-that.

3. (One of his backers, to Mark) *I* expect no fight. 4. The memory either of you or of the master's words will keep these boys from wrong-doing. 5. They will feel their danger, and will wish to save themselves. 6. You will conquer. 7. (Another says) If anyone shall do otherwise he will hurt himself.[4] 8. We shall turn the injury of the school into (its) glory.

---

[1] (*As*) *long as.*

[2] *Feel the same thing = have the same feeling.*

[3] *One and another = one or two.*

[4] Use **sē**, not **ipse**. **Ipse** is *intensive,* not *reflexive.*

LESSON XXX

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

220. The Perfect stems of different words are formed in different ways, but the final *endings* are always the same. Thus amāvī (from amō), monuī (from moneō), cēpī (from capiō), fuī (from sum).

	I have loved, or I loved	I have warned, or I warned	I have taken, or I took	I have been, or I was	PERFECT ENDINGS
1st Sing.	amāvī	monuī	cēpī	fuī	-ī
2d "	amāvistī	monuistī	cēpistī	fuistī	-istī
3d "	amāvit	monuit	cēpit	fuit	-it
1st Pl.	amāvimus	monuimus	cēpimus	fuimus	-imus
2d "	amāvistis	monuistis	cēpistis	fuistis	-istis
3d "	amāvērunt *or* -ēre	monuērunt *or* -ēre	cēpērunt *or* -ēre	fuērunt *or* -ēre	-ērunt *or* -ēre

a. Similarly inflect flēvī (from fleō), habuī (from habeō), prohibuī (from prohibeō), placuī (from placeō), mānsī (from maneō), dēfendī (from dēfendō), vertī (from vertō), vīcī (from vincō), iūvī (from iuvō), fēcī (from faciō).

MEANINGS OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE

221. The Perfect has two distinct forces:

1. It may represent the act as in a finished state ("perfect") at the time of speaking ("present"), as in English "I have warned you." So used it is called the Present Perfect.[1]

2. It may simply throw the act vaguely back into the past, as in "I warned you." So used it is called the Aoristic Perfect.[2]

---

[1] It is also called the "Perfect Definite," but less exactly.
[2] It is also called the "Perfect Indefinite."

222.   VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, 1 (ad, strengthen-
ing, + iuvō, help), *assist, aid.*

cōnservō, -āre, Perfect cōnser-
vāvī, 1 (con-, strengthening, +
servō, save), *save, preserve.*

prīstinus, -a, -um, *pristine,
former.*

socius, -ī, M. 2, *associate, ally.*

tamen, Conj., *still, nevertheless,
yet.*

temerārius, -a, -um, *rash,
thoughtless.*

temerē, Adv., *rashly, thought-
lessly.*

Add also the Perfect forms learned in **220** and *a.*

223.   READING MATTER

(The Perfects here all have Present Perfect meaning.)

1. (His chief backer, to Mark) Tū vīcistī; neque fuit pugna
ūlla. Fāmam malam scholae in glōriam vertistī. (Mark) Nōn
ego vīcī, sed nōs vīcimus. Nec sōlī id nōs fēcimus. Sociōs
habuimus, quōrum quisque nōs adiuvāre parātus erat.

2. (The teacher to the allied boys) Quod vōs fēcistis, id nōn
minus mihi quam vōbīs placuit. Scholae bonam fāmam contrā
puerōs temerāriōs dēfendistis ac cōnservāvistis. Memoria vic-
tōriae vestrae diū manēbit. (Mark answers) Hī discipulī temerē
haec fēcērunt, malī tamen nōn sunt. In sententiā prīstinā suā
nōn mānsērunt, sed sēsē ā maleficiō prohibuērunt.

224.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The teacher to the beaten boys) You have not continued
in your former way-of-thinking. 2. (One answers) Mark and
his allies have conquered. They have kept us from wrong-doing.
3. Nor does this please any one more than us. 4. We have been
thoughtless, but we ourselves wish to aid the school, and pre-
serve its good reputation.

5. (The teacher sums up) These boys have acted[1] rashly. 6.
Still they censure themselves. 7. They will both remain in the
school, and will keep[2] from wrong-doing.

---

[1] Say "have done these things."   [2] Say "keep themselves."

LESSON XXXI

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

225. The Perfect Indicative Active is formed in six different ways, namely in:

1. -vī, as in amā-v-ī, from amō.
2. -uī, as in mon-u-ī, from moneō.
3. -sī, as in mān-s-ī, from maneō.
4. -ī, with reduplication, as in ded-ī, from dō.
5. -ī, with lengthened penult, as in iūv-ī, from iuvō.
6. -ī, without change, as in vert-ī, from vertō.

a. The -ī is the Ending, the rest is the Perfect Stem.

b. The -s- of -s-ī often affects a preceding consonant. Thus cēdō, cessī (for ced-sī); tegō, tēxī (for tēc-sī, from tēg-sī).

THE PARTICIPLE

226. A Participle is a Verbal Adjective. Thus *loving* (Present Active), *loved* (Perfect Passive).

a. As an Adjective, a Participle belongs to a Substantive and agrees with it. As a Verb, it expresses Tense and Voice, may govern a Case, and may be modified by an Adverb.

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

227. 1. The Perfect Passive Participle expresses an act as *suffered by* a person or thing ("passive"), and as in a *finished state* ("perfect"). Thus **monitus,** *having been warned*, or (simply) *warned*. It is declined like **bonus.**

2. The Perfect Passive Participle bears a general relationship in form to the Perfect Indicative Active. It normally ends in **-tus.** Thus **amā-tus,** *having been loved*, or (simply) *loved*.

a. The -t- of the ending -tus often affects a preceding consonant, and sometimes both are affected. Thus **tegō, tēctus** (for tēg-tus); **cēdō, cessum** (for ced-tum).

b. A number of verbs (as we shall see later, **400**), can have only the *Neuter* of this participle. Hence in a list it is more practical to give the neuter form for *all* verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

228. The Parts of a Verb from which all others may be formed are called the Principal Parts. These are:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC. (Neuter; see *b* above)
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum, *love.*
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum, *warn.*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum, *cover.*
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum, *take.*
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum, *hear.*

229. LIST OF REGULAR VERBS THUS FAR USED WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS AS ABOVE

(For Study and Reference)

1. Perfect in -vī:

amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum,	*love.*
ambulō	ambūlāre	ambulāvī	ambulātum,	*walk*

Similarly cēnō, culpō, dēsīderō, exspectō, habitō, labōrō, laudō, parō, persevērō, probō, properō, pugnō, servō and cōnservō, vocō.

audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum,	*hear.*
cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītum,	*desire.*
fleō	flēre	flēvī	flētum,	*weep.*
lacessō	lacessere	lacessīvī	lacessītum,	*worry.*
petō	petere	petīvī	petītum,	*aim at.*
sciō	scīre	scīvī	scītum,	*know.*

2. Perfect in -uī:

moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum,	*warn.*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum,	*have.*
prohibeō	prohibēre	prohibuī	prohibitum,	*prohibit.*
noceō	nocēre	nocuī	nocitum,	*injure.*
placeō	placēre	placuī	placitum,	*please.*
displiceō	displicēre	displicuī	displicitum,	*displease.*
studeō	studēre	studuī	(lacking)	*be zealous for.*
timeō	timēre	timuī	"	*fear.*

3. Perfect in -sī:

cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessum,	*yield.*
discēdō	discēdere	discessī	discessum,	*depart.*
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictum,	*say.*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum,	*remain.*
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum,	*rule.*
sentiō	sentīre	sēnsī	sēnsum,	*feel.*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum,	*cover.*

4. Perfect in -ī, *with reduplication:*

dō	dare	dedī	datum,	*give.*
pellō	pellere	pepulī	pulsum,	*drive.*

5. Perfect in -ī, *with lengthened vowel in penult:*

iuvō	iuvāre	iūvī	iūtum,	*help.*
adiuvō	adiuvāre	adiūvī	adiūtum,	*aid.*
faveō	favēre	fāvī	fautum,	*favor.*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum,	*see.*
vincō	vincere	vīcī	victum,	*conquer.*
capiō	capere	cēpī	captum,	*take.*
accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptum,	*accept.*
incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptum,	*begin.*
faciō	facere	fēcī	factum,	*make.*
iaciō	iacere	iēcī	iactum,	*throw.*

6. Perfect in -ī, *without change in penult:*

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsum,	*defend.*
respondeō	respondēre	respondī	respōnsum,	*answer*
vertō	vertere	vertī	versum,	*turn.*

230.   VOCABULARY

(From here on, the Principal Parts of new verbs will be given in full.)

dē (same word as before, with Abl. of starting-point of the thought), *concerning, about.*

inquit, *says he,* or *said he.* Used in direct quotation, and always follows one or more words.

invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātum, 1, *invite; attract.*

māne, Adv., *in the morning.*

nihil, indeclinable, Neut. Noun, *nothing.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-danger, dangerous.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *come.*

verbum, -ī, N. 2, *word.*

231.   READING MATTER

(The Perfects here still have Present Perfect meaning.)

1. (The teacher) Mārcus eiusque sociī mē adiūvērunt. Iī quī Sextum lacessīvērunt, nōn temerē in prīstinō maleficiō mānsērunt, sed sēsē cōnservāvērunt. In scholā manēbunt. Ipse Sextus, ab hīs diū lacessītus, tamen iīs inimīcus nōn est. Haec mihi magnopere placuērunt.

2. (Sextus has stayed away from Mark's picnic in the woods. Mark says) Sextus nōn vēnit. Vīditne eum aliquis? Ā mē hodiē māne invītātus, tamen abest. (One of the boys) Ego eum vīdī. (Mark) Ubi erat? Quid faciēbat? (Ans.) In vīllā suā manēbat. (Mark) Quid erat causae?[1] (Ans.) Ab aliquō agricolā monitus, venīre timēbat. (Mark) Quid dē nostrā cēnā dīcēbat agricola? (Ans.) "Temerārius," inquit, "es. Silva perīculōsa est." (Mark) Nihil hīc est perīculōsī.[2] Hic agricola Sextō verba dedit.[3]

232.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (A friend goes to get Sextus) Hasn't Mark invited you to our dinner? 2. (Sextus) Yes. He has invited me. 3. (First speaker) Why, having-been-invited by him, have you nevertheless not come? 4. (Ans.) I have not come, having-been-warned about the forest this morning by a certain farmer. 5. (First speaker) What was the farmer saying to you? 6. (Sextus) "These boys are rash," said he. "The forest is dangerous." 7. (First speaker) Are these his words? (Sextus) These are his very[4] words. 8. (First speaker) Have you yourself ever seen anything[5] (of) dangerous in this forest? *I* have seen nothing. 9. That farmer has certainly fooled[6] you.[6] 10. Come now to our supper.

---

[1] *What (of) reason?* Genitive of the Whole.

[2] *Nothing (of) dangerous.*

[3] = *has fooled Sextus.*

[4] Use **ipse**, *very.*

[5] Use **quisquam** (in Neuter), because of implied negative.

[6] Cf. footnote 3.

LESSON XXXII

FORMATION AND USE OF THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

233. 1. The Future Active Participle is formed with the ending **-tūrus**, and is declined like **bonus, -a, -um.** The stem generally follows that of the Perfect Passive Participle, with the same changes, if there are any, in the **-t-** (cf. **227,** *a*).

a. Practically, then, we may form the Future Active Participle of most verbs by simply changing **-us** of the Perfect Passive Participle to **-ūrus.** Thus **amātus, amātūrus; monitus, monitūrus; audītus, audītūrus; pulsus, pulsūrus.**

2. The Future Active Participle represents an act as *intended* or *impending.*

a. Its regular use is in the Predicate with some form of the verb **sum.** Thus **tē monitūrus sum,** *I am going to warn you.*

b. This combination of the Future Active Participle with **sum** is very nearly equivalent to a Future Indicative (just as "I am going to warn you" is very near to "I shall warn you"). Hence it is called the Periphrastic Future (= *round-about* Future).

234. A few verbs lack the Perfect Passive Participle, but have the Future Active, which will be given in their Principal Parts. Thus:

sum	esse	fuī	futūrus,	*be.*
cadō	cadere	cecidī	cāsūrus,	*fall.*
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus,	*flee.*
dēsistō	dēsistere	dēstitī	dēstitūrus,	*desist.*
resistō	resistere	restitī	restitūrus,	*resist.*
stō	stāre	stetī	stātūrus,	*stand.*

a. Compounds are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed. Thus **absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.**

235. VOCABULARY

conveniō,-venīre,-vēnī,-ventum,
4 (con-+veniō), *come together,
meet.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2,
teach, inform, tell, show.

eō, Adv., *thither, to that place.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ex-
plore, reconnoiter; find out.*

herī, Adv., *yesterday.*

hōra, -ae, F. 1, *hour.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit.*

Iūlius, -ī, M. 2, *Julius,* a name.

locus, -ī, M. 2, *place.* Pl. loca,
locōrum, N. 2.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *an-
nounce, tell.*

prope, Prep., *near,* taking Acc.
of Space-Relation.

statuō, statuere, statuī, statū-
tum, 3, *set up; decide* (set up
in one's mind).

tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2, *tent.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be
strong* or *powerful, be well.*

236. READING MATTER

(The Perfects here are partly Present Perfects, partly Aorists.)

Aliquid novī[1] tibi nūntiātūrus sum. Ego et Iūlius[2] in
silvā prope scholam in idōneō locō tabernāculum statūtūrī
sumus. Loca propinqua herī explōrāvimus. Nihil vīdimus
perīculōsī. Locus ipse ubi tabernāculum est stātūrum pulcher
est. Eō saepe vel māne vel post scholae hōrās convenient amīcī
ā nōbīs invītātī. Tē invītāre statuimus. Aliōs nunc dē hōc
tabernāculō doctūrus sum. Valē.[3] (The hearer congratulates
himself) "Tē," inquit, "invītāre statuimus." Haec Sextī ipsa
verba sunt. Beātus sum.

237. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Julius has just-now announced some news[1] to me. 2. He
and Sextus are going-to-set-up a tent in the forest near the
school. 3. They explored the neighborhood[4] yesterday, and
saw nothing dangerous. 4. The tent is going-to-stand in a
suitable place. 5. They are going-to-inform their friends about
it, and these will often meet there,[5] either after school hours or
in-the-morning. 6. They have decided to invite us too. Good-
bye. 7. (The hearer) Many will come without[6] invitation.[6]

---

[1] *Something (of) new = some news.*
[2] Latin order is: 1st Person, 2d, 3d.
[3] Be well, = farewell, good-bye.
[4] Say "places near."
[5] Say "come together thither."
[6] Say "not invited."

LESSON XXXIII

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CON-JUGATIONS

238. The Past Perfect Indicative Active is formed by adding **-eram**, etc. (seen in the Imperfect of **sum, 144**) to the Perfect Stem. Thus:

	I had loved	*I had warned*	*I had taken*	*I had been*	ENDINGS
1st Sing.	amāveram	monueram	cēperam	fueram	-eram
2d "	amāverās	monuerās	cēperās	fuerās	-erās
3d "	amāverat	monuerat	cēperat	fuerat	-erat
1st Pl.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	cēperāmus	fuerāmus	-erāmus
2d "	amāverātis	monuerātis	cēperātis	fuerātis	-erātis
3d "	amāverant	monuerant	cēperant	fuerant	-erant

239. The Past Perfect represents an act as already in a finished state ("Perfect") at some past time ("Past"). It thus also implies that the performance of the act had *preceded* that time. Thus:

Tē monueram, *I had warned you* (act previously performed).

240.   **VOCABULARY**

at, Conj., *but, yet.* Of contrast or objection.

autem, Conj., postpos., *on the other hand, but, however; now.* Of contrast, but not so strong as **at.**

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3, *cultivate.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (**dē,** intensive, + **fatīgō,** fatigue), *fatigue, tire out.*

dēnique, Adv., *finally, at last.*

forte, Adv., *by chance, perhaps.*

longē, Adv., *far* (cf. **longus**).

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

paulisper, Adv., *a little (while), for a little (while).*

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *proceed, advance.*

propter, *along, beside; on account of.* Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

quattuor, indeclinable, Adj., *four.*

241.   **READING MATTER**

(An Adventure of the Small Boys)

(Julius's father asks) Nōn valētis, fīliī meī? Aut forte nimis impigrē hodiē in scholā studuistis? Quid est?[1] Mihi respondēte. (Julius) Herī tabernāculum, quod tū nōbīs dederās, in idōneō locō in silvā prope scholam statuimus. Eō hodiē bene māne[2] ante scholae hōram vēnimus. Quattuor condiscipulī, ā nōbīs invītātī, ad eundem locum vēnerant. Nōn diū mānsūrī erāmus.

Mox autem ūnus ex discipulīs, "Quid," inquit, "sī paulisper in silvā ambulābimus, eamque explōrābimus?" Alius "id laudō,"[3] inquit. Cūnctī[4] probāvimus. At mox longē prōcesserāmus. Eum locum ubi tum erāmus numquam anteā vīderāmus. Magnopere timēbāmus.[5] Dēnique agricolam vīdimus, quī tum forte agrum propter silvam colēbat. Is nōs dē viā docuit. At haec longa fuit. Propter hoc iam dēfatīgātī erāmus, cum magister nōs in scholam vocāvit.

242.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. (Continuation) Finally the teacher said: "Aren't you well? You are not already tired out, are you? 2. Where were you, Julius, when I called you?" (Julius) I was in the road. 3. (Master) Where had you been before-that? (Ans.) I had walked a-little-while in the woods. 4. (Master) Had you perhaps gone (= proceeded) far? (Ans.) I had gone *too* far.

5. A farmer who was cultivating a field beside the wood told me about the way. It was (a) long (one). 6. (Master) Had you walked with others? Why don't you answer? 7. (One of the four) We had all four walked in the woods. 8. (Master) I am not going-to-chide you, but this I will say: 9. It pleases me when you walk in the woods; it does not please me, however, when you walk there *before* the school[6] hour.

---

[1] *What is the matter?*
[2] *Well early = early in the morning.*
[3] *= that's a good idea.*
[4] Nom.; hence goes with Subject.
[5] *We were much frightened.*
[6] Say, "hour of school."

LESSON XXXIV

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

243. The Future Perfect Indicative Active is formed by adding **-erō**, etc. (seen in the Future of **sum, 157**) to the Perfect Stem. But the 3d Person Plural ends in **-erint**, not **-erunt**.

	I shall have loved	*I shall have warned*	*I shall have taken*	*I shall have been*	ENDINGS
1st Sing.	amāverō	monuerō	cēperō	fuerō	-erō
2d "	amāveris	monueris	cēperis	fueris	-eris
3d "	amāverit	monuerit	cēperit	fuerit	-erit
1st Pl.	amāverimus	monuerimus	cēperimus	fuerimus	-erimus
2d "	amāveritis	monueritis	cēperitis	fueritis	-eritis
3d "	amāverint	monuerint	cēperint	fuerint	-erint

a. The Future Perfect represents an act as in a finished state ("Perfect") at a future time ("Future"). It thus also implies that the performance of the act will have preceded that time.

244.   **VOCABULARY**

aliquot, indecl. Adj., *some, several.*

annus, -ī, M. 2, *year.*

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, 3 (con-+faciō, do thoroughly), *finish, complete.*

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3 (stronger than **statuō**), *establish, place; determine.*

discō, discere, didicī, ——, 3, *learn.*

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, 3 (ex+faciō), *make out, accomplish, bring about.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (ex+cēdō), *come out* (of), *leave, withdraw.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3, *carry, bear; carry on, wage, manage* (e. g., a business, a war, etc.); *do.*

negōtium, -ī, N. 2, *business, occupation.*

nisi, Conj. (ni, a negative particle, +sī, if=if not), *unless;* without a verb=*except.*

nōndum, Adv. (nōn, not, + dum, the while=not the while), *not yet.*

Servius, -ī, M. 2, *Servius,* a name.

spatium, -ī, N. 2, *space, distance; period* (of time).

subitō, Adv., *suddenly.*

245.   READING MATTER

1. (Mark remonstrates with a schoolmate) Quid tū, Servī, cōnstituistī facere? Cum hōs quattuor annōs cōnfēceris, quid dēnique effēceris?. Multī nostrum aliquid certē didicerimus; tū autem nōn longē prōcesseris. Nihil bene colueris, nisi lūdōs. (Ans.) Ad[1] negōtium satis forte didicerō. (Mark) Minimē. Per longum annōrum spatium piger fueris. At impiger vir, nōn piger, bene negōtium gerit. Tū, cum paulisper labōrāvistī, subitō dēfatīgātus es.

2. (The teacher to a father) Fīliī tuī in studiīs nōn longē prōcesserint, cum ex scholā excēdent. Per quattuor annōs pigrī fuⸯrint. Propter hoc ad negōtium parātī nōndum erunt. (The father, to these sons) Cum post hōs quattuor annōs negōtium gerere incipiētis, labōrāre nōn didiceritis.

246.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. You have finished several years in school; but you have not learned anything, except sports. 2. (Ans.) On this account,[2] I am going-to-cultivate studies vigorously for-a-little-while. 3. I shall at-any-rate have accomplished something when I leave[3] the school.

4. Servius has suddenly determined to work vigorously. 5. He will not proceed far, however. 6. When he leaves[3] the school, he will be prepared for nothing, because he will not have learned to work.

7. Unless you work[4] through this year, you will not be prepared for business. 8. (Ans.) I shall begin to work when I begin to carry[3] on business. 9. (First speaker) You will not-yet have learned to work.

10. Many of these boys will have been lazy through[5] a period of four years. 11. They will not then suddenly begin to work.

---

[1] Ad *gains* figurative meaning : *In the direction of=for.*
[2] Say "on account of this."   [4] More exactly, "shall have worked."
[3] Express the time more exactly.   [5] Use **per** as above.

LESSON XXXV

THE PASSIVE TENSES OF COMPLETED ACTION IN THE INDICATIVE, ALL CONJUGATIONS

247. The Perfect tenses of the Indicative Passive are compound forms, made from the Perfect Passive Participle, combined with the verb **sum** in the Present, Imperfect, or Future. Thus, from **moneō:**

Present Perfect **monitus sum,** *I have been warned.*

Past Perfect **monitus eram,** *I had been warned.*

Future Perfect **monitus erō,** *I shall have been warned.*

a. These meanings arose naturally out of the combinations. Thus, **monitus sum** meant originally, *I am a warned (man).* But this, of course, *implied* the idea *I have been warned.*

b. The three tenses express *situation*, present, past, or future, resulting from the completion of an action. Compare the examples.

c. The Participle of compound forms must agree with the Subject, like any other Participle. Thus:

> **puer monitus est,** *the boy has been warned.*
> **fēminae monitae sunt,** *the women have been warned.*
> **dōna data sunt,** *the gifts have been given.*

The forms may then be exhibited as follows:

248. THE PERFECT TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

	PRESENT PERFECT *I have been warned*	PAST PERFECT *I had been warned*	FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have been warned*
1st Sing.	monitus sum	monitus eram	monitus erō
2d "	" es	" erās	" eris
3d "	" est	" erat	" erit
1st Pl.	monitī sumus	monitī erāmus	monitī erimus
2d "	" estis	" erātis	" eritis
3d "	" sunt	" erant	" erunt

249. You may now easily form the Indicative tenses of completed action, Active and Passive, of any verb of which you know the Principal Parts. Thus, if you know the four parts **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum,** *teach*, you get:

	PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Active	docu-ī	docu-eram	docu-erō
Passive	doctus sum	doctus eram	doctus erō

a. Form now the three tenses of completed action, Active and Passive, for **amō, tegō, capiō,** and **audiō** (first saying the Principal Parts to yourself in each instance).

250. The Present Perfect Passive may of course be used with Aoristic force, just as the Present Perfect Active is. Thus, according to the context,

Monitus sum means either $\begin{cases} \textit{I have been warned} \text{ (Pres. Perfect), or} \\ \textit{I was warned} \text{ (Aoristic Perfect).} \end{cases}$

251. There are only three possible divisions of time, namely the past, the present, and the future.

a. A given act will appear differently according to the time with reference to which the speaker looks at it (that is, the *point of view*). Thus I may say, *I* AM *now* BUILDING *a house*, the point of view being the present time; but if by and by I think of the same act and the same time, I should say, *I* WAS *then* BUILDING *a house*, the point of view being now a *past* time.—Again, I should say, *I* HAVE *now* BUILT *a house*, but, later, thinking of the same time, *I* HAD *then* BUILT *a house*.

252. VOCABULARY

bracchium, -ī, N. 2, *the arm* (strictly the fore-arm only).

cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2, *counsel, plan; judgment, wisdom; council.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2, *suffer, ache, grieve.*

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2, *exercise, drill.*

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *make firm, strengthen.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *change, alter.*

proelium, -ī, N. 2, *battle.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, 3, *take up, take, assume.*

triumphus, -ī, M. 2, *triumph.*

253. READING MATTER

1. (*Point of View Past*) Fīliī meī spatium quattuor annōrum in studiīs iam cōnfēcerant, cum ex scholā excessērunt. Sed ab iīs lūdī, nōn studia, semper culta erant. Propter hoc per aliquot annōs negōtium male gessērunt; nam labōrāre nōndum didicerant.

2. (*Point of View Present*) Multum[1] ā meīs fīliīs in hīs annīs effectum est. Et bracchia et animī eōrum exercitī sunt.

3. (*Point of View Future*) Cum hī puerī quattuor annōs ad lūdōs sūmpserint, quid ab iīs dēnique effectum erit? Bracchia eōrum firmāta erunt, animī autem nōn erunt firmātī. Nisi forte cōnsilia sua mox mūtāverint atque subitō cōnstituerint labōrāre, ad negōtium idōneī nōn erunt. Tum vērō dolēbunt. Tum vērum incipiet proelium. Nūllōs tum habēbunt triumphōs nisi ex animī dīligentiā.

254. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

(*Point of View Past*) 1. Servius had at-that-time spent[2] four years in (his) studies. 2. But only games had been cultivated by him; his mind had not yet been strengthened. 3. On this account he managed business-affairs[3] badly for several years.

(*Point of View Present*) 4. Several years have now been used up by you in (your) studies. 5. Has much been accomplished? (Ans.) Nothing has been accomplished. 6. This I see at last, and I have now determined to work.

(*Point of View Future*) 7. When you leave[4] school, nothing will have been accomplished, unless perhaps you suddenly change[4] your plans. 8. Your arms will have been exercised, your mind will not have been strengthened for[5] the real battle. 9. Then, indeed, you will suffer. Then you will have no triumphs.

---

[1] Adjective used as noun, = *much*.
[2] "Spent" = "finished" (**cōnficiō**).
[3] Plural of **negōtium**.

[4] Express time-idea exactly.
[5] Use **ad**, as in the Latin above, third line from end.

LESSON XXXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS

255. In the Third Declension, the Stem ends in a Consonant, or in -i. Consonant Stems will be taken up first.

256. rēx, *king*, M. mīles, *soldier*, M. caput, *head*, N.

Stems		rēg-	mīlit-	capit-	*Endings*	
					M. and F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	rēx	mīles	caput	-s *or* —	—
	Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis	-is	-is
	Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī	-ī	-ī
	Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	caput	-em	—
	Voc.	rēx	mīles	caput	-s *or* —	—
	Abl.	rēge	mīlite	capite	-e	-e
Pl.	Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
	Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum	-um	-um
	Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
	Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
	Voc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
	Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

257. victor, *victor*, M. pater, *father*, M. rōbur, *oak*, N.

Stems		victōr-	patr-	rōbor-	*Endings*
					Same as above
Sing.	Nom.	victor	pater	rōbur
	Gen.	victōris	patris	rōboris
	Dat.	victōrī	patrī	rōborī
	Acc.	victōrem	patrem	rōbur
	Voc.	victor	pater	rōbur
	Abl.	victōre	patre	rōbore
Pl.	Nom.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora
	Gen.	victōrum	patrum	rōborum
	Dat.	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus
	Acc.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora
	Voc.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora
	Abl.	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus

258. Remarks on the Third Declension Nouns with Consonant Stems:

1. The stem is found by dropping -is of the Genitive Singular.
2. Masculine and Feminine Nouns are declined alike.
3. Neuters have no case-ending in the Nom.-Acc.-Voc. Singular.
4. With these facts in mind, you can decline any consonant-stem noun, after mastering the case-endings given above, if you know the *Nominative* and *Genitive* of that noun, and its *Gender.*

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE OR CONCERN

259. Specimen Sentence:

Hīs puerīs timeō, *I am afraid for these boys.*

a. Here the Dative expresses the persons to whom the act *refers,*— the persons whom it *concerns.* The construction may be used after any Verb. Hence we may state the rule, that:

260. *Any Verb may be followed by a Dative of the Person to whom the act or state Refers, or whom it Concerns.*

261. VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N. 2 (not used in Sing.), *arms, weapons.*

caput, capitis, N. 3, *head.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, 3, *believe.* (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3, *lead.*

ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, 3 (ē + legō), *pick out, elect, choose.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *command, order.* (Verb of Attitude, taking Dat.)

inter, *between, among.* Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3, *pick, choose; read.*

lēx, lēgis, F. 3, *law, rule.*

mīles, mīlitis, M. 3, *soldier.*

pater, patris, M. 3, *father.*

rēx, rēgis, M. 3, *king.*

rōbur, rōboris, N. 3, *oak;* figurative meaning, *strength.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *simulate, pretend.*

unde, Adv., *from what, whence; out of what.*

victor, -ōris, M. 3, *victor, conqueror.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wound.*

262. READING MATTER

Bellum simulātum (*pretended war, mock war*) puerī ex scholā nostrā inter sē gestūrī sunt. Rēgēs ex discipulīs ēligentur. Hī

ex reliquīs discipulīs mīlitēs legent. Certae lēgēs¹ pugnae cōnstituentur.² Victōrēs dēnique rēgem victum in triumphō dūcent. Rēgis victī mīlitēs, quaecumque iīs victor imperāverit,³ ea facient. (Second speaker) Timeō hīs mīlitibus et hīs rēgibus, nisi cōnsilium mūtāverint; nec minus victōrī quam victō timeō rēgī. Nam sī arma sūmpta erunt, aliquot puerī vulnerābuntur. Bracchia iīs firmābuntur, sed capita post proelium dolēbunt. (First speaker) Nōn crēdō.⁴ Dolitūra nōn sunt; nam arma quae facient puerī perīculōsa nōn erunt. (Second speaker) Unde⁵ ea factūrī sunt? (Ans.) Ex rōbore. (Second speaker) Patrēsne hōrum rēgum hōrumque mīlitum hoc cōnsilium probābunt? (Ans.) Certē. (Second speaker) Tibi nōn crēdō. Numquam probābunt.

263.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Have you heard about the mock war which we are going to wage among ourselves? (Ans.) I have heard nothing. 2. (First speaker) The boys are going-to-choose kings. By these (kings) soldiers will be chosen. 3. (Second speaker) Who will lead the soldiers? 4. (First speaker) The kings themselves will command them; and, after the battle, the conqueror will lead the conquered (king) in triumph. 5. (Second speaker) What⁶ shall you make weapons out⁶ of?⁶ 6. (First speaker) We shall make weapons of oak. 7. (Second speaker) Some of the boys will be wounded. 8. I fear for your heads and arms. They will ache for you after the battle. 9. (First speaker) I don't think so.⁴ We shall not aim-at heads. 10. (Second speaker) Will your father approve-of this scheme? 11. (First speaker) If fixed rules are established,⁷ he will approve.

---

¹ *Fixed rules.*
² *Will be established.*
³ *Whatever (things) the victor shall command (to) them.*
⁴ *I don't believe it = I don't think so.*
⁵ *Out of what? from what?*
⁶ Use **unde**.
⁷ Look out for the time-relation.

LESSON XXXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS (Finished)

264.   sermō, *talk*, M.   multitūdō,   nōmen, *name*, N.
                              multitude, F.

Stems	sermōn-	multitūdin-	nōmin-	Endings
Sing. Nom.	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	As
Gen.	sermōnis	multitūdinis	nōminis	already
Dat.	sermōnī	multitūdinī	nōminī	given
Acc.	sermōnem	multitūdinem	nōmen	**(256)**
Voc.	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	
Abl.	sermōne	multitūdine	nōmine	
Pl. Nom.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Gen.	sermōnum	multitūdinum	nōminum	
Dat.	sermōnibus	multitūdinibus	nōminibus	
Acc.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Voc.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Abl.	sermōnibus	multitūdinibus	nōminibus	

265.   pulvis, *dust*, M.   mōs, *custom*, M.   corpus, *body*, N.

Stems	pulver-	mōr-	corpor-	Endings
Sing. Nom.	pulvis	mōs	corpus	As
Gen.	pulveris	mōris	corporis	already
Dat.	pulverī	mōrī	corporī	given
Acc.	pulverem	mōrem	corpus	**(256)**
Voc.	pulvis	mōs	corpus	
Abl.	pulvere	mōre	corpore	
Pl. Nom.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Gen.	pulverum	mōrum	corporum	
Dat.	pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	
Acc.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Voc.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Abl.	pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	

a. In Latin, s between two vowels regularly became r. Hence the change from the original s, preserved in the Nominative, to -r- in the other cases. Such words are often called s-Stems.

266. NOTES ON CONSONANT STEMS (**256, 257, 264, 265**)

1. In the Masc.-Fem. Nom. Sing., sometimes the **s** is lacking,[1] sometimes the final consonant of the stem, and sometimes both. Thus **victor** (not **victōr-s**), **mīles** (not **mīlet-s**), **sermō** (not **sermōn-s**).

2. Before final **r** or **l**, a vowel suffers the regular shortening (**100,** 2). Thus **victor,** from **victōr,** Gen. **victōr-is.**

3. Otherwise vowels generally remain unchanged in length. Thus, **rēx** with long **e,** as in **rēg-is.**

267.   VOCABULARY

apud, *at, among; at-the-house-of.*
    Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, 2 (**con-,** intensive,+**pleō,**[2] fill), *fill thoroughly, fill up, fill.*

corpus, -oris, N. 3, *body.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (**ex** +**citō,** rouse), *rouse up, raise.*

frāter, frātris, M. 3, *brother.*

honor, -ōris, M. 3, *honor.*

māter, mātris, F. 3, *mother.*

mōs, mōris, M. 3, *custom, habit.*

multitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *multitude, great number.*

nōmen, nōminis, N. 3, *name.*

pēs, pedis,[3] M. 3, *foot.*

pulvis, pulveris, M. 3, *dust.*

quamquam, Conj., *although.*

sermō, -ōnis, M. 3, *talk, conversation.*

sīc, Adv., *in this way, thus, so.*

soror, sorōris, F. 3, *sister.*

virtūs, -tūtis, F. 3, *manliness, courage, prowess* (the quality belonging to a **vir**).

268.   READING MATTER

1. Audīvistīne sermōnem discipulōrum? Tōtus dē armīs est. Multitūdō eōrum mōrēs vērī bellī apud sē[4] ā patribus discunt,[5] quōrum nōnnūllī ipsī mīlitēs fuērunt. Nōmen mīlitis apud eōs magnō in honōre nunc est. Virtūtem laudant. Corpora sua exercent. In viā pulverem vidēs, quem pedēs eōrum excitāvērunt. (Ans.) Tibi crēdō. Servius, fīlius meus, iam victor est, quamquam is rēx[6] neque ēlēctus est, neque umquam ēligētur. Lēgēs

---

[1] Hence the blank added to the **-s** in the scheme of endings, **256.**

[2] **Pleō,** *fill,* appears only in compounds.

[3] Note difference of quantity between Nominative and Genitive. (*Exception* tō **266,** 3.)

[4] *At-the-house-of themselves=at home.*

[5] Plural, because **multitūdō** is plural in meaning (Collective Noun; cf. **31,** *a*).

[6] **Rēx** is in the Predicate (*chosen king*).

ille cōnstituit.   Mīlitēs sibi ex amīcīs legit.[1]   Frātrēs parvōs
suōs, cum sorōre parvā, in triumphō simulātō dūcit.   Magnam
inter eōs habet fāmam.   Etiam mātrī multa[2] imperat.   Corpus
suum exercet.   Sonus armōrum tōtam vīllam complet.   Caput
mihi vērō dolet.[3]   (First speaker) Unde arma fēcērunt puerī?
(Ans.) Ex rōbore.   Rōbur nōn dūrum est.   Tamen etiam sīc
multī vulnerābuntur.

269.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. There is war at my house[4] between my father and my
mother.   2. (Second speaker) I don't believe you.   *They* never
fight each other.[5]   3. (Ans.) It is true.   (Second speaker) Why
are they fighting?   4. (Ans.) My father approves-of our mock
war.   5. My little brothers and sisters, too, love the very name
of soldier.   6. But my mother grieves.   7. Although she praises
our courage, yet on account of our talk she fears for our bodies,
and she fears for our habits also.   8. My father says: "War is
always thus in honor among boys.   9. The feet of our school-
boys will raise a dust, and the sound of arms will fill the streets
for-a-little-while.   10. But bodies will be exercised and strength-
ened, and no[6] soldier of the whole multitude will be wounded."
11. Nevertheless my mother resists.

---

[1] What tense? Notice the short **e**, and distinguish from **lēgit**.

[2] *Commands his mother many things,=gives many orders to his mother.*
Why is **mātrī** Dative?

[3] *The head really aches for me,=my head really aches.*

[4] See definition of **apud** in the Vocabulary.

[5] Say "among themselves," as in **262**.

[6] "And no" is in Latin "nor any." Do you want **quisquam** or **ūllus?**
See **199**, *a.*

LESSON XXXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

270. NEUTER i-STEMS

	īnsigne, signal, N.	animal, animal, N.	exemplar, pattern, N.	*Endings*
Stems	īnsigni-	animāli-	exemplāri-	
Sing. Nom.	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Gen.	īnsignis	animālis	exemplāris	-is
Dat.	īnsignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Acc.	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Voc.	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
Abl.	īnsignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Pl. Nom.	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Gen.	īnsignium	animālium	exemplārium	-ium
Dat.	īnsignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus
Acc.	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Voc.	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
Abl.	īnsignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus

271. MASCULINE AND FEM-ININE i-STEMS

MIXED STEMS

(Mostly like Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

(Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

fīnis, *end*, M.   caedēs, *slaughter*, F.   nox, *night*, F.   gēns, *race*, F.

	fīnis, *end*, M.	caedēs, *slaughter*, F.	nox, *night*, F.	gēns, *race*, F.
Stems	fīni-	caedi-	noct- in Sing. nocti- in Pl.	gent- in Sing. genti- in Pl.
Sing. Nom.	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Gen.	fīnis	caedis	noctis	gentis
Dat.	fīnī	caedī	noctī	gentī
Acc.	fīnem	caedem	noctem	gentem
Voc.	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
Abl.	fīne	caede	nocte	gente
Pl. Nom.	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Gen.	fīnium	caedium	noctium	gentium
Dat.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus
Acc.	fīnīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)	gentīs (-ēs)
Voc.	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
Abl.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus

272. NOTES ON THE i-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

1. Neuter i-Stems show the -i- throughout the Plural, and in the Ablative Singular (-ī).[1]

2. Most Masculine and Feminine i-Stems, together with Mixed Stems,[2] show the -i- only in the Plural, namely in Genitive -ium and Accusative -īs (with alternative -ēs).

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

273. In Latin, as in English, the *with*-idea is used to express not only Accompaniment, as in "I walk with a friend," but Means or Instrument, as in "I walk with a crutch" (="by means of a crutch").

a. This construction has never taken on a preposition in Latin, the idea being expressed by the case alone. We may then say that:

274. *Means or Instrument may be expressed by the Ablative.*

Tē cōnsiliō adiuvābō, *I will help you with* (or *by*) *advice.*
Armīs ex rōbore pugnāmus, *we fight with weapons of oak.*

275.   **VOCABULARY**

(The Genitive Plural will be added to mark ī-Stems or Mixed Stems.)

animal, -ālis, -ium, N. 3, *animal.*

barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian.*

caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *slaughter.*

exemplar, -āris, -ārium, N. 3, *pattern.*

ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, wild.*

fīnis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *limit, end, boundary;* in Pl., *boundaries;* hence *territory.*

galea, -ae, F. 1, *helmet.*

gēns, gentis, gentium, F. 3, *race.*

gladius, -ī, M. 2, *sword.*

hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *enemy.*

imāgō, imāginis, F. 3, *image, likeness, representation.*

īnsigne, -is, -ium, N. 3, *decoration, badge, device; signal.*

nox, noctis, noctium, F. 3, *night.*

numerus, -ī, M. 2, *number.*

pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pīctum, 3, *paint.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

scūtum, -ī, N. 2, *shield.* A curved rectangle of wood and leather.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *look at, witness, watch.*

---

[1] The -i- originally showed everywhere. Thus Nom. īnsigni, animāli.

[2] Many of the Mixed Stems were originally i-Stems, but came to be declined like Consonant Stems in the Singular. Of some, the opposite is true. The two types, originally opposed, thus became alike.

276. READING MATTER

1. (Sermō inter condiscipulōs). Mōs est mīlitum in proeliō īnsignia in galeīs gerere. Māter sorōrēsque meae mihi nunc īnsigne faciunt. Exemplar ex īnsignī sūmpsērunt quod pater meus habet; nam ille anteā mīles fuit. Corpus meum scūtō magnō tegam, in quō imāginem animālis alicuius ferī pingam. Frātrēs quoque meī parvī galeās et īnsignia sibi faciunt; quamquam hī spectābunt sōlum virtūtem nostram, ipsī nōn pugnābunt. (Ans.) Multitūdō puerōrum quī nōs spectābunt viās complēbit, multumque[1] pedibus suīs excitābunt pulveris.

Sed quibus tū armīs pugnātūrus es? (First speaker) Nōnne arma Rōmāna scūta gladiīque sunt? Ego certē nōmen Rōmānī, nōn barbarī, mīlitis mihi sūmam. Id sōlum in honōre apud nōs est. (Ans.) Ego tam Rōmānus sum quam tū. Sed quid sī cūnctī erimus ex Rōmānā gente? Contrā quōs tum hostīs pugnābimus? Nōn magnus certē erit hostium numerus.

2. Quam diū hī puerī pugnābunt? (Ans.) Nox fīnem caedī faciet.

277. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Ques.) Of what fierce animal shall you paint an image on your shield? 2. (Ans.) I shall paint no[2] image of an animal on my shield; for I shall not be of any[3] barbarian race. 3. Only barbarians fight thus with painted shields. 4. (Ques.) Shall you wear[4] a decoration on your helmet? (Ans.) Certainly; although I haven't yet a pattern. I have made me a sword already. 5. I shall protect my body with this, not with my shield. 6. (Second speaker) I shall watch your prowess when the fight begins.

7. When night comes, we Romans shall put[5] an end to the slaughter of the enemy. 8. Fortunate will be those-remaining. The number of these will not be large.

---

[1] *Much*—of what? Wait and see.
[2] Say "an image of no animal."
[3] "Not of any "="of no."
[4] Say "bear."
[5] Say "make."

LESSON XXXIX

EXCEPTIONAL I-STEMS

278. A *few* i-Stems preserve the i-Declension in the Singular, showing it in an Accusative -**im** (sometimes alongside of -**em**), or an Ablative -**ī** (sometimes alongside of -**e**), or in both cases. Thus:

		turris, *tower*, F.	ignis, *fire*, M.
Stems		turri-	igni-
Sing.	*Nom.*	turris	ignis
	Gen.	turris	ignis
	Dat.	turrī	ignī
	Acc.	turrim (rarely -em)	ignem
	Voc.	turris	ignis
	Abl.	turrī *or* -e	ignī *or* -e
Pl.	*Nom.*	turrēs	ignēs
	Gen.	turrium	ignium
	Dat.	turribus	ignibus
	Acc.	turrīs *or* -ēs	ignīs *or* -ēs
	Voc.	turrēs	ignēs
	Abl.	turribus	ignibus

a. These exceptional words must be picked up individually.

On general principles, *if in doubt, decline any given Masc. or Fem.* i-*Stem or Mixed Stem as a Consonant Stem in the Singular and an* i-*Stem in the Plural* (i. e., with Acc. -em and Abl. -e in the Sing., and Gen. -ium and Acc. -īs or -ēs in the Pl.).

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

279. The Future Passive Participle is formed by adding -**ndus** (-**a**, -**um**) to the Present Stem. Thus:

Conj. I	II	III		IV
amandus	monendus	tegendus	capiendus	audiendus
to be loved	*to be warned*	*to be covered*	*to be taken*	*to be heard*

Example:

Haec pugna nunc pugnanda est, *this fight is now to be fought.*

280. The Future Passive Participle with **sum,** etc., early acquired the force of *Obligation, Propriety,* or *Necessity;* and this is the force regularly found in this combination. Thus:

Arma facienda sunt,
- *arms are to be made,* that is
- *arms must be made,* or
- *arms have to be made,* or
- *there is an obligation* or *necessity for making arms.*

a. This combination is often called the Periphrastic Future Passive.

b. The Future Passive Participle with **sum** is often accompanied by a *Dative,* which originally expressed the *Person Concerned* by the Obligation, Propriety, or Necessity, but has come to be in effect an expression of the *Agent,* as in :

Arma nōbīs facienda sunt, *for us, there is an obligation to make arms;* i. e., *arms must be made* BY *us.*

We may now *sum up* the expression of the Agent as follows:

281. *The Agent of the Passive Voice is expressed by the Ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab.** *But the Dative is used to express the Agent with the Future Passive Participle.*

282.   **VOCABULARY**

fuga, -ae, F. 1, *flight.*

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*

homō, hominis, M. 3, *man.* (The ordinary word for a man merely as a human being, whereas **vir** implies a compliment.)

ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *fire.* (Abl. Sing. -ī or -e.)

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 3, *set on fire.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (in + veniō, come upon), *find, discover; invent.*

ōs, ōris, N. 3, *mouth; face, countenance.*

pars, partis, partium, F. 3, *part; party, side* (in this sense either the Sing. or the Pl. may be used).

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2, *terrify, frighten.*

terror, terrōris, M. 3, *terror, fright.*

turris, -is, -ium, F. 3, *tower.*

vulnus, vulneris, N. 3 (cf. **vulnerō**), *wound.*

283.   **READING MATTER**

(Girl and Braggart Soldier)

1. Proelium ex vīllae meae turrī spectābō. Sed tū Rōmānae
an Gallicae eris partis? (The boy) Ego Gallicae gentis erō.
Nam Gallī barbarī atque ferī sunt, et magnam gladiīs suīs faci-
unt caedem hominum. (The girl) Tum tibi Gallicum īnsigne
in galeā gerendum est. Ubi exemplar inveniēs? (The boy)
Mārcī pater multa īnsignia in bellō cēpit. Ex hīs exemplāria
sūmēmus. Ego etiam imāginem animālis alicuius ferī in scūtō
meō pingam. Haec enim hostīs terrōre complēbit. (The girl)
Sed Gallōrum mōs est etiam ōra atque corpora sua in terrōrem[1]
hostium pingere. Id tū factūrus es? (The boy) Crēdō. (The
girl) Mātrem certē et frātrēs parvōs sorōrēsque terrēbis, sed
mīlitem terrēbis nūllum. Nec magnus erit numerus vulnerum
tuōrum. Fīnis erit virtūtis tuae, cum pugna incipiet. Tum tē
territus fugā servābis, neque ante noctem fugere dēsistēs.

2. (A father) Vērī mīlitēs saepe ignī pugnant. Haec pugna
vōbīs sine ignī pugnanda est. Silvae nōn sunt incendendae.

284.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. (One mother to another) Have you heard the talk of this
fierce boy? 2. He wishes to be of the barbarian side; for he has
a real Gallic helmet. 3. (Second mother) Where did he find it?
(Ans.) Some man gave it to him. 4. And he is going to paint
his face and body for[2] the terror of his schoolmates. 5. How
beautiful he will be! We shall watch him from the tower of our
villa. 6. (First speaker) If anybody attacks him, he will run-
away in-a-fright.[3] 7. He will receive *his* wounds in flight.

8. (A father) There will be great danger from[4] fire; for if the
woods are-set-on-fire, our villas will-be-set-on-fire too. (Another
father) Fires are not to be made by these boys.

---

[1] "For the terror of " = "to frighten."   [3] Say "terrified."
[2] Use in as above.   [4] Use ā or ab.

LESSON XL

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

285. Like Nouns, Adjectives of the Third Declension are divided into two classes, those with Consonant Stems, and those with **i**-Stems. *The* **i**-*Stems are by far the more numerous.*

CONSONANT-STEM ADJECTIVES

286. Comparative[1] Adjectives, and a very few Adjectives of One Ending in the Nominative Singular are of the Consonant-Stem Declension. These are declined precisely like Consonant-Stem Nouns.

		Comparative Adjective certior, *surer*		Adjective of One Ending vetus, *old*	
Stem		certiŏr-		veter-	
		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
	Gen.	certiŏris	certiŏris	veteris	veteris
	Dat.	certiŏrī	certiŏrī	veterī	veterī
	Acc.	certiŏrem	certius	veterem	vetus
	Voc.	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
	Abl.	certiŏre	certiŏre	vetere	vetere
Pl.	*Nom.*	certiŏrēs	certiŏra	veterēs	vetera
	Gen.	certiŏrum	certiŏrum	veterum	veterum
	Dat.	certiŏribus	certiŏribus	veteribus	veteribus
	Acc.	certiŏrēs	certiŏra	veterēs	vetera
	Voc.	certiŏrēs	certiŏra	veterēs	vetera
	Abl.	certiŏribus	certiŏribus	veteribus	veteribus

---

[1] Adjectives express qualities in three degrees, called Positive, Comparative, and Superlative; thus *sweet, sweeter, sweetest*. A Positive Adjective simply expresses the presence of the quality in a person or thing; the Comparative expresses its presence in a higher degree than in some other person or thing, and the Superlative expresses its presence in the highest degree. The same holds correspondingly for Adverbs.

287. 1. All Comparative Adjectives are declined like **certior.**
Decline now **melior,** *better,* **maior,** *greater,* **minor,** *less,* **validior,**
stronger.

2. **Vetus,** *old,* is the only Consonant-Stem Adjective of one end-
ing to be used in this book.[1]   Remember, then, *that except Com-
paratives, and* **vetus,** *all Third-Declension Adjectives in this book
are* i-*Stems.*

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

288. Specimen Sentence:

> **Mihi multī amīcī sunt,** *for me there are many friends.*

a. The Dative here was originally the Dative of the Person Con-
cerned, and has been translated as such above.   But to say, " for me
there are many friends," amounts to saying, " I *have* many friends,"
and this has come to be the regular meaning of such a combination.
Hence:

289. *Possession may be expressed by the Dative with
the verb* **sum,** *or other verbs implying existence.*

a. Of course, the same idea may be expressed by **habeō,** as we
have often seen.   Thus we may say:

> either **multī amīcī mihi sunt** ⎫
>   or   **multōs amīcōs habeō** ⎬ *I have many friends.*

290.   VOCABULARY

āthlēta, -ae, M. 1, *athlete.*

certior, -ius, *surer, trustier.*
   Compar. of **certus,** *sure, trusty.*

dux, ducis, M. 3 (cf. **dūcō**), *leader,
   guide.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 3
   (dē+dō, give away), *give up;*
   with reflexive pronoun, *give
   oneself up (to), devote oneself
   (to); surrender.*

exemplum, -ī, N. 2, *example,
   precedent.*

labor, labōris, M. 3, *labor, work.*

Lūcius, -ī, M. 2, *Lucius,* a name.

maior, maius, *greater, bigger.*
   Compar. of **magnus,** *great, big.*

minor, minus, *smaller, less.*
   Compar. of **parvus,** *small.*

melior, melius, *better.*   Compar.
   of **bonus,** *good.*

nēmō, Dat. nēminī, Acc. nēmi-
   nem (Gen. and Abl. supplied
   by **nūllīus** and **nūllō**), M. 3, *no
   one, nobody.*

oculus, -ī, M. 2, *eye.*

validior, -ius, *stronger.*   Compar.
   of **validus,** *strong.*

vetus, -us, *old; old-fashioned.*

---

[1] It is the only one in Caesar's story of the Gallic War, I–IV.

291.   READING MATTER

1. Mārcus certē nōbīs alter[1] ex rēgibus ēligendus est. Nēmō enim melior est discipulus, nēmō āthlēta melior. Nēmō sē maiōre cum dīligentiā lūdīs dēdidit, nēmō labōrī. Nēminī validius est ingenium, nēminī corpus validius. Nūllīus exemplum umquam melius fuit. Certiōrem ducem nōn inveniēmus. Quaecumque imperāverit, ea mīlitēs eius facient. Eius nōmen ipsum alterās partīs terrēbit.

2. (One of the opposition) Nūllus in cuiusquam nōmine terror est. Tū Mārcō propter dīligentiam eius favēs. Ego veterēs mōrēs eius nōn amō. Lūciō faveō. Is nihil nisi lūdōs colit.

3. (An anxious father) Haec cōnsilia mē terrent. Hī ferī mīlitēs Gallicī et Rōmānī vulnera in ōra[2] aut oculōs dabunt et accipient. Etiam ignēs facient, quibus silvae incendentur. (Ans.) Tū, videō, fīliō tuō timēs. Is autem in proeliō sē fugae dabit. Vel minus erit perīculum, sī pugnam longē ex turrī spectābit.

292.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Lucius ought (say "is") to be chosen by us. 2. He loves games. He will devote himself to this war. 3. No-one will lead us with greater interest. 4. He has (use **sum** for practice) less diligence than Mark (has), but no one has a bigger or stronger body. 5. He really *loves* wounds. *He* doesn't fear for his face or eyes. Mark is too good. 7. He loves work and old-fashioned ways. He hurts us by his example. 8. If he is elected he will be a stern leader.

9. (Ans.) Wait a little (while). You will see. 10. Mark is even now the better athlete, and, on-account-of his ability, he will be the surer leader. 11. *You* are filled with terror, because **you** do not wish to exercise your lazy body.

---

[1] *One (of the two).* Notice that **alter** is here in the Predicate.
[2] Acc., because the wounds go *into* the face. *We* say "*in* the face."

LESSON XLI

I-STEM ADJECTIVES

293. I-Stem Adjectives are of Three Endings, Two Endings, or One Ending in the Nominative Singular. They are declined as follows:

		Of Three Endings ācer, *sharp*			Of Two Endings fortis, *brave*	
Stem			ācri-		forti-	
		M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.		ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
Gen.		ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis
Dat.		ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
Acc.		ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	forte
Voc.		ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
Abl.		ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
Pl. Nom.		ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
Gen.		ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium
Dat.		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.		ācrīs *or* -ēs	ācrīs *or* -ēs	ācria	fortīs *or* -ēs	fortia
Voc.		ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
Abl.		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus

Of One Ending: duplex, *double*
Stem   duplici-

		M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.		duplex	duplex
Gen.		duplicis	duplicis
Dat.		duplicī	duplicī
Acc.		duplicem	duplex
Voc.		duplex	duplex
Abl.		duplicī	duplicī
Pl. Nom.		duplicēs	duplicia
Gen.		duplicium	duplicium
Dat.		duplicibus	duplicibus
Acc.		duplicīs *or* -ēs	duplicia
Voc.		duplicēs	duplicia
Abl.		duplicibus	duplicibus

a. **I**-Stem Adjectives always have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular.

b. Notice that those of Three Endings and those of Two differ practically only in the Nominative-Vocative Singular *Feminine.*

Thus **ācer puer,** *a spirited boy,* **ācris puella,** *a spirited girl,*
but   **fortis puer,** *a brave boy,* **fortis puella,** *a brave girl.*

DATIVE OF THE PERSON JUDGING

294. Specimen Sentence:

Mihi Mārcus āthlēta melior est, *to me, Mark is the better athlete.*

a. The Dative here practically expresses the idea of the person *in whose eyes, to whose judgment,* the statement made is true. This became a regular power of the case, and we may accordingly lay down the rule that:

295. *The Dative is used to denote the Person In Whose Judgment, or For Whom, the statement holds good.*

a. So often with **videor** (Passive of **videō**), meaning *seem:*

Mārcus mihi melior esse vidētur quam Lūcius, *Mark seems to me to be better than Lucius.*

b. Notice that the Predicate Adjective **melior** goes back finally (*through* **esse** and **vidētur**) to **Mārcus,** and of course agrees with it.

296.   **VOCABULARY**

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, fierce.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager.*

aptus, -a, -um, *apt, fitted, fit.*

certāmen, -inis, N. 3, *contest.*

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *contend, strive.*

cīvitās, -ātis, -ātium (sometimes **cīvitātum**), F. 3, *state.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3, *custom.*

duplex, duplex, Gen. **duplicis,** *twofold, double; ambiguous.*

facilis, -e (cf. **faciō,** do; do-able, i. e.), *easy.*

facile, *easily* (Adv. for **facilis**).

fortis, forte, *strong, brave.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *enter.*

latus, -eris, N. 3, *side; lung.*

maximus, -a, -um, Superl. of **magnus,** *greatest, largest, biggest;* (in a family) *oldest.*

maximē, Adv., *in the largest degree, very greatly, exceedingly.*

omnis, -e, *all, the whole; every, any.*

omnīnō, Adv., *in all, at all.*

parum, Adv. (cf. **parvus**), *little, too little.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, *ready* (in sense of ready to do a thing).

statim, Adv., *immediately, at once.*

videor (Passive of **videō**), *seem.*

297.   **READING MATTER**

(The Too-Athletic Girl)

1. Soror Lūcī maxima turbae puellārum minōrum imperat, nec quisquam certior aut melior dux est. Nunc maximē cupit gladiō et scūtō pugnāre inter puerōs. Fortis frāter est, soror nōn minus fortis. Animus eius ad[1] bellum gerendum alacer[1] ac prōmptus est. Ācrīs habet oculōs, latera[2] bona. Multīs āthlētīs corpora nōn maiōra aut validiōra sunt. Multōs ea nostrum, sī pugnābit, facile vincet. Sed ex cōnsuētūdine vetere huius cīvitātis pugnae puellīs omnīnō nōn pugnandae sunt. Puer ācer mihi placet, puella nimis ācris parum placet. Malum exemplum erit, haec[3] sī certāmen intrāverit. Quid tū sentīs?

2. (Ans.) Mea sententia duplex est. Nōn probō; sed, sī illa pugnātūra est, ego eārundem partium esse dēsīderō. Omnēs enim eī hostēs sēsē statim dēdent, quia nēmō cupiet cum puellā certāre. Itaque illa sine omnī labōre vincet.

3. Proelia mihi puellīs apta esse nōn videntur; sed facilis alterās partīs manet victōria, haec[3] sī puella arma sūmpserit.

298.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Your words are ambiguous. 2. Certainly girls seem to you to be little fitted for[4] contests to-be-carried-on with boys. 3. Why don't you say so at-once? 4. This girl is exceedingly eager, and-not less brave and ready. 5. But *many* girls have[5] sharp eyes, strong bodies, good lungs, and brave minds. 6. If all the oldest sisters of our friends enter the contest, the boys will not contend. 7. In that case,[6] an easy victory easily awaits this girl. 8. But where will the sport be for the boys? 9. To me, this game seems not at-all fit for girls. 10. According-to[7] the custom of this state, other and smaller things are to-be-done by them.

---

[1] *Eager for war to be waged;* i. e., *eager for waging war.*

[2] *Sides* here clearly = *lungs.*

[3] Note the emphasis.

[4] Use **ad** as above.

[5] Use **sum** for practice.

[6] Say "then."

[7] Say "from" as above.

LESSON XLII

THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

299. The Present Active Participle is formed in the Nominative by adding -ns to the Present Stem.   Thus:

Conj.	I	II	III		IV
	amāns	monēns	tegēns	capiēns	audiēns
	loving	*warning*	*covering*	*taking*	*hearing*

300. DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE PAR-
TICIPLE

		amāns, *loving*		monēns, *warning*	
Stems		amant- in Sing.		monent- in Sing.	
		amanti- in Pl.		monenti- in Pl.	
		M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
	Gen.	amantis	amantis	monentis	monentis
	Dat.	amantī	amantī	monentī	monentī
	Acc.	amantem	amāns	monentem	monēns
	Voc.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
	Abl.	amante (*or* -ī)	amante (*or* -ī)	monente (*or* -ī)	monente (*or* -ī)
Pl.	Nom.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
	Gen.	amantium	amantium	monentium	monentium
	Dat.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus
	Acc.	amantīs *or* -ēs	amantia	monentīs *or* -ēs	monentia
	Voc.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
	Abl.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus

a. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (Abl. Sing. -e); but when used as Adjectives, they are i-Stems (Abl. Sing. -ī).

ABLATIVE WITH prō AND prae

301. Prō, originally *forth* (*from*), or *in front* (*from*), and **prae,** *in front* (*from*), take an Ablative of Separation. The meaning slightly changes, so that we should define **prō** and **prae** as meaning simply *in front of* (much like **ante**); but the *case*-usage remains fixed.

THE GERUNDIVE

302. Specimen Example (from last Reading Matter) :

Alacer ad bellum gerendum, *eager for war to-be-waged.*

This clearly suggests, *eager for* WAGING *war.*

a. In other words, what was originally merely a Future Passive Participle comes to be felt as the *leading word* in its phrase, and to seem very like a verbal noun (cf. WAGING in the translation above).

When the form has reached this power, it is called the *Gerundive.* We may then state the usage as follows :

303. *The Gerundive is the Future Passive Participle after it has gained the power of conveying the Leading Idea in its phrase.*

a. Notice that the Gerundive, although conveying the leading idea in its phrase, is still *grammatically* dependent. Thus, in the example above, **bellum,** not **gerendum,** depends upon **ad,** and **gerendum** *agrees with* **bellum.**

304.   VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *administer, manage.*

ars, artis, artium, F. 3, *art, skill.*

castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *camp.* (Used only in Pl.)

commodē, Adv., *conveniently, properly.*

cotīdiē, Adv., *daily, every day.*

inermis, -e (in, not + **arma,** arms), *unarmed.*

mīlitāris, -e, *military.* **Ars mīlitāris,** *art of war, tactics.*

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3, *neglect, pass by, disregard.*

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, *get acquainted with, come to know, learn.*

oppidum, -ī, N. 2, *town.*

prae, *in front of.* Prep., taking Abl.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (prae + cēdō, go in front), *precede.*

praesum,-esse,-fuī, irreg. (prae + sum, be in front), *be in command over, be present.* Participle **praesēns,** *being present,* as Adj., *present.*

prō, *in front of.* Prep., taking Abl.

Pūblius, -ī, M. 2, *a name.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2, *hold.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2 (per + teneō, hold through to), *reach (to); pertain (to).*

305.   READING MATTER

(Two Ways of Electioneering)

1. Servius hodiē omnīs ad certāmen vocāvit! Gladium et scūtum prae sē gerēns,[1] prō oppidō prōcessit cum ācrī multitūdine amīcōrum, alacrium et ad omnia facienda prōmptōrum. Ipse praesēns[2] vīdī. Praecēdēbat maxima turba puerōrum parvōrum inermium, Servium propter eius studium laudantium. Hic iīs fortis homō vidēbātur. Mihi nōn fortis sed neglegēns[3] et temerārius est. Latera autem eius certē bona sunt.

2. Mārcus autem et Pūblius, Mārcī amīcus, nōn statim certāre cupiunt, sed mīlitēs cotīdiē spectant, quī, castra ante oppidum tenentēs, gladiīs ex rōbore factīs pugnantēs sē exercent, omniaque quae ad bellum commodē gerendum pertinent discunt. Servius maximē cupit rēx ēligī. Parum autem aptus est ad nōs dūcendōs. Facile ēligentur Mārcus et Lūcius.

3. (Second speaker) Servius ex cōnsuētūdine suā certāmen nunc statim intrāre cupit; omnia enim eī facilia videntur. Mārcus autem omnia dēsīderat nōscere. Itaque hic mox parātus erit ad bella administranda. Ars enim mīlitāris duplex est. Bonus dux et gladiō pugnat et cōnsiliō.

306.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Mark and Publius, studying the art of-war, are watching the soldiers every-day when they exercise in-front-of the camp. 2. I myself am often present[2] and see them. 3. They are exceedingly eager to[4] learn everything that pertains to managing a war properly. 4. Servius, neglecting everything, according to his custom, desires to enter the contest at once. 5. Nothing holds him. 6. So today he proceeded in-front-of the town, displaying his sword and shield. 7. The greatest mob of little boys, fierce but unarmed, preceded (him). 8. On account of his zeal and strong (say "good") lungs, many favor him.

---

[1] *Bearing in front of himself, displaying.*
[2] *Being present saw,= was present and saw.*
[3] *Neglecting,= careless.*
[4] Use **alacer ad**, as above.

LESSON XLIII

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

307. Specimen Sentences:

Mārcō imperante, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark commanding, everything is managed well.*

Mārcō duce, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark as leader* (or *Mark being leader*), *everything is managed well.*

Mārcō praesente, omnia bene administrantur, *with Mark present* (or *Mark being present*), *everything is managed well.*

Hōc factō, puerī discessērunt, *with this done* (or *this having been done*), *the boys departed.*

a. The Ablative is here used like the "Nominative Absolute" in English, in a loose connection with the rest of the sentence; and it is accordingly called the *Ablative Absolute* (i. e., *free* Ablative). As you see, it expresses the existing *Situation*, the *State of Affairs.*

b. The second word in each case forms a kind of *Predicate* for the first. Thus in our first example, Mark *commands;* in the second, he *is leader;* in the third, he *is present;* in the fourth, the thing *had been done.*

We may accordingly describe the construction as follows:

308. *An Ablative Noun or Pronoun, with a Predicate word in the same case, may be used in loose connection with the rest of the sentence.*[1]

a. The Ablative Absolute may be translated in a variety of ways,—by an English Nominative Absolute, by a *with*-phrase, or by a Clause introduced by *when, since, although,* or *if.* Thus:

$$\textbf{hōc factō} = \begin{cases} \textit{with this done} \\ \textit{this having been done} \\ \textit{when this had been done, etc.} \end{cases}$$

---

[1] In origin, the construction is simply a Sociative Ablative, precisely like the English construction in "with this done," "with Mark as leader," etc. The English Nominative Absolute is itself probably an old Sociative construction from which the case-ending has been lost, so that what is left *seems* to be a Nominative.

PERFECT TENSES WITH THE MEANING OF THE PRESENT, ETC.

309. In several verbs the tenses of completed action have come to express a present, past, or future *state*. Thus **nōvī**, originally *I have become acquainted with* (from **nōscō**, *I become acquainted with*) practically means *I know.* Similarly, **nōveram** means *I knew*, and **nōverō**, *I shall know.*

310. A few verbs have wholly lost the forms made from the Present stem and are confined to the Perfect system. Thus **meminī**, *I remember* (originally *I have called to mind*). Such verbs are called *Defective*, because they lack many forms.

MIDDLE, OR REFLEXIVE, VERBS

311. Middle, or Reflexive, Verbs are those which express an act as done by the subject *to* or *for himself.* The terminations are the same as those of the Passive. Thus to express the idea "I exercise (myself)," one may use either the Active **exerceō** with an Object **mē** (**mē exerceō**), or the Reflexive **exerceor.**

DEPONENT VERBS

312. A number of verbs which originally were reflexive have come to be practically Active in meaning. Thus **revertor**, *I return*, from re-, *back*, and **vertor**, *I turn myself*; **vēscor**, *I eat*, originally *I feed myself*, from **vēscō**, *feed.* But in many verbs we can no longer trace the rise of the use of the Passive form.

These verbs are called Deponents, because they have "laid aside" their Active forms. We may then say that:

313. *Deponents are verbs with Passive Form but Active Meaning.*

314. The Principal Parts are of course those of the Passive. Thus:

Conjugation   I   **Vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum,** *roam, wander about.*
            II   **Vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *fear, respect.*
           III   **Sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,** *follow.*
           IV   **Orior, orīrī, ortus sum,** *rise, arise.*

315. *Transitive* Deponents have the four Participles, all but the Future Passive being ordinarily of Active meaning. Thus:

verēns, *fearing*	**veritus**, *having feared*
veritūrus, *about to fear*	**verendus**, *to be feared*

316.   VOCABULARY

(Add the Deponent Verbs in **314.**)

altus, -a, -um, *high, lofty.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2 (con-+teneō, hold together), *hold in, hem in, keep.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (dē+certō, strive it out), *settle the war, fight it out.*

dum, Conj., *while.*

flūmen, -inis, N. 3, *river.*

interim, Adv., *meanwhile.*

mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3, *mountain.*

meminī, -isse, Defect., *remember.*

nātūra, -ae, F. 1, *nature.*

ob, *against, before; on account of*[1] (like **propter**). Prep. of Space-Relation, taking Acc.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3, *place.*

pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3, *bridge.*

regiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *region.*

revertor, revertī (Infin.), revertī (Perf.), reversum, 3, *return.* Not Deponent in Perf.

rūs, rūris, N. 3, *country.*

undique, Adv., *on all sides.*

urbs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *city.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque (declined like uter, **130,**+-que), *each* (of two), *either.*

vallis, -is, -ium, F. 3, *valley.*

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf. vertō), *keep turning, hover; be busy, be engaged.*

vēscor, vēscī, ——, 3, *feed oneself with, live on; eat.* Takes Ablative (originally expressing the idea of Means).

317.   READING MATTER

(Mark Writes to a Friend)

Tū dē pugnā quae mox pugnābitur iam audīvistī. Sed cīvitātem nostram nōn nōvistī. Ego tibi dīcam nātūram locī.

Oppidum in quō habitō positum est in valle, quae montibus altīs undique continētur. Hōs montīs bene nōvī; nam in iīs ferē cotīdiē, dum exerceor, vagor. Tū forte, haec cum legēs, mihi verēberis; sed nihil in eā regiōne umquam vīdī perīculōsī.

Ad hōs montīs explōrandōs herī iterum prōcessī, aliquot parvīs amīcīs praecēdentibus aut sequentibus. Flūmen parvum secūtus sum, quod ab hīs montibus oritur.[2] In[3] eō flūmine ali-

---

[1] Prepositions originally expressed space-relations. But they all gained figurative forces in addition, as we have now seen in the case of **ab, dē, ex, cum, in; ad, contrā, ob, post, propter**, etc.

[2] Orior, though of the 4th Conj., has several 3d Conj. forms.   [3] *On, over.*

quot sunt pontēs.   Ex utrāque parte[1] loca castrīs idōnea invēnī.
Hōc factō[2] revertī.   Dum revertor, Servium vīdī, quī ex
oppidō prōcesserat, turbā amīcōrum sequente.   Omnīs condisci-
pulōs ad certāmen vocābat.   Ego, quia inermis eram, mē continuī,
eumque neglēxī.   Itaque is sibi melior mīles vīsus est.   Haec
omnia, cum dēcertābimus, mihi ob oculōs versābuntur.[3]   Bene
meminerō.   Interim Servius sibi magnopere placet, atque glōriā
vēscitur.   Sed ea quae ad artem mīlitārem pertinent nōn nōvit.

Venī ab istā tuā urbe ad nostram pugnam videndam.[4]   Tū
rūs amās, et tibi nunc ōtium est.

---

[1] *From each side.*   In English, *ON each side.*
[2] Ablative Absolute ("with this done," "this being done," "after doing
this").
[3] *Will hover before the eyes for me* (= *before my eyes*).
[4] Notice that **ad** with the Gerundive can express the idea of *Purpose.*

SUBIACO IN THE SABINE MOUNTAINS, EAST OF ROME

LESSON XLIV

SUMMARY OF POINTS OF DIFFICULTY IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

(*For Review and Reference*)

318. We have now finished the Third Declension (except for a few irregular words), and may sum up its points of difficulty.

319. *Nouns* of the Third Declension are divided into Consonant Stems, i-Stems, and Mixed Stems, with characteristics as follows:

1. Consonant Stems have the Ablative Singular in -e, the Genitive Plural in -um, and the Accusative Plural in -ēs for the Masculine-Feminine, and -a for the Neuter.

2. Most Masculine or Feminine i-Stems, together with Mixed Stems, are declined like Consonant Stems in the Singular and i-Stems in the Plural (that is, with the Genitive in -ium and the Accusative in -īs or -ēs).

3. But a *few* Masculine or Feminine i-Stems preserve the characteristic marks of the i-Declension in the Singular also, showing it in an Accusative -im (sometimes alongside of -em) or an Ablative -ī (sometimes alongside of -e), or in both cases.

4. Neuter i-Stems have -ī in the Ablative Singular, and an -i- in every Plural termination.

320. *Adjectives and Participles* of the Third Declension are likewise divided into Consonant Stems, i-Stems, and Mixed Stems, with characteristics as follows:

1. Only Comparatives and a few Adjectives of one ending are Consonant Stems.

2. All other Third-Declension Adjectives are i-Stems, and these have the -i in the Ablative Singular (-ī), as well as in the regular places in the Plural.

3. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (Abl. Sing. -e); but when used as Adjectives, they are i-Stems (Abl. Sing. -ī). Thus:

> **Mārcō praesente,** *with Mark present* (Mark being-present),
> but in **praesentī negōtiō,** *in the present business.*

HELPS IN DISTINGUISHING i-STEMS OR MIXED STEMS

321. The only sure general sign is **-ium** in the Genitive Plural. But a few other signs will be helpful, namely:

322. I-Stems are:

1. All Neuters in **-e, -al,** or **-ar,** with long penult in the Genitive. Thus **animal, animālis.**

2. Masculine or Feminine Nouns in **-is** or **-ēs,** with the same number of syllables in the Genitive.[1] Thus **fīnis,** Genitive **fīnis, caedēs,** Genitive **caedis.**

323. Mixed Stems are:

1. Nouns in **-ns, -rs, -rx, -lx,** and some in **-x.** Thus **mōns, pars, nox.**

2. Most monosyllables in **-ps** or **-bs.** Thus **urbs.**

GENDERS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

324. A few general statements may be made about Third-Declension Genders:

1. Neuter are:

a. Nouns in **-e, -al, -ar.** Thus **animal.**
b. Most nouns in **-en.** Thus **nōmen.**
c. Most s-Stems. Thus **corpus, corporis.**

2. Masculine are:

a. Most Mute Stems.[2] Thus **pēs, pedis.**
b. Most Stems in l and r. Thus **victor, victōris.** (But most with short o in the Genitive are Neuter. Thus **rōbur, rōboris.**)
c. N-Stems in **-ō, -ōnis** (*not* in **-iō, -iōnis**). Thus **sermō, sermōnis.**

---

[1] But **mīles,** Genitive **mīlitis** (*longer* here) is a Consonant Stem.
[2] The Mutes are consonants making complete *stops:* c, k, q, g, t, d, p, b.

3. Feminine are:

a. All Nouns in -iŏ, -iŏnis, and most of those in -ŏ, -inis. Thus regiŏ, regiŏnis, and multitūdŏ, multitūdinis.

b. Nouns in -tās, -tātis, or -tūs, -tūtis. Thus cīvitās, cīvitātis, virtūs, virtūtis.

c. Nouns in -ēs with the same number of syllables in the Genitive, the majority of those in -is, and most of the Mixed Stems. Thus caedēs, turris, nox. (But several Mixed Stems in -ns are Masculine, as mōns, pōns.)

325.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**
(The Friend's Answer to Mark's Letter)

1. I have been in your state. 2. I know well the nature of the place where you are going to fight-it-out. 3. I know the little valley in which your town is placed. 4. I know the lofty mountains by which that valley is hemmed in on every side. 5. I have seen the little bridges, while[1] following-up the river to the place where[2] it rises. 6. I have wandered in the forest on[3] either side. 7. I remember it[4] all well. 8. It is a beautiful region.

9. When everything is ready, with[5] the kings elected and the rules of war established, I shall come to[6] see the battle. 10. Meanwhile I shall myself study the art of war.

11. *You* will be chosen one of the kings. 12. The[7] boy who lives on glory will never be chosen. 13. Under[8] your leadership, your side will conquer. On account of your judgment, I do not fear.

14. When[9] this is done, I shall return at once to the city. 15. I love the country, but I am busy in school now.

---

[1] Say "while I follow-up." The *Present* is regular in this use.
[2] The Roman would say unde, "*from* which," "whence."
[3] Look again at p. 123, footnote 1.
[4] Be more definite in the Latin (say *these things*).
[5] Use the Ablative Absolute construction.
[6] Read **302** again. Say "to the battle to-be-seen."
[7] How do you translate such a "the" as this?
[8] Say "(with) you leading." What construction?
[9] Say "(with) this done," "this having been done."

LESSON XLV

IRREGULAR NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

326.   DECLENSION OF **vīs**, *force*, F.

Nom. Sing.	vīs		*Pl.*	vīrēs
Gen.	"	vīs (rare)	"	vīrium
Dat.	"	vī (rare)	"	vīribus
Acc.	"	vim	"	vīrīs *or* -ēs
Voc.	"	vīs	"	vīrēs
Abl.	"	vī	"	vīribus

327. DECLENSION OF **plūs**, *more*, AND **complūrēs**, *a good many*

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	———	plūs		
Gen.	———	plūris		
Dat.	———	———		
Acc.	———	plūs		
Voc.	———	———		
Abl.	———	plūre		
		PLURAL		
Nom.	plūrēs	plūra	*Nom.* complūrēs	complūria *or* -a
Gen.	plūrium	plūrium	*Gen.* complūrium	complūrium
Dat.	plūribus	plūribus	*Dat.* complūribus	complūribus
Acc.	plūrīs *or* -ēs	plūra	*Acc.* complūrīs *or* -ēs	complūria *or* -a
Voc.	———	———	*Voc.* ———	———
Abl.	plūribus	plūribus	*Abl.* complūribus	complūribus

a. In the Singular, **plūs** is used only as a neuter *Substantive*, often with a Genitive of the Whole.

328. DECLENSION OF **duo**, *two* (SIMILARLY **ambō**, *both*)

Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs *or* duo	duās	duo
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

TWO ACCUSATIVES

329. Specimen Sentences:

Mārcum rēgem faciēmus, *we shall make Mark king.*

Mārcum rēgem ēligēmus, *we shall elect Mark (as) king.*

Mārcus omnīs discipulōs alacrīs ad bellum faciet, *Mark will make all the schoolboys eager for the war.*

a. In the above examples, there are, in each sentence, *two* Accusatives, a Direct Object (thus **Mārcum**), and another word (thus **rēgem**) standing in a *Predicate* relation to the verb.

b. In the first two examples, the Predicate Accusative is a Noun (**rēgem**); in the last one, it is an Adjective (**alacrīs**).

c. Several other verbs have similar power. We may then say that:

330. *Verbs of Making, Choosing, Having, Regarding, Calling, or Showing may take, in addition to a Direct Object, a Predicate Accusative. This may be either a Noun or an Adjective.*

a. In the Passive construction, the Direct Object of the Active Voice becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative. Thus:

> **Mārcus rēx ēligētur,** *Mark will be chosen king.*

TWO NEW CONSTRUCTIONS ARISING OUT OF THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

331. Specimen Sentences:

Lūcius capite altior est quam Cornēlius, *Lucius is taller by a head than Cornelius.*

Lūcius multō altior est quam Cornēlius, *Lucius is taller by much (= much taller) than Cornelius.*

a. In these sentences, the Ablative is a rough expression of *Means,*—that is, it expresses that *by which* the things compared differ (just as English "by" does in "taller by a head"). But that by which the things compared differ is the *measure* of the difference.

We may accordingly lay down the rule that:

332. *The Measure of Difference is expressed by the Ablative.*

ABLATIVE WITH ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, AND vēscor

333. Several deponent verbs take an Ablative which was originally one of Means.

a. Thus, as we saw in **312** and **316**, vēscor originally meant *feed oneself with*, the thing with which the feeding was done being expressed by the Ablative of Means. But the practical meaning of *feed oneself with* is *eat*. Hence in time the Ablative must have seemed to express simply the Direct Object.

The same is true of fruor, *profit-oneself-by*, i. e., *enjoy;* potior, *make oneself powerful by*, i. e., *gain possession of, get;* ūtor, *help oneself with*, i. e., *use;* fungor, *busy oneself with*, i. e., *perform.* Hence we may lay down the rule that:

334. Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, *and* vēscor *take their Object in the Ablative.*

Scūtō et gladiō ūtor, *I use a shield and a sword.*

Hostēs oppidō potiuntur, *the enemy get-possession-of the town.*

a. Ūtor may take a *Second* Ablative, in Predicate relation.

Mārcō amīcō ūtor, *I use Mark (as) a friend.*

335.   VOCABULARY

ambō (Declension **328**), *both.*

commodē (as before), *conveniently, properly*, Compar. commodius, Superl. commodissimē.

complūrēs (**327**), *a good many.*

dīligēns, -ēns, Gen. -entis, *diligent.* Compar. dīligentior, Superl. dīligentissimus.

dīligenter, Adv., *diligently*, Compar. dīligentius, Superl. dīligentissimē.

duo (**328**), *two.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, 3, *profit-by, enjoy.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, 3, *perform, discharge.*

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus, 1 (ob+stō, stand against), *oppose, prevent.* Takes Dat.

officium, -ī, N. 2, *office, duty.*

ops, opis, F. 3, *help;* in Pl., *resources, means.*

plūs (**327**), Gen. plūris, *more.* Compar. of multum, *much.*

potēns, -ēns, Gen. potentis, *having power, influential.* Compar. potentior, Superl. potentissimus.

potestās, -ātis, F. 3, *power, control, opportunity.*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, 4, *gain possession-of, get.* (Cf. potēns.)

rēgnum, -ī, N. 2, *kingship, kingdom.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *use.*

vīs, vīs, F. 3, *force, violence;* Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, *strength.*

336.   READING MATTER

1. Mārcus ex cōnsuētūdine suā tōtam regiōnem dīligenter[1] iam explōrāvit. Vallem, montīs, flūmen, pontīs, silvās nōvit. Haec omnia omnēs nunc explōrābimus. Mārcō duce commodē[1] ūtēmur. Nēmō nōs commodius[2] aut dīligentius dūcet.

2. Quī vestrum rēgnō potientur? (Ans.) Mārcum rēgem faciēmus. Nēmō eī obstābit. (First speaker) Nōnne duo ex vōbīs aptī sunt ad vōs dūcendōs? Nōnne Lūcius quoque potēns est? (Ans.) Ita; ambō potentēs sunt; sed Mārcus nōn sōlum potentior[2] est quam Lūcius, sed omnium est potentissimus. Ille plūs vīrium corporis quam Lūcius nōn habet, sed in omnibus officiīs servandīs multō dīligentior est. Itaque complūrēs potestātī favent Lūcī, ferē omnēs Mārcī. Huius cōnsiliō et ope saepe iam frūctī sumus. Hīc nunc, omnibus rēgnī officiīs dīligentissimē[3] fungēns, nōs dīligentissimōs[3] faciet mīlitēs.

337.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Do you know this region? 2. (Ans.) Yes. I have explored it with Mark, whom I used as a guide. 3. (First speaker) So you have profited-by Mark's diligence. 4. (Ans.) Yes, he knows everything; no one discharges his duties more diligently or more properly. 5. He even makes all his friends more diligent. No one has more (of) power among the boys.

6. Who are the two most influential boys of the school? 7. (Ans.) Mark and Lucius are (by) much the most influential. 8. A-good-many oppose Mark, but more favor him. 9. Lucius will also get a kingship. 10. Both are strong in body. But Mark will conquer Lucius; for he will fight not only with strength of body but with judgment. 11. He will use *all* his resources.

---

[1] Notice how Adverbs are made,— from Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, in -ē (thus certus, certē; aeger, aegrē), from Adjectives of the Third Declension, in -ter (dīligens, dīligenter).

[2] Notice also how you compare,— Adjectives in -ior, -issimus, and Adverbs in -ius, -issimē.

[3] *Most diligently = very diligently.* The Superlative *often* means *very.*

LESSON XLVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

338. Beside the Indicative and Imperative Moods, which we have been using above, Latin has another Mood, called the Subjunctive. These three make up what are called the *Finite* Moods.

339. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

Conj.	I	II	III		IV
			ACTIVE		
1st Sing.	amem	moneam	tegam	capiam	audiam
2d "	amēs	moneās	tegās	capiās	audiās
3d "	amet	moneat	tegat	capiat	audiat
1st Pl.	amēmus	moneāmus	tegāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
2d "	amētis	moneātis	tegātis	capiātis	audiātis
3d "	ament	moneant	tegant	capiant	audiant
			PASSIVE		
1st Sing.	amer	monear	tegar	capiar	audiar
2d "	amēris	moneāris	tegāris	capiāris	audiāris
	or -re	*or* -re	*or* -re	*or* -re	*or* -re
3d "	amētur	moneātur	tegātur	capiātur	audiātur
1st Pl.	amēmur	moneāmur	tegāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
2d "	amēminī	moneāminī	tegāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
3d "	amentur	moneantur	tegantur	capiantur	audiantur

a. In the formation of the Present Subjunctive, the four Conjugations divide after the first, the mood-sign being -ē- in the First Conjugation, and -ā- in the other three (with shortening in the regular places; **100**, 2).

b. The Passive corresponds to the Active, just as in the Indicative.

340. The Present Subjunctive of the Irregular Verb **sum** is:

1st Sing.	sim	*1st Pl.*	sīmus
2d "	sīs	2d "	sītis
3d "	sit	3d "	sint

ORIGIN AND MEANINGS OF THE LATIN SUBJUNCTIVE

341. The Latin Subjunctive is a *mixed* mood, just as the Latin Ablative is a mixed case. It is made up of the remains of *two* moods which originally were entirely distinct, in form as well as in meaning: an old Subjunctive, and an old Optative. The Latin Mood takes its name from the first.

a. Just as the Ablative Case has inherited the powers of the cases that compose it, though bearing the name of only one of them, so the Subjunctive Mood has inherited the powers of the moods that compose it, though bearing the name of only one of them.

342. The Latin Subjunctive has a variety of forces. We will begin with those that were inherited from the old Subjunctive.

SUBJUNCTIVE USES INHERITED FROM THE OLD SUBJUNCTIVE

343. The old Subjunctive probably originally expressed Will, and later gained the power of expressing Anticipation. Both forces will be seen in the following:

Priusquam pugnēmus, artī mīlitārī studeāmus, *before we fight* (Anticipation), *let us study the art of war* (Will).

a. The *fighting* (pugnēmus) is here expressed as merely *anticipated, expected, looked forward to, counted upon;* while the *studying* (studeāmus) is expressed as *wanted, willed, urged, intended.*

b. In place of saying *Subjunctive of Will* and *Subjunctive of Anticipation,* it is convenient to use the shorter phrases *Volitive* Subjunctive (compare the English word "volition"), and *Anticipatory* Subjunctive (compare English "anticipate" and "anticipation").

c. Notice that the Volitive Subjunctive is close to the Imperative in meaning, the Anticipatory close to the Future Indicative.

d. The Volitive Subjunctive is generally best translated by the emphatic auxiliary *will* of the first person and *shall* of the second and third (*I will,* you *shall,* he *shall*), or by *let* (*let me, let him,* etc.), or by *is to, are to,* etc. All these express that which the speaker WANTS, and *means to have.*—The Anticipatory Subjunctive is best tranlated by *shall* in all persons.

344. The negative for the Volitive Subjunctive is **nē**; for the Anticipatory, **nōn.**

345.   VOCABULARY

cautus, -a, -um, *cautious.*

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *strengthen, establish.*

decem, indeclinable Adj., *ten.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *deliberate.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, 3, *join.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, 3 (**ad** + **iungō**), *join* (*to*).

nē, Adv., *not.*

optimus, -a, -um, *best.* Superl. Adj. for **bonus,** *good.*

optimē, *in the best way, best.* Superl. Adv. for **bene,** *well.*

potius, Adv., *preferably, rather.*

prior, prius, Compar. Adj., *former, first; in front.*

prius, Compar. Adv. (cf. **prior**), *before, first, sooner.*

prius quam, or **priusquam,** Conj., *sooner than, before.*

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *advise, urge.* Takes Dat., because originally meant *make agreeable to.* (Cf. **suāvis.**)

suāvis, -e, *sweet, agreeable.* Word of Quality, taking Dat.

trēs, tria, Gen. **trium,** *three.*

tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

346.   READING MATTER

(Different boys want different things and propose them)

Nunc rēgēs duōs ēligāmus. (Second boy) Quōs ēligāmus?[1] (First boy) Mārcus certē prior ēligētur. Tum Lūcium ēligāmus. (A third) Priusquam rēgēs omnīnō ēligāmus, lēgēs pugnae cōnstituāmus. Id nunc commodius faciēmus. (A fourth) Minimē. Id nunc nē faciāmus. Ēligāmus potius rēgēs duōs. Hīs duōbus tertium adiungāmus puerum, tribusque sīc ēlēctīs omnem dēmus potestātem lēgum cōnstituendārum. Potentissimī et optimī ēlēctī erunt. Illī cautī erunt, atque optimē omnia administrābunt. (A fifth) Ego aliter sentiō. Ambōbus, quī rēgnīs potītī erunt, potestās suāvis erit. Officiō suō fruentur, nōn fungentur. Vīrēs suās iungent, atque omnibus opibus ūtentur ad illam potestātem cōnfirmandam. Etiam plūs cupient habēre potestātis. Hoc ego vōbīs potius suādeō: Ex tōtā scholā puerōs ēligāmus decem, quī[2] lēgēs dent. Nam decem diligentius dēlīberābunt quam aut duo aut complūrēs.

---

[1] *Whom shall we choose?*   [2] . . . . *who shall give us rules* (Purpose).

LESSON XLVII

VARIOUS USES THAT MAY BE MADE OF THE SUB-JUNCTIVE OF WILL AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ANTICIPATION

347. The feeling of Will may of course exist in different degrees of intensity, varying from a mere proposal or suggestion,[1] as in "now let us choose two kings," with which our last Reading Matter began, to a strong urgency, or insistency, ending even in an absolute command or prohibition (i. e., a command *not* to do a thing).

348. In using the Volitive Subjunctive in any of these ways you are *telling* somebody what you want (*declaring* your will).

349. But you may of course, on the other hand, *ask* yourself what you want, or ask somebody else what *he* wants. That is, you may *deliberate with yourself*, or *you may ask another for instructions*. Such questions may best be called *Questions of the Will*, or *Volitive Questions*.[2]

a. Thus you may say to yourself, **quid faciam?** *what shall I do?* or you may ask another person, **quid faciam?** *what shall I do?*

b. The negative for *all questions* in Latin, volitive as well as any other, is **nōn.** Thus **quid faciam, quid nōn faciam?** *what shall I do, what shall I not do?*

350. Thus far, we have been speaking of independent sentences. But we may also, of course, do these same things in *dependent clauses*,—telling what we or somebody else wants, or asking what we or somebody else wants.

---

[1] Often called "Exhortation."
[2] Often called "Deliberative Questions."

351. Thus, as we have already seen in the last Reading
Matter, we can put the act wanted into a dependent clause
introduced by a relative, and can thereby express our *Plan*
or *Purpose*, as in **puerōs ēligāmus decem, quī lēgēs dent**
let us select ten boys, who shall give us rules (i. e., for
the *purpose* of giving us rules).   And we shall presently
find in other Reading Matter that we may do the same
thing by a clause introduced by **ut,** *in which way, by
which,* as in **artī mīlitārī studeāmus, ut commodē pugnēmus,**
let us study the art of war, by which (i. e., by which
studying) *let us fight properly* (in English, *in order that
we may fight properly,* or *that we may fight properly*).[1]
Or, if a comparative is used, we may express our purpose
by a clause introduced by **quō** (Ablative, expressing both
Means and the Measure of Difference), as in **artī mīlitārī
studeāmus, quō commodius pugnēmus,** *let us study the art
of war, by which means* (*and by which amount*) *let us fight
more properly* (in English, *in order that we may fight
more properly*).[1]   Or, if we *don't* want the act to take
place, we may express our purpose by a clause, introduced
by **nē,** *not,* as in **artī mīlitārī studeāmus, nē male pugnēmus,**
let us study the art of war, let us not fight badly (in
English,[1] *that we may not fight badly,* or *lest we fight
badly*).

a. Notice that **ut** and **nē** make a pair of natural *opposites*, **ut**
introducing an act *wanted*, and **nē** an act *not wanted*.

352. Or, again, we may attach the act wanted or not
wanted (1) to another verb, which in itself expresses or
suggests wanting, as in **suādeō exspectētis** (or **ut exspec-**

---

[1] The English expression has arisen from a *different* mood-feeling from
that of the Latin.   But of course, in our final translating, it is the English
way that we must use.

tētis),[1] *I advise that you wait*, or **suādeō nē exspectētis**, *I advise that you do not wait* (=*I advise you not to wait*); or (2) to a verb that expresses *not* wanting (a verb of *hindrance, prevention,* or *check*). In the latter case we must of course use a *negative*. The negatives found are **nē, quōminus,**[2] and **quīn,**[3] *that not.*

Obstō nē pugnētis, *I oppose your fighting* (originally, *I oppose: you shall not fight*).

Obstō quōminus pugnētis, *I oppose your fighting* (originally, *I oppose: by which you shall fight the less*).

Nōn obstō quīn pugnētis, *I do not oppose your fighting.*[4]

a. This last connective, **quīn**, is used only after a negative, expressed or implied (here **nōn**).

353. Or, again, we may attach the expression of what we want or do not want to a verb or phrase of *fear* or *anxiety*, as in **timeō ut**[5] **cautī sint**, *I am afraid: I want them to be cautious* (in English, *I am afraid that they* MAY NOT *be cautious*), or **timeō nē vulnerentur,** *I am afraid: I do not want them to be wounded* (in English, *I am afraid they* MAY *be wounded*). Such clauses are conveniently called *Clauses of Fear or Anxiety.*

a. These last clauses, after verbs of *Wanting, Hindering, Fearing* and the like, **352, 353,** since they stand in a sort of *case*-relation to the main verb, are called *Substantive Clauses.*

---

[1] There is no connective in this use originally. None was needed for the positive idea. The unnecessary **ut** has come in, as the natural opposite of **nē** (351, *a*), from the purpose clause. In this use, we may call it *formal* **ut**. In most constructions of the kind shown, formal **ut** may be used or not, as the speaker pleases. We will indicate this by parentheses.

[2] Quōminus = **quō** + **minus**, and meant originally *by which the less.*

[3] Quīn originally meant *by which . . . . not.* It is made up of a relative adverb **quī**, *by which*, and -**ne**, *not* (with loss of the final e).

[4] Nōn here modifies the *whole combination* of the main verb and dependent clause. The meaning is I do NOT—oppose-by-which-you-shall-not-fight.

[5] This **ut** is likewise purely *formal*, having come in as the opposite of **nē**.

354. The dependent clauses which we have been look-ing at *tell* what is wanted or not wanted. But we may of course also hang a *question* of what is wanted or not wanted upon some verb expressing or suggesting the idea of a question, as in **dēlīberāmus quōs ēligāmus,** *we are deliberating whom we shall choose* (or, *whom to choose*).

355. You will soon get to recognize easily, as you read, what these various Subjunctive sentences or clauses do in particular. The important thing, for the present, is to feel *the volitive force* common to them all (the idea of *wanting* something, *expecting* something), and to dis-tinguish it from the *anticipatory* force (the force of merely *looking forward* to something), which you will find in other examples. It will help you, too, if you will con-stantly keep in mind that, in dependent clauses, the posi-tive conjunction **ut** is used if the act is wanted (or **quō,** if a comparative follows), and one of the negative con-junctions, **nē, quōminus,** or **quīn,** if the act is *not* wanted.

356. The Anticipatory Subjunctive has not so large a range as the Volitive. It had ceased to be used in inde-pendent sentences (and also in most dependent clauses), before the Romans began to write books, being driven out by the Future Indicative. It remained, however, in steady use in *a few kinds* of dependent clauses, especially those introduced by conjunctions meaning "before" or "until," which naturally (if the act has not yet taken place) suggest the idea of *looking forward* (Anticipation).

357. The next two Lessons are for practice in getting the feeling of the Volitive Subjunctive and the Anticipatory Subjunctive as you read your Latin, and of recognizing the corresponding ideas where they occur in your English exercises.

LESSON XLVIII

358. VOCABULARY

celeriter, Adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

dum (same word as before), *while; until.*

fortasse, Adv., *perhaps.*

iter, itineris, N. 3, *way, road; journey; march.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *make ripe; hasten, make haste.*

melius, Adv., *better;* cf. **melior.**

mora, -ae, F. 1, *delay.*

nē, Adv., *not;* as Conj., *that not, lest.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (per + veniō, come through), *arrive.*

pīlum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin.* A heavy missile, about six feet long.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3 (make off), *set out, depart.*

quō, *by which, in order that.* Conj. used with Comparatives.

ut or **utī,** Conj., *in which way, as; whereby, in order that; that; so that.*

saltem, Adv., *at least.*

359. READING MATTER

(Remember that every Subjunctive you meet for the present will express either Will or Anticipation.)

1. (A boy says) Pugnēmus priusquam patrēs nostrī hunc lūdum prohibeant. Saltem mox pugnēmus, ut bellum celeriter cōnficiā-tur. Quid obstat? Hāc morā dēfatīgātus sum. (Another says) Minimē. Cum pugnāverimus, bellum, ita ut tū dīcis,[1] cōnfectum erit. At hic lūdus optimus inter omnīs lūdōs est. Ego suādeō potius exspectēmus[2] dum[3] cōnsilia nostra mātūra sint. Id optimum est. Saltem exspectēmus dum amīcus Mārcī perveniat; quī ex urbe mātūrat proficīscī, atque etiam nunc fortasse in itinere est.

Interim Mārcō et Lūciō potestās dētur lēgum cōnstituen-dārum. Haec iīs suāvis erit, atque ambō dīligentissimē et

---

[1] **Ut** with Indicative means *as.* **Ita ut dīcis** means, *so as you say = just as you say.*

[2] *I advise rather let us wait,* = *I advise that we wait.*

[3] *Wait until* . . . . What follows must be an act *anticipated.*

optimē dēlīberābunt. Vel hīs duōbus tertius adiungātur. Hī dum dēlīberābunt, nōs cotīdiē exerceāmur, quō[1] commodius armīs ūtāmur, utque vīrēs nostrae cōnfirmentur. Sīc multō melius pugnābimus.

2. (A boy, to his father) Nōnnūllī puerī pīla complūria fēcērunt. (The father) Ego suādeō, pīlīs nē[2] ūtāminī. Perīculōsa sunt.

360.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. (A boy reports to the teacher) Some of the boys are tired-out with the delay, and wish to finish the war quickly. 2. Isn't this best? What prevents? 3. (Ans.) I advise that they at least wait until Mark's friend shall arrive. 4. Perhaps he has already set out from the city and is on the way. 5. Meanwhile let them drill[3] every-day, in-order-that[4] they may (say "shall") fight more properly, and that[4] they may (say "shall") get[5] into condition.[5] 6. This will be much better.

7. (A father says) I give[6] you the same advice. The plans for (say "of") the fight are not mature. 8. Let two boys be elected, who shall[7] make-haste to establish the rules. 9. Or let these two join a third boy to themselves, to assist[8] them.

10. Shall[9] the boys[9] use javelins? 11. (Ans.) I advise them not to use javelins.[10]

---

[1] *In order that . . . . the more properly.* Why is quō used?

[2] *I advise don't use . . . . , I advise you not to use . . . .*

[3] Use the *reflexive* voice.

[4] Purpose. Do you want quō or ut here? What decides the question?

[5] Say "establish (cōnfirmō) their strength."

[6] Say "I advise the same (thing) to you."

[7] You see that this also expresses *purpose.* Notice carefully that *purpose closely associated with a person will be expressed by a* quī-*clause, with an act by a* quō- *or* ut-*clause* (as in the English sentence 5 above).

[8] This expresses the *purpose* of appointing the third boy. Say therefore "who shall assist." You must never use the Latin *Infinitive* to express purpose.

[9] Called a "Deliberative Question." It is, as you see, merely a *Question of the Will* (it asks what the person spoken to *wants done*); and this name, or the name *Volitive Question*, would be simpler and better.

[10] Say "I advise them they shall not use javelins."

LESSON XLIX

361.   **VOCABULARY**

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, 3, *cut, kill.* (Cf. caedēs, slaughter.)

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3, *run.*

dōnec, Conj., *until* (same meaning as dum).

frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3, *forehead; front.*

gravis, -e, *heavy; serious.*

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3 (in + sequor, follow against), *follow up, pursue.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3, *send.*

nūntius, -ī, M. 2, *messenger; message.* (Cf. nūntiō.)

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wish, hope.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *beg, entreat.*

perīculōsior, *more dangerous.* Compar. of perīculōsus, *dangerous.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (prō + nūntiō), *proclaim.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think.*

quīn, Conj., *by which not, that not.*

quōminus, Conj., *by which the less, that not.*

secundum, *along.* Prep., taking Acc. of Space-Relation.

362.   **READING MATTER**

(The Anxious Father)

1. Timeō nē puerī, temerē pugnantēs, vulnerentur. Aliud quoque timeō. Nōnne aliquī, secundum flūmen currentēs aut aliōs īnsequentēs, in id cadent? Tē ōrō, mē adiuvā. Prōnūntiēmus nē omnīnō pugnent puerī. (Ans.) Minimē. Tū, putō, fīliō tuō timēs. Nihil obstat quīn[1] tū eum ā pugnā prohibeās. Meum nōn prohibēbō.

2. Puerī nunc dēlīberant, pīlīsne[2] ūtantur. Hoc sī facient, timeō nē in ōra vulnerentur. Gladiī etiam ex rōbore factī facile frontēs aut oculōs aut ōra caedent. (Another father) Dē gladiīs nōn timeō; nam puerī hī[3] capita nōn petent. Sed certē eīs imperēmus pīlīs[3] nē ūtantur; idque statim prōnūntiēmus. Pīla

---

[1] Why does quīn have to be used here?

[2] Pīlīsne = pīlīs plus interrogative -ne. Translate by *whether.*

[3] What is the force of the position?

gravia sunt, ac multō perīculōsiōra quam gladiī. Optimum est (ut) ad puerōs sine morā nūntium mittāmus, quī haec nūntiet. (First speaker) Timeō ut hic nūntius iīs placeat.

3. Nōndum, crēdō, Mārcī amīcus ille ab urbe profectus est. Nōs exspectēmus dōnec (*or* dum) perveniat? (Ans.) Ab urbe, crēdō, iam proficīscī mātūrāvit, moxque ad nōs perveniet. (First speaker) Id optō.

363.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Sextus will be a bad soldier. He cries for nothing.[1] 2. (Another) His father fears that Sextus' forehead or eyes or mouth may be cut. 3. He also fears that, pursuing others swiftly and rashly along the river, he may fall into it. 4. He will order him[2] not to fight. 5. (First speaker) I hope so. I beg you, advise him to do[3] this.

6. Many fathers oppose our using javelins. 7. I'm afraid that they may send a messenger to announce[4] this. 8. (Another boy) I myself am afraid that in the fight we may not be cautious. 9. Javelins are heavy, and will easily hurt faces. 10. It is best that we shall not use them. 11. (Another) *I* think so, too. Let us proclaim this at once. 12. What[5] prevents us from doing it?

---

[1] Say "without any cause."
[2] Say "that he fight not."
[3] Of course you must use a Conjunction and Finite Verb, not an Infinitive.
[4] Evidently Purpose. Do you want connective **quī**, **ut**, or **quō**, and why?
[5] Implies "nothing prevents." What Conjunction, then?
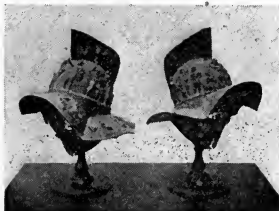
GLADIATORS' HELMETS FROM POMPEII

LESSON L

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

USES INHERITED FROM THE OLD OPTATIVE

364. We have learned to recognize the two forces inherited by the Latin Subjunctive from the old Subjunctive, and are ready to learn those that were inherited from the old *Optative*.

365. The Optative probably expressed Wish or Desire originally, and gained at a later time the other powers which we find it to possess, namely those of Obligation or Propriety, Natural Likelihood, Possibility, and Mental Certainty in an imagined case.

a. **Utinam,** *would that,* is often added to the expression of a Wish.

366. Examples of the Leading Forces inherited from the Old Optative:

Utinam fīliī meī bene studeant, *would that my sons would study well!* (Wish).

Ā lēgibus nōn discēdāmus, *we should not depart from the rules* (Obligation or Propriety).

Cūr nōn facile vincāmus? *why shouldn't we win easily?* i. e., *we are likely to win easily* (Natural Likelihood).

Puerōs cotīdiē sē exercentēs videās, *you can see the boys drilling every day* (Possibility).

Mārcō duce certē vincāmus, *with Mark as leader we should certainly win* (Mental Certainty).

a. These forces may appear in dependent clauses as well. Thus:

Nūlla causa est cūr ā lēgibus discēdāmus, *there is no reason why we should depart from the rules.* (Dependent Clause of Obligation or Propriety. This is simply a longer way of saying *we should not depart from the rules.*)

Nūlla causa est cūr nōn facile vincāmus, *there is no reason why we shouldn't win easily.* (Dependent Clause of Natural Likelihood. This is only a longer way of saying *we are likely to win easily.*)

367. We may now put together, in the form of a table, what we have learned about the leading powers which the mixed mood called the Subjunctive inherited from the two originally separate moods of which it is made up. And we may conveniently add a working name for each power, as follows:

368. *The Latin Subjunctive inherited the power of expressing:*

> I. Will (*Volitive Subjunctive*)
> II. Anticipation (*Anticipatory Subjunctive*)
>
> III. Wish (*Optative*[1] *Subjunctive*)
> IV. Obligation or Propriety (*Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety*)
> V. Natural Likelihood (*Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood*)
> VI. Possibility (*Potential*[2] *Subjunctive*)
> VII. Mental Certainty (*Subjunctive of Mental Certainty*)

a. In the independent sentence, the mood-feeling is always that of the speaker himself. In the dependent clause, it may be either that of the speaker or that of the subject (or agent) of the main act. Thus in **pugnēmus,** *let us fight*, it is *I*, the speaker, that want the fighting to be done; but in **dux imperat ut pugnēmus,** *the general orders that we fight*, it is the general that wants it.

b. The negative for Will and Wish is **nē,** for all other mood-forces **nōn.** But remember that for all *questions* the negative is **nōn.**

c. We may now define the moods as expressions of *Attitudes of Mind*, i.e., of *ways of looking at* an act. Thus (Subjunctive) the *wanting* attitude, the *expecting* attitude, the *wishing* attitude, etc. The Indicative looks at an act as a *fact*.

---

[1] From **optō,** meaning *I wish*. It is from this particular use of the mood that the old Optative receives its name.

[2] From Latin **potēns,** *having power*. The Potential Subjunctive, like the corresponding English "can" or "may" with the Infinitive, expresses what one *can* do, or *may* do.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

369. In the Fourth Declension the Stem ends in -ū-.

cāsus, *chance*, M.   cornū, *horn*, N.

Stem	cāsu-	cornu-	*Endings*	
			M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	cāsuī, -ū	cornū	-uī, -ū	-ū
Acc.	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
Voc.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
Abl.	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
Pl. Nom.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Voc.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

370. Nouns of the Fourth Declension in -us are mostly Masculine. Those in -ū are Neuter.

a. Masculines and Feminines are declined alike in this Declension.

371. **VOCABULARY**

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *address; call, name.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm.*

cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, *chance; accident; case.*

cōnātus, -ūs, M. 4, *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *attempt, undertake.*

cornū, -ūs, N. 4, *horn; wing* (of an army).

cupidē, Adv., *eagerly.*

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (dē + capiō, catch away), *catch, deceive.*

exercitus, -ūs, M. 4, *army.*

gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (take heavily; cf. **gravis**), *be annoyed.*

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf. **laetus**), *be delighted, rejoice.*

praeter, Prep., *beside, along, past; besides.* Takes Acc. of Space-Relation.

prīmus, -a, -um, *first.* Superl. of **prior**, *former.*

prīmō, Adv., *at first.*

quī? Adv., *how?*

strepitus, -ūs, M. 4, *noise.*

utinam, *would that.*

372.   READING MATTER

(Be ready to state the mood-feeling of each Indicative or Subjunctive in this dialogue. You will find every kind that you have learned, except one.)

Quis[1] est ille cornuum sonus? (Another boy, impatient) Quī ego sciam? Hīc, nōn ibi, sum. (First speaker) Cūr sīc gravēris? Quid cōnāris? Pugnam cupidē petis? (A third boy, entering) Quid vōs facitis? Nōn obstō quīn pugnētis, sed suādeō exspectētis dōnec vērum bellum incipiat. (First speaker) Tūne cornua audīvistī? (The newcomer) Audīvī, et cāsū hīs oculīs causam strepitūs vīdī. Servius amīcōs suōs armātōs iterum praeter oppidum dūcit. Prīmus inter nōs esse cupit. Videās magnum exercitum puerōrum parvōrum, quī eum sequuntur. (Ans.) Utinam hōc cōnātū dēsistat. Ad eum nūntium mittāmus, quī eum dēcipiat, rēgem appellāns. (The newcomer) Lūdus optimus hic sit; sed timeō nē caedat nūntium Servius. Nam prīmō, omnia temerē crēdēns, laetētur, posteā autem maximē gravētur. (Ans.) Nūllum sit perīculum. Ego nūntius erō.

373.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. O great king,—for so you have been named by your school-mates,—would-that I might be chosen among your first soldiers! 2. (Servius) I have been chosen king? I am greatly delighted. 3. But how have you heard this? 4. (Ans.) It isn't true! You are prepared to believe anything[2] good[2] about yourself. 5. *You* would never be chosen king. 6. Why do you so eagerly attempt it? 7. Now are you still going to lead your army past the town, wearying everybody with the noise of horns, or shall you desist from your undertaking? 8. (Servius) I am awfully[3] mad.[3] 9. (The tease) What are you going to do (about it)? Are you going to kill me? 10. (Ans.) You deceived me at first. Now, however, I see. 11. But I shall do nothing.

12. Sextus happens to be[4] sick now, and is not going to fight. 13. (Ans.) Why *shouldn't* he be sick? He never exercises.

---

[1] Agrees in gender with its noun.   [3] = "am greatly annoyed."
[2] Say "all things good."   [4] = "by chance is."

LESSON LI

374. VOCABULARY

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think, plan.*

deinceps, Adv., *in succession, one after the other.*

forsitan, Adv., *perhaps.* Always with the Subjunctive of Possibility.

genus, generis, N. 3, *race, kin; kind, class.*

grātia, -ae, F. 1 (cf. grātus), *popularity, favor.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *exhort, urge.*

necesse, N., indecl., *necessity.* In predicate, = *necessary.*

opus, operis, N. 3, *work, task.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few, a few (only).*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 (per + suādeō, thoroughly advise), *persuade.*

ratiō, -ōnis, F. 3 (thinking; hence) *theory, science; manner.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *single, one at a time; one each.*

vix, Adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

voluntās, -ātis, F. 3, *will.*

375. READING MATTER

(Electioneering)

1. Nōs cōgitās cornuum strepitū terrēre? Arma eius generis[1] nōn perīculōsa sunt. Gladiīs, nōn cornibus, nōs pugnābimus.

2. (Two plotters. One says) Cūr nōn uterque[2] exercitus complūrēs ēligat ducēs, quī singulī deinceps imperent? (Ans.) Bene. Forsitan nōs ipsī ēligāmur. Paucī tam idōneī sunt.

3. Apud omnēs prīmō Mārcus magnā in grātiā erat. Nunc complūrēs eī dīligentissimē obstant, quia optant ut ipsī ēligantur.

4. (A boy comes up to electioneer) Optō ut Mārcus ēligātur.[3] Ego saltem laeter. Sed aliquis dīcat: "Is etiam nunc dē studiīs, nōn dē operibus bellī faciendīs cōgitat. Cūr eī faveāmus? Alium vel complūrēs ēligāmus." Id sī aliquis dīcet, vix quicquam contrā eum dīcāmus. (Ans.) Mārcus nōn dē studiīs sed dē bellō nunc cōgitat. Bellī studet ratiōnī. Proelia magnōrum ducum

---

[1] *Arms belonging to this class.* Possessive Genitive, but *suggests* the idea of *Description* (*arms of this kind*, SUCH *arms*).

[2] *Each* (of the two).   [3] Substantive Clause of Wish.

legit.[1] Nēmō praeter mē id vīdit, sed omnēs facile videant. Praeter Mārcum et Lūcium, nūllī sunt ā quibus exercitūs nostrī commodē dūcantur.[2] Necesse est ut iī ēligantur,[3] quamquam tua obstat voluntās. Tē hortor, Mārcō nē obstēs.

376.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. (Two friends of Mark discuss the situation.) This[4] is a great task. What is Mark planning? 2. Why should[5] he read (up) old battles? Let us urge him to desist. 3. (Ans.) He is studying the theory of war most-diligently, in order that he may conquer the enemy by brains.[6] 4. But let us not say this to anybody. 5. We are all friends to-one-another[7] now; but we are about-to fight. 6. In battles it is necessary to deceive an enemy.

7. (Second speaker) What do you think about the plan of choosing several leaders, who shall command one-at-a-time in succession? 8. (Ans.) At first that boy persuaded me, but now I do not approve. 9. Several leaders could[8] hardly lead well. 10. And few of us are fit.

11. I hope that Lucius may not choose us by chance among his soldiers. 12. I should hate[9] to be of his army. 13. (Ans.) That is not his will. 14. We are not of that kind. 15. We are not in great favor with[10] him.

---

[1] *Is reading (up)*.

[2] *By whom . . . . can.* What is the idea of the Subjunctive?

[3] Substantive Volitive Clause. Comes from a use with two separate sentences: "let these be chosen: it is necessary."

[4] Must of course agree with the predicate.

[5] "Should" here expresses Obligation or Propriety. How may you express this idea in Latin?

[6] Say "by judgment."

[7] Say "among ourselves."

[8] How may you express the "can" or "could" idea in Latin? And what do we call a Subjunctive with this idea?

[9] = "be annoyed."   [10] Use **apud.**

LESSON LII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

377.   THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

Conjugation	I	II	III		IV
			ACTIVE		
1st Sing.	amārem	monērem	tegerem	caperem	audīrem
2d "	amārēs	monērēs	tegerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
3d "	amāret	monēret	tegeret	caperet	audīret
1st Pl.	amārēmus	monērēmus	tegerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
2d "	amārētis	monērētis	tegerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
3d "	amārent	monērent	tegerent	caperent	audīrent
			PASSIVE		
1st Sing.	amārer	monērer	tegerer	caperer	audīrer
2d "	amārēris	monērēris	tegerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re
3d "	amārētur	monērētur	tegerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
1st Pl.	amārēmur	monērēmur	tegerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
2d "	amārēminī	monērēminī	tegerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
3d "	amārentur	monērentur	tegerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

a. Notice that you can form the First Person Singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive Active by adding -m to the Present Infinitive Active.

378. The Imperfect Subjunctive of **sum** is:

1st Sing.	essem	1st Pl.	essēmus
2d "	essēs	2d "	essētis
3d "	esset	3d "	essent

TENSE-MEANING OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

379. The Imperfect Subjunctive is a tense of the past, just as the Present Subjunctive is a tense of the present or future. In what follows, compare the examples corresponding in number. You will find that the only difference lies in the point of view.

a. The same Subjunctive tenses are used for acts seen with reference to a future point of view as for acts seen with reference to the present point of view, just as in English. (Thus we use *shall* both in "we are waiting until James *shall come*," and in "we shall wait until James *shall come*"). Hence in our examples we shall not need to give separate illustrations for the future point of view.

380. Past Point of View

1. **Quid facerem?** *What was I to do?* (then).
2. **Trīs ēlēgimus puerōs, quī lēgēs cōnstituerent,** *we chose three boys, who were to* (or *should*) *establish the rules.* (Past Purpose.)
3. **Timēbam nē complūrēs puerī vulnerārentur,** *I was afraid that a number of boys might be wounded.* (Past Fear.)
4. **Vōs monuī nē pīlīs ūterēminī,** *I advised you (that you should not use,=) not to use javelins.* (Past Will.)
5. **Exspectābāmus dum amīcus pervenīret,** *we were waiting until our friend should arrive.* (Past Anticipation.)
6. **Optābam ut Mārcus vinceret,** *I hoped that Mark might conquer.* (Past Wish.)
7. **Magnam vidērēs caedem,** *you might* (then) *see a great slaughter.* (Past Possibility.)

Present Point of View

1. **Quid faciam?** *What am I to do?* (now, or in the future).
2. **Trīs ēligimus puerōs, quī lēgēs cōnstituant,** *we are choosing three boys, who are to* (or *shall*) *establish the rules.* (Present Purpose.)
3. **Timeō nē complūrēs puerī vulnerentur,** *I am afraid that a number of boys may be wounded.* (Present Fear.)
4. **Vōs moneō nē pīlīs ūtāminī,** *I advise you (that you shall not use,=) not to use javelins.* (Present Will.)
5. **Exspectāmus dum amīcus perveniat,** *we are waiting until our friend shall arrive.* (Present Anticipation.)
6. **Optō ut Mārcus vincat,** *I hope that Mark may conquer.* (Present Wish.)
7. **Magnam videās caedem,** *you may* (now) *see a great slaughter.* (Present Possibility.)

a. The English auxiliaries show precisely the same shift to express the shift of the point of view. Thus (from the above):

Past Point of View	Present Point of View
was to	am to
should	shall
might	may

381. We have learned that there are two ways, in dependent clauses, of expressing the idea of futurity from the present point of view, namely the Future Indicative and the Anticipatory Subjunctive (according to the construction needed). On the other hand, there is only one possible way of expressing futurity to the *past* in a corresponding clause, namely the *Anticipatory Subjunctive.* The Indicative has no single form that can convey the idea.

382. When, then, you want to express any past-future idea by a single verb in a dependent clause, you must use the Anticipatory Subjunctive, even if, from the present point of view, the Future Indicative would be used. Thus:

Past Point of View	Present Point of View
Annus aderat cum ex scholā excēderēmus (Anticipatory Subjunctive), *the year was at hand in which we should leave the school.*	Annus adest cum ex scholā excēdēmus (Future Indicative), *the year is at hand in which we shall leave the school.*

a. Remember now that, in your reading, an Imperfect Subjunctive of Anticipation from a past point of view (i. e., a *Past-Future Subjunctive*) may correspond to *either* a Present Subjunctive *or* a Future Indicative, from the present point of view.

383.   **VOCABULARY**

aliquantus, -a, -um, *some.* Neut. as Substantive = *somewhat.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3 (con + sequor), *follow vigorously, overtake; gain.*

facile, Adv. (as before), *easily.* Compar. facilius. Superl. facillimē.[1]

facilis, -e (as before), *easy.* Compar. facilior, Superl. facillimus.[2]

difficilis, -e (dis-[3] + facilis), *difficult.* Compar. difficilior, Superl. difficillimus.

quidem, Adv., *indeed, at any rate.* Nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

---

[1] Follows **facilis** in its Comparison. See next note.

[2] A special way of comparing, confined to a few Adjectives in -ilis.

[3] Dis- means *asunder, apart,* and then *not* (dis-facilis, *not*-easy).

384.   READING MATTER

1. (Mark, to a supporter) Sī ēlēctus erō, aliquantō maiōrem nu‑
merum puerōrum hostibus dabō. Victōria facilis erit. (Ans.)
Utinam quidem vincās; et vincās forsitan. Sed magnopere
timeō nē vincāris. Nūlla saltem causa est cūr cōnātum tuum
difficiliōrem faciās quam necesse est. Id quod nunc cōnārī
cōgitās certē difficillimum[1] sit. Cūr maiōrem partem hostibus
dēs? (Mark) Quō maiōrem exercitus meus cōnsequātur glōriam.[2]

2. (Mark reports at home) Ego et Lūcius rēgēs ēlēctī sumus.
Lūciō aliquantō maiōrem numerum mīlitum dedī. (His father)
Cūr id fēcistī? Lūcius tē facillimē vincet. Saltem nūlla causa
erat cūr cōnātum tuum difficiliōrem quam necesse erat facerēs.[3]
(Mark) Id fēcī quō maiōrem exercitus meus cōnsequerētur[3]
glōriam. Victōria facillima erit. Lūcius nē cautus quidem est.
Cautum hostem vix ille vincat. Corporis modo[4] vīribus ille
pugnābit.

385.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Lucius, to a lieutenant) Does Mark not even *desire*
victory? 2. Why did he give me a much larger number of
soldiers than was necessary? 3. (Ans.) He did this in order
that he might gain somewhat greater glory. 4. He did not fear,
indeed, that you would conquer him. 5. But there is no reason
why you should not conquer. 6. Victory will be easy enough.
7. But it is very difficult (say "most difficult") to *wait*.

---

[1] *Very difficult.*

[2] What two words are emphasized by the order, and how?

[3] Why is the tense different from the corresponding one above?

[4] *Only*, emphasizing the preceding word.

LESSON LIII

THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

386. Examples:

> **Haec** multitūdō puerōrum, *this multitude of boys.*
> **Spatium pedum decem,** *a space of ten feet.*

a. The Genitive in such expressions has come down from an original Genitive of the Whole. Thus, in our first example, out of *boys in general* (the *Whole*), this multitude contains a *Part*. But the feeling naturally comes to be simply that of the Material of which the multitude is composed.[1] We may then lay down the rule that:

387. *Material or Composition may be expressed by a Genitive attached to a Noun.*

THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE

388. Examples:

> 1. **Homō eius generis,** *a man of this class.*
> 2. **Homō magnae virtūtis,** *a man of great courage.*
> 3. **Spatium decem pedum,** *a space of ten feet.*
> 4. **Mūrus decem pedum,** *a wall of ten feet.*

a. We have already had **eius generis** (in **375**), and have seen that, while it originally is a mere Possessive Genitive (thus, *a man belonging to this class*), it practically amounts to a *Description* (*a man of this class, a man of this kind*). Through this and similar phrases the Genitive comes to be thought of as *having the power of describing,* and it is then used in combinations in which it could not have been used originally, as in **homō magnae virtūtis** (example 2). This is *nothing but* descriptive.

---

[1] Cf. such expressions as "a cup of water," of which the original conception was, "a cup containing (not all the water in the world, but) *some water.*" The word "some" here marks distinctly the conception of a *part*,—which, in general, we have lost out of our English speech.

b. We have also had **spatium pedum decem** in **386,** under the head of the Genitive of Composition. The original meaning was *a space made up of feet, ten in number.* But this likewise suggests *Description according to size or measurement;* and the case is then used descriptively in combinations in which it could not have been used originally, as in **mūrus decem pedum** (example 4), which is *nothing but* descriptive.

c. You see, then, that a Genitive Noun with a modifier may be used to describe, expressing either the idea of the *Kind* (as in examples 1 and 2) or the idea of *Measure* (as in 3 and 4).

But there is another case which is used in a similar way, and we will look at this before laying down our formal rule.

THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE

389. Examples:

1. **Homō eōdem genere,** *a man from the same class.*
2. **Homō magnā virtūte,** *a man with great courage.*
3. **Homō magnīs oculīs,** *a man with big eyes.*
4. **Homō bonō in nōs animō,** *a man with kindly feeling toward us.*
5. **Magnō honōre apud nōs es,** *you are in great honor among us.*

a. Evidently these examples also describe, through the *from, with,* and *in* ideas.[1] If the three cases making up the Latin Ablative had remained distinct, we should have had an Ablative of Description, a Sociative of Description, and a Locative of Description.

b. In these examples, we find again the idea of Kind, as in the Genitive (cf. **magnae virtūtis** and **magnā virtūte**). But we also find the ideas of Physical Characteristics (in 3), of Mental State (in 4), and of Situation (in 5). The last two, though occurring frequently, are confined to a few phrases.

We may now make our general statement for the descriptive use of the two cases, as follows:

390. 1. *Kind or Measure may be expressed by the Genitive of a Noun accompanied by a Modifier.*

2. *Kind or Physical Characteristics may be expressed by the Ablative of a Noun accompanied by a Modifier; also, in a few phrases, Mental State or Situation.*

---

[1] This is shown by the occasional actual occurrence of **ex, cum,** and in.

391. In tracing the history of these constructions, we have seen two important principles in the growth of language:

1. We have seen a case-use *gain an entirely new force*, through the chance occurrence of that force in a particular set of phrases. This often happens. We may conveniently make ourselves a formula by which to refer hereafter to the process,—namely, **x, x + y, y** (where **x** is the original force, **x + y** the original one plus the new one, and **y** the new one, now used freely *by and for itself alone*, in phrases where it could not have started).[1]

2. We have also seen (both in **388** and in **389**) that two or three different constructions may suggest the *same* new idea, and so *all* contribute to the same new construction, which is thus like a river made up of two or three distinct streams.[2] Constructions thus arising may be called Constructions of *Several* Origins, or, more briefly, *Composite* Constructions.

392.   VOCABULARY

adgredior, adgredī, adgressus sum, 3 (ad + gradior, go at), *attack.*

contrōversia, -ae, F. 1, *controversy.*

dolus, -ī, M. 2, *trick, stratagem.*

iūdex, iūdicis, M. 3, *judge.*

iūdicium, -ī, N. 2, *judgment, opinion.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. iūdex), *judge.*

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (dis- + iūdicō, judge between), *decide (between).*

paulum, -ī, N. 2, *a little.*

post (same word as before, but used as Adv.), *afterward, later.*

393.   READING MATTER

1. (A friend, to Mark) Cōnsilium cēpistī[3] ut dolō et ratiōne, nōn vī, vincerēs. Ita saltem iūdicō; nam huius generis semper

---

[1] This rise of new meanings in a construction is precisely like the familiar rise of new meanings in *words*, as we see it in our own language. Very few are confined to their original meaning. Often, too, the original meaning entirely disappears. Thus the word "villain" meant at first merely a "peasant" (person attached to a *villa*), and then, through the prejudice of the upper classes, a "peasant, who is naturally a base person," and then merely a "base person."

[2] It is mainly *because of* such practical coincidences of forces that the three cases that make up the Latin Ablative came to be thought of as one.

[3] *Have taken up a plan, have formed a plan.*

fuistī. Iūdicium tuum nōn probō. Tū quidem magnae virtūtis
magnīque cōnsilī es. Sed amīcī Lūcī, quōs tū nōn ēligēs, magnīs
sunt corporum vīribus. (Mark) Omnia tibi paulō post dīcam.
Nunc autem puerīs suādeāmus ut iūdicēs ēligant, quī, cum in
proeliō contrōversiae orientur, inter pugnantīs diiūdicent.

2. Mārcus discipulīs persuāsit ut iūdicēs ēligerent, quī, cum
contrōversiae orīrentur, inter pugnantīs diiūdicārent.

394.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Lucius, to a friend) What is Mark planning? 2. Will he,
in the battle, yield to the larger number? 3. He does not seem
to me to be of that kind. 4. He is a boy of great courage, and
with great strength of body. 5. (Ans.) He has formed a plan,
—so I judge at any rate,—to conquer us by theory. 6. We shall
see a little later.

7. (Lucius) Why did he persuade us to elect judges to decide
between the fighters? 8. Did he fear that, when the-battle-
should-take-place, controversies would arise? 9. None (= no
controversies) will arise. This is my judgment. 10. We shall
attack him without stratagem, and easily conquer him by force.

VIEW FROM PROBABLE SITE OF HORACE'S FARM
Sabine Mountains, twelve miles above Tivoli

LESSON LIV

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

395. In the Fifth and last Declension, the Stem ends in -ē-.

diēs, *day*, M. and F.   rēs, *thing*, F.

				Endings
Stem		diē-	rē-	*Endings*
Sing.	*Nom.*	diēs	rēs	-ēs
	Gen.	diēī	reī	-ēī or -eī
	Dat.	diēī	reī	-ēī or -eī
	Acc.	diem	rem	-em
	Voc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
	Abl.	diē	rē	-ē
Pl.	*Nom.*	diēs	rēs	-ēs
	Gen.	diērum	rērum	-ērum
	Dat.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
	Acc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
	Voc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
	Abl.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

a. Notice that an e-sound appears in every ending.

b. In the Genitive and Dative Singular we find long e (ē) after a vowel, but short e after a consonant. Thus diēī, but reī.

396. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except **diēs,** *day,* and **merīdiēs,** *midday.* And **diēs** is usually Feminine when meaning an appointed time, or time in general.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN quis

397. **Quis,** the vaguest of the Indefinite Pronouns, means *any one, some one,* and is used chiefly with **sī, nisi, nē,** and with Interrogative or Relative words. It always stands *after* one or more words of its clause.

a. This indefinite quis is declined like the second part of **ali-quis.** See **207,** and *a.* Thus **ali-quis, ali-qua, ali-quod,** etc., *any,* and **nē quis, nē qua, nē quod,** etc., *lest any* . . .

ABLATIVE OF THE TIME AT OR WITHIN WHICH

398. Specimen Sentences:

Gāius, Mārcī amīcus, tertiō diē perveniet, *Gaius, Mark's friend, will arrive* (will come through) *on the third day.*

Tribus diēbus perveniet, *he will arrive in (within) three days.*

a. In the first example the Ablative **tertiō diē** evidently expresses the time *at which* Gaius will arrive, while in the second the Ablative **tribus diēbus** expresses the time *within which* he will arrive.

We may accordingly lay down the rule that:

399. *The Time At or Within Which anything is or is done may be expressed by the Ablative.*

a. But once in a while prepositions are used. These are **in,** *at* or *in,* and **cum,** *with.* We may compare our own varying usage. Thus:

"And in the dawn he bade them all farewell" ("Time when" expressed through the *Locative* idea).

"And with the dawn he bade them all farewell" ("Time when" expressed through the *Sociative* idea).

b. This occasional use of the Prepositions **in** and **cum** shows us that the Latin Ablative of Time is of *double* origin, like a river made by two streams that have flowed together,—though it is probable that the Locative stream was larger than the Sociative, just as, in the corresponding English expressions of time, "in" or "at" is commoner than "with."

THE IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS

400. Specimen Sentences:

Diū pugnātum est, (it was fought for a long time, =) *there was a long battle.*

Mihi nocētur, (it is being injured to me, =) *I am being injured.*

a. These verbs, as you see, have no subject, and represent the mere action as such. They are accordingly called *Impersonal.* It is evident that *any* verb might be used in this way. Notice, too, that:

b. The Dative (**mihi**) of the Active is retained.

We may then state the Roman usage as follows:

401. *Any Verb may be used in the Third Singular Passive without a Subject, and is then called Impersonal.*

402. *Verbs governing a Dative in the Active are used ONLY Impersonally in the Passive. The Dative remains.*

403.   VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F. 5, *sharp edge; line of battle.*

adsuēfaciō,-facere,-fēcī,-factum, 3, *accustom.*

circum, *around, around in.* Prep., taking Acc., or Adv.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (circum + veniō, come around), *surround.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *communicate.*

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3 (con- + vertō, turn thoroughly), *turn about.*

diēs, diēī, M. and F. 5, *day.*

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, 3, *divide.*

extendō, extendere, extendī, extentum and extēnsum, 3 (ex + tendō), *stretch out, extend.*

gradus, -ūs, M. 4, *step.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, 3, *draw up.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M. 3, *order, rank.*

pār, pār, Gen. paris, *equal, even.*

perītus, -a, -um, *having experience of, experienced in.* Takes Objective Genitive.

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3 (prō + gradior), *go forward, advance.*

quis (quī), Indefinite Pronoun, *any.* (See **397,** *a*).

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum, 3 (re + capiō), *take back.* Mē recipiō, *I return, I retreat.*

rēs, reī, F. 5, *thing, affair, matter.* Rēs mīlitāris, *warfare.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

signum, -ī, N. 2, *sign, signal; standard.* Convertō signa, *turn the standards, wheel about.*

404.   READING MATTER

(The preparations) Duo exercitūs diem cōnstituērunt, quā diē[1] in aciē dēcertārent. Hic diēs dictus est ex eō diē septimus. Interim Mārcus suōs reī mīlitārī adsuēfaciēbat,[2] ut, cum pugnā-

---

[1] Latin often repeats the Antecedent in the Relative Clause.

[2] *Was accustoming=was trying to accustom.* In this way the Imperfect gets the power of expressing *Attempted* Action.

rētur,[1] quaecumque necesse essent, haec statim facerent. Cotī-
diē aciem īnstruēbat,[2] īnstrūctam[3] circum silvās dūcēbat. Tum
exercitum in duōs dīvidēbat exercitūs quī inter sē[4] pugnārent.
Mīlitēs alterīus[5] exercitūs docēbat pugnantīs[6] ōrdinēs servāre,
paribus gradibus[7] prōgredī, aut fugā simulātā sē recipere, tum
signīs conversīs cornibusque extentīs alterum exercitum circum-
venīre, atque omnibus ex partibus eum adgredī. (Ques.) Nōnne
Lūcium aliquis dē eius cōnsiliīs docēbit? (Ans.) Prohibitum est
nē quis cōnsilia ducis suī cum alterō duce commūnicāret.

2. Timeō nē, cum contrōversiae orientur, difficile sit inter
pugnantīs diiūdicāre. (Ans.) Id iūdicēs, reī mīlitāris perītī,
facile facient. (First speaker) Iūdicēs nōn omnia vident.

405. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Mark's army was now studying military theory. 2. Every-
day he would-divide[8] his (men) into two parties. 3. He would-
draw-up each party in line-of-battle. 4. He was-trying-to-teach[9]
the soldiers to advance side-by-side,[10] or to retreat, keeping their
ranks. 5. One party would-pretend flight, the other would-pur-
sue; then, a little later, the former would-wheel-about and, with
its wings extended, would-surround the other and attack it.

6. By (say "on") the seventh day, when the-battle-will-be-
fought,[11] Mark's soldiers will have been accustomed to all these
matters, and will do at once whatever shall be necessary.

7. Are Lucius' soldiers experienced in these matters?
8. (Ans.) No one knows. 9. It has been forbidden that any-
one shall communicate the plans of his army to (Latin *with*)
the other army.

---

[1] What kind of Subjunctive? Of what kind is the next?
[2] *Every day was drawing up=every day would draw up*. The Imperfect,
as you see, comes to have the power of expressing *Habitual* Action.
[3] *Drawn up= when drawn up, after drawing it up.*
[4] *=with each other.*
[5] *Of one army* (of the two).
[6] With what agreeing? Be careful.
[7] *With equal steps,=side by side.*
[8] Read footnote 2 again.
[9] Read footnote 2, p. 158, again.
[10] Say "with equal steps."
[11] Use Impersonal Verb.

LESSON LV

DECLENSION OF domus, F., *house* or *home*

406. Domus is declined in full according to the Fourth Declension, but has also a number of forms of the *Second Declension.* Generally speaking, these Second Declension forms are more common than the others.

Sing. Nom.	domus	
Gen.	domūs *or* domī	
Dat.	domuī *or* domō	
Acc.	domum	
Voc.	domus	
Abl.	domū *or* domō	

Pl. Nom.	domūs	
Gen.	domuum *or* domōrum	
Dat.	domibus	
Acc.	domūs *or* domōs	
Voc.	domūs	
Abl.	domibus	

THE ORDINARY EXPRESSION OF PLACE

407. As we have repeatedly seen in our reading,

The idea of Place is regularly expressed as follows:

1. *Place From Which by the Separative Ablative with* **ab,** dē, *or* **ex.**
2. *Place To Which by the Accusative with* **ad** *or* **in.**
3. *Place In Which by the Locative Ablative with* **in.**

Thus:

> **Ab urbe venit,** *he comes from the city.*
> **Ad urbem venit,** *he comes to the city.*
> **In urbe est,** *he is in the city.*

408. But a few classes of words were in such common use in the expression of these ideas that the preposition never came into regular use with them (just as, in English, we say "go home," never "go to home"). These are: Names of Towns and Small Islands, the words for *home* and *the country* (**domus** and **rūs**), and a few others. With these words the Place From Which is expressed by the bare Ablative, the Place To Which by the bare Accusative, and the Place In Which by the bare Locative.—Now in general the Locative case is mixed with the Ablative. But in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions the Locative has a separate case-form, *which happens to end just like the Genitive.* Hence the following usage:

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH domus AND rūs

409. Special Constructions of the Place From Which, To Which, or In Which.

1. *To express the Place From Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition.*

> **Rōmā**[1] **profectus est,** *he has set out from Rome.*
> **Capreīs**[2] **profectus est,** *he has set out from Capri.*

a. Similarly **domō,** *from home,* **rūre,** *from the country.*

> **Domō vēnit,** *he has come from home.*
> **Rūre vēnit,** *he has come from the country.*

2. *To express the Place To Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative without a Preposition.*

> **Rōmam revertētur,** *he will return to Rome.*
> **Capreās revertētur,** *he will return to Capri.*

a. Similarly **domum,** *home,* and **rūs,** *to the country.*

> **Domum revertētur,** *he will return home.*
> **Rūs revertētur,** *he will return to the country.*

3. *To express the Place In Which, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative,—which in the Singular Number of the First or Second Declension is identical with the Genitive, and elsewhere with the Ablative.*

> **Amīcus meus Rōmae est,** *my friend is in Rome.*
> **Amīcus meus Corfīnī**[3] **est,** *my friend is in Corfinium.*
> **Amīcus meus Tībure**[4] **est,** *my friend is in Tivoli.*
> **Amīcus meus Capreīs est,** *my friend is in Capri.*

a. Similarly **domī,** *at home,* and **rūrī** or **rūre,** *in the country.*

> **Amīcus meus domī est,** *my friend is at home.*
> **Amīcus meus rūrī est,** *my friend is in the country.*

---

[1] From Nominative **Rōma.**
[2] From Nominative **Capreae** (Pl.).
[3] From Nominative **Corfīnium.**
[4] From Nominative **Tibur.**

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

410. *With a number of words in very common use, the Place In Which (literal or figurative) may be expressed by the Ablative either with or without* **in.**

a. So for example with **locō, parte, regiōne, cornū** (*wing*), and with Adjectives meaning *middle* or *all.* Thus:

> eō locō or in eō locō, *in that place.*
> eā regiōne or in eā regiōne, *in that region.*
> tōtā Italiā or tōtā in Italiā, *in all Italy, throughout Italy.*

ABLATIVE OF THE POINT OF VIEW FROM WHICH

411. *The Romans often used the Ablative with* **ab** or **ex** *to express the Point of View From Which something is looked at* (where our conception is that of the Place Where).

Hostēs nōn ā fronte adgrediēmur, *we shall not attack the enemy on the front* (in Latin, *from* the front).

Prope ā meā domō habitat, *he lives near my house* (near, *reckoned from* my house).

a. Among the commonest examples are **ā fronte,** *on the front,* **ā tergō,** *on the rear,* **ā latere,** *on the side,* **ab** or **ex utrāque parte,** *on either side,* **omnibus ex partibus,** *on all sides,* etc.

412.   **VOCABULARY**

aestās, -ātis, F. 3, *summer.*

agmen, agminis, N. 3 (cf. **agō,** drive, lead), *army* (on a march).

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3, *drive, lead; carry on, do; pass, spend* (of time).

Capreae, -ārum, F. 1, *Capri.*

Corfīnium, -ī, N. 2, *Corfinium.*

deinde, Adv. *afterward, next; in the second place.*

domus, -ūs and -ī, F. 4 and 2, *house, home.*

hiems, hiemis, F. 3, *storm; winter.*

impetus, -ūs, M. 4 (cf. **in** and **petō**), *attack.*

Italia, -ae, F. 1, *Italy.*

Pompeī (pronounce Pompeī'-yī), **-ōrum,** M. 2, *Pompeii.*

prīmum, Adv. (the first thing), *first, in the first place.*

Rōma, -ae, F. 1, *Rome.*

simul, *simultaneously, at the same time, together.*

tardē, Adv., *slowly, late.*

tergum, -ī, *back, rear* (of an army).

Tībur, Tīburis, N. 3, *Tivoli.*

READING MATTER

413. 1. Quā (in)[1] regiōne Ītaliae, Mārce, iste amīcus tuus habitat? (Ans.) Hieme Rōmae habitat, aestāte aut Tībure aut Pompeīs aut Capreīs. Etiam rūrī prope ā Rōmā vīllam parvam habet, et ibi saepe, domō Rōmā[2] profectus, reliquam partem diēī agit. (Ques.) Nuncne domī est, aut iam hīc Corfīnī? (Ans.) Domō, crēdō, profectus est, sed Corfīnium nōndum pervēnit. Tardē certē venit.

2. Quid Mārcus hīs diēbus faciēbat? (Ans.) Suōs reī mīlitārī adsuēfaciēbat; nam magnā ille est dīligentiā. Nōnnumquam agmen, aut paribus gradibus, aut nūllīs ōrdinibus, circum silvās agēbat, ut corpora suōrum labōre cōnfirmārentur. Nōnnumquam exercitum in duās dīvidēbat partēs, quārum altera, cornibus extentīs, alteram circumveniēbat, in eamque simul ā fronte, ab latere, ā tergō impetum faciēbat.

MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

414. 1. What was Lucius doing in these days? 2. (Ans.) Sometimes he would lead his army around-in the woods, sometimes he would draw up a line-of-battle. 3. (Ques.) Did he teach his men to retreat, then to wheel-about and make an attack simultaneously on the front, on the side, and on the rear? 4. (Ans.) No, Lucius did none[3] of these things. He is not (a boy) of great diligence of mind. 5. He did not fear that he would be beaten. 6. And so he will effect nothing.

7. In what part of Italy do you live? 8. (Ans.) In winter I live in Pompeii or Rome, the summer I pass in Corfinium among the mountains. 9. I love to be in the country, and so I am[4] never slow[4] to set-out[4] from home. Neither am I ever slow to return home; for I enjoy life at home also.

---

[1] Parentheses mean that the preposition may be used or not, at will.

[2] *From home from Rome* (English, less exactly, *from his home in Rome*).

[3] Use **nihil** (*nothing*).

[4] Say "I never set out slowly."

LESSON LVI

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

415. The Perfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-erim,** etc., to the Perfect Stem, and the Passive by the Perfect Passive Participle plus **sim,** etc. When, then, you have learned it for one verb, you can form it for any other from the last two Principal Parts.

ACTIVE

Conjugation	I	II	III	
1st Sing.	amāverim	monuerim	tēxerim	
2d "	amāverīs	monuerīs	tēxerīs	
3d "	amāverit	monuerit	tēxerit	Similarly cēperim, etc.
1st Pl.	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	tēxerīmus	audīverim, etc.
2d "	amāverītis	monuerītis	tēxerītis	
3d "	amāverint	monuerint	tēxerint	

PASSIVE

	I		II		III		
1st Sing.	amātus sim		monitus sim		tēctus sim		Similarly
2d "	"	sīs	"	sīs	"	sīs	captus sim, etc.
3d "	"	sit	"	sit	"	sit	audītus sim, etc.
1st Pl.	amātī sīmus		monitī sīmus		tēctī sīmus		
2d "	"	sītis	"	sītis	"	sītis	
3d "	"	sint	"	sint	"	sint	

a. Notice that, in the Active, every ending contains an i-sound.

b. Notice also that (except in the First Person Singular) the Perfect Subjunctive is exactly like the Future Perfect Indicative *in spelling;* but the -i- of the *Subjunctive* is long, except in the places of regular shortening (**100,** 2).

416. The Perfect Subjunctive of **sum** is:

1st Sing.	fuerim		*1st Pl.*	fuerīmus	
2d "	fuerīs		*2d* "	fuerītis	
3d "	fuerit		*3d* "	fuerint	

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS (i. e., Verbs *Half*-Deponent)

417. Semi-Deponents are verbs of which the *Perfect* System is Passive in form but Active in meaning.   Thus:

audeō	audēre	ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō	gaudēre	gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, be glad of*
soleō	solēre	solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō	fīdere	fīsus sum, *trust*

THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF FACT

(Existing in Dependent Clauses only)

418. Specimen Sentences:

1. **Mārcus tālis est puer quī labōrāre amet,** *Mark is such a boy that loves to work* (in English, *such a boy that he loves,* or simply *a boy that loves*).

2. **Ita rūs amō, ut maximam partem aestātis ibi semper agam,** *I so love the country that I always spend most of the summer there.*

3. **Numquam in nostrā scholā tam male est, quīn aliquis puerōs parvōs dēfendat,** *it is never so bad in our school that some one does not defend the little boys* (**quīn**=*that . . . . not*).

4. **Effēcimus ut in hāc scholā parvī puerī ā magnīs nōn lacessantur,** *we have brought-it-about that in this school the little boys are not worried by the big ones.*

Study of the Above Sentences

419. In all four examples, notice the following points of likeness:

1. What is expressed by the Subjunctive is a *fact.* If the clauses were independent, the *Indicative* would be used in all (**Mārcus . . . amat, ego . . . agō,** etc.).   Hence we may conveniently say that these Subjunctives are not *true* Subjunctives, but belong to the *province of Fact. They are usually best translated by the English Indicative.*

2. The dependent clauses express something that *follows from the nature of something else,* given in the main sentence (*such that he,* etc., *loves so much that he,* etc.).   Such clauses are accordingly called *Consecutive* (from **cōnsequor,** *follow*).

420. The *differences* are as follows:

1. The first clause *describes* the antecedent (Mark is *such a boy that . . .*). Hence we may call it a *Descriptive Clause.*

2. The second and third clauses express *result* (loves *so much that . . .* , never is *so bad that . . .*). Hence we should call them *Clauses of Result.*

3. The last clause (**ut nōn lacessantur**) expresses the *Object* of **effēcimus,** just as an Accusative Noun would (it is *the thing which* we have brought about). Hence we should call it a *Substantive Clause of Fact.*

We may combine these statements in a rule:

421. *In Dependent Clauses of Consecutive nature or origin, the Subjunctive is used to express Facts* (*negative* **nōn**), *as follows:*

1. In Descriptive Clauses of Fact, with a Relative Pronoun.
2. In Result Clauses of Fact, with **ut, ut nōn,** or **quīn.**
3. In Substantive Clauses of Fact, with **ut** or **ut nōn,** after verbs *of Bringing About* or *Existence.*[1]

Is, ille, ETC., WITH DESCRIPTIVE MEANING (= **tālis**)

422. Thus far, we have seen **is, ille, hic,** and **iste** used only as Determinative Pronouns, telling *who* is meant, etc.

But they are also freely used with *Descriptive* force, telling *what kind of person is meant,*—i. e., with the same meaning as **tālis,** *such.* Thus:

Mārcus is est quī labōrāre amet, *Mark is one that loves to work,* or *Mark is a boy that loves to work.*

a. Note that English "a . . . who" is always descriptive.

b. One may also use a Descriptive Clause *without* any introductory word at all, after expressions of existence or non-existence. Thus:

Sunt quī hoc crēdant, *there are* (*people*) *who believe this.*

c. Summary. *The Descriptive Subjunctive Clause is used after descriptive antecedents not complete in themselves, and after general expressions of existence or non-existence* (since these demand a descriptive idea to fill them out).

---

[1] An extension from the idea of Effecting. "It has been brought about that" suggests "it is now the case that."

423. VOCABULARY

(For **audeō, gaudeō, soleō, fīdō,** see **417**).

commūnis, -e, *common.*

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, 3 (con-
  + fīdō), *trust (to), confide (in).*

dīversus, -a, -um, *different.*

Gāius, -ī, M. 2, *a name.*

intervāllum, -ī, N. 2, *interval.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, *talk,
  converse.*

modus, -ī, M. 2, *measure; method,
  way, manner, fashion; kind.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2
  (prō + videō), *foresee, provide.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quae-
  sītum, 3, *inquire, ask, seek.*

tālis, -e, *such.*

ūnā, Adv., *in unison, together.*

424. READING MATTER

(Be ready to explain every Subjunctive in this Lesson. If anywhere
you don't see at once, run down the list in the table in **368**. If your
example does not belong to any of these, it must be some kind of Consecu-
tive Clause of Fact. In that case, see, finally, under *which* of our three
kinds in **421** it comes.)

1. (Gāius, amīcus Mārcī, Corfīnium pervenit, domūque Mārcī
inventā ex servō ita quaerit) Mārcusne domī est? Ego Gāius
sum. (Servus respondet) Nunc abest, sed domum mox revertētur.
Dīxit ut sē hīc exspectārēs. Nōn longum erit intervāllum.

2. (Mārcus revertitur. Duo amīcī inter sē loquuntur. Mār-
cus) Ubi hunc annum ēgistī? (Gāius) Dīversīs (in) locīs; sed
semper fuī in Italiā. Hiemem ēgī Rōmae. Rōmā nunc veniō;
sed hāc aestāte fuī etiam Capreīs, Pompeīs, Tībure. Nunc
gaudeō ūnā tēcum[1] Corfīnī esse, et dē commūnibus studiīs
nostrīs loquī.

3. (Mārcus ea quae fēcit Gāiō dīcit. Is ita respondet) Sī
quis est tālis quī perīcula amet, tū certē is es. Sī quis est quī
semper omnia ausus sit, tū is es. Sed nēmō est quī sē num-
quam dēcipiat. In hāc rē, putō, vincēris. Ipse effēcistī ut
hostis multitūdine[2] mīlitum multō validior sit. Iūdicium tuum
nōn laudō.

---

[1] With Personal, Rel., and Interrog. Pronouns, **cum,** *with,* is enclitic.

[2] "Much stronger by means of" *suggests* the idea "much stronger *in,*"
. ie., the idea of *the Respect in Which* the enemy is stronger ($x + y$).

LESSON LVII

DETERMINATIVE CLAUSES

425. Specimen Sentence (from last Reading Matter):

Mārcus ea quae fēcit Gāiō dīcit, *Mark tells Gaius the things which he has done.*

a. In this sentence, **ea** is evidently Determinative. It means "the things." But it isn't, by itself, determinative *enough*. We should still have to ask, "*what* things do you mean?" To this, the answer is given by the fact stated in the Relative Clause, "(the things) *which he has done*." The clause here *pieces out* an incomplete Determinative word. We should accordingly name it a *Determinative Clause*.

Such clauses are extremely common. You have repeatedly read them, and have written Latin examples of them yourself.

b. The idea is in strong contrast with that of the *Descriptive* Clause. The Determinative Clause, with its Antecedent word (e. g., **is**), is like a big Determinative Pronoun (*pointing* at something). The Descriptive Clause, with its Antecedent word, is like a big Adjective (*describing* something).

c. Of course *anything* may be determined, by the mention of some fact that fixes it,—thus a person, a thing, a time, as in the following:

(From **204**) **Sōlus erat cum iīs puerīs quī eum lacessēbant,** *he was alone with the boys who were worrying him.* Determinative **quī**-Clause (fixing *the boys* meant).

(From the same passage) **Tum cum tū Sextum audiēbās, nōs nōn aderāmus,** *at the time when you heard Sextus, we were not present.* Determinative **cum**-Clause (fixing the *time* meant).

We may then lay down our rule as follows:

426. *An Indicative Clause, with an appropriate Relative or Conjunction, may be used to determine an antecedent of any kind* (a person, a thing, a time, etc., etc.),

THE DATIVE OF TENDENCY, PURPOSE, OR RESULT[1]

427. Specimen Sentences:

Cui hoc bellum bonō erit? *to whom will this war be* (for) *a good thing* (i. e., *whom will it tend to benefit*)?

Hī mīlitēs nōbīs auxiliō venient, *these soldiers will come for an aid to us* (i. e., *to aid us*).

Hoc bellum puerōrum magnae mihi cūrae est, *this war of the boys is* (for) *a great anxiety to me*.

a. In each of these sentences, besides a Dative of the Person Concerned (**cui, nōbīs, mihi; 260**), there is another Dative (**bonō, auxiliō, cūrae**) with the idea of *Direction* ("to" or "for"). It expresses that *toward which* something tends (Tendency; thus **bonō**); or something which it is meant to reach (Purpose; thus **auxiliō**); or something which it *does* reach (Result; thus **cūrae**).

b. The nouns so used are all Abstract,[2] and Singular.

We may then lay down the rule that:

428. *The Dative of many Abstract Nouns may be used to express Tendency, Purpose, or Result.*

DATIVE OF THE CONCRETE OBJECT FOR WHICH

429. Specimen Sentences:

Locum castrīs cēpistis? *have you taken a place for a camp?*

Diem proeliō cōnstituistis? *have you appointed a day for the battle?*

a. Here the Dative is again one of Figurative Direction, expressing that for which something is intended. But the *nouns* used are *Concrete.*[3] The verbs with which they are employed express *Choosing* or *Appointing.* Hence we may lay down the rule that:

430. *A Dative of the Concrete Object For Which something is intended may be used with phrases containing verbs of Choosing or Appointing.*

---

[1] Also called the *Predicate Dative* (it *is* regularly predicative).—The name "Two Datives" is also given to the *combination* (see *a*).

[2] Denoting things that cannot be perceived by the senses, as "care."

[3] Denoting things that can be perceived by the senses, as "camp."

DATIVE AND ABLATIVE WITH fīdō AND cōnfīdō

431. Specimen Sentences:

> **Tibi cōnfīdō,** *I trust (to) you.*
> **Multitūdinī suae cōnfīdunt,** *they trust (to) their numbers.*
> **Multitūdine suā cōnfīdunt,** *they trust in their numbers.*

As you see from these sentences,

432. Fīdō *and* **cōnfīdō,** *trust, may take the Ablative. But they may also take the Dative* (so regularly of a person).[1]

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT, DURATION, OR DEGREE

433. Specimen Sentences:

> **Mūrus multōs pedēs longus est,** *the wall is many feet long.*
> **Duās hōrās cotīdiē ambulō,** *I walk two hours every day.*
> **Multum cotīdiē ambulō,** *I walk much (a good deal) every day.*

a. As you see, the Accusatives in these examples all indicate *Extent,*—of space, of time, or of the amount of activity. Hence, distinguishing by appropriate names, we may say that:

434. *Extent of Space, Duration of Time, and Degree are expressed by the Accusative.*[2]

435.   **READING MATTER**

(Continue to study the Subjunctives with especial care.)

(Mārcus respondet) Mihi nōn multum cōnfīdis. Sed nōn efficis ut verear.[3] Mē nōn nōvistī. Sunt quī perīcula semper timeant. Ego eius modī[4] nōn sum. Sunt quī omnia audeant. Neque eius sum generis. Is[5] sum quī, cōnsiliō fīdēns, semper solitus

---

[1] They take the *Dative* as verbs of Attitude (cf. English "trust to"). The *Ablative* construction is Locative (cf. English "trust in").

[2] This Accusative is like the one with **per.** It expressed originally the idea of continuous contact.

[3] "You do not make that I fear." In English, *you do not make me fear.* What kind of clause?

[4] *Of this fashion, of this kind.*

[5] Is is here *descriptive,* = **tālis.** Translate by *I am one who.*

sim omnīs cāsūs prōvidēre. Quod[1] nunc fēcī. Nam prīmum
mīlitēs optimī generis ēlēgī, et quī mihi cōnfīderent. Deinde
hōs reī mīlitārī adsuēfēcī, ita ut omnia facere didicerint. Inter
alia didicērunt fugam prīmō simulāre, tum signa convertere,
inque hostēs omnibus ex partibus simul impetum facere. Cō-
gitō Lūcium hōc modō[2] dēcipere. Nam iī quōs ille ēlēgit,[3] mul-
titūdine suā cōnfīsī, temerē nostrōs cōnsequentur, neque ūllum
timēbunt cāsum. (Gāius) Nōnne Lūcius quoque hōc intervāllō
aliquot diērum ūtitur? (Mārcus) Forsitan is agmen suum ali-
quot hōrās per silvās ēgerit, et mīlitēs eius inter sē gladiīs et
scūtīs pugnāverint; sed certē nihil aliud (=*else*) ēgērunt.

436.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Let us talk together (= between ourselves). You have
inquired about my plans. 2. In-the-first-place, Lucius is not
of-a-kind[4] to have foreseen that[5] which I am planning. 3. There
are boys who work with brains. 4. He is not of this class. 5.
He is one[6] who has been accustomed to conquer; and so he trusts
himself. 6. He has always profited-by the carefulness[7] of his
friends in all things, so that he has never been careful[7] himself.

7. In-the-second-place, by[8] giving him a much larger army, I
have made him not fear[9] any danger. 8. He trusts much in his
strength. (Gaius) I shall rejoice if you conquer him by this
method.

---

[1] *And this.* **Quod fēcī** is not dependent, but goes right on. (Call it a
Forward-Moving Relative Clause or Sentence).

[2] *By this method.* Means suggesting a *new* force, that of *Way* or *Manner*
($x+y$). We shall see this force in its full and separate power later. It starts
up from several sources.

[3] Is this clause Determinative or Descriptive?

[4] Say "such who has foreseen," using **tālis** or **is** (it makes no difference
which).

[5] Use **is** (Neut. Pl.). Is it Determinative or Descriptive here?

[6] Use **is**. Is it Determinative or Descriptive here?

[7] Use **dīligentia** and **dīligēns** for "carefulness" and "careful."

[8] Use the Ablative Absolute (*a much larger army having been given him*).

[9] Say "have made that he does not fear."

LESSON LVIII

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

437. The Past Perfect Subjunctive is formed in the Active by adding -issem, etc., to the Perfect Stem, and in the Passive by combining the Perfect Passive Participle with **essem,** etc. When, then, you have learned it for one verb, you can form it for any other from the last two Principal Parts.

ACTIVE

Conjugation	I	II	III IV
1st Sing.	amāvissem	monuissem	Similarly
2d "	amāvissēs	monuissēs	
3d "	amāvisset	monuisset	tēxissem, etc.
			cēpissem, etc.
1st Pl.	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	audīvissem, etc.
2d "	amāvissētis	monuissētis	
3d "	amāvissent	monuissent	

PASSIVE

1st Sing.	amātus essem	monitus essem	Similarly
2d "	" essēs	" essēs	
3d "	" esset	" esset	tēctus essem, etc.
1st Pl.	amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	captus essem, etc.
2d "	" essētis	" essētis	audītus essem, etc.
3d "	" essent	" essent	

438. The Past Perfect Subjunctive of the Irregular Verb **sum** is:

1st Sing. fuissem	*1st Pl.* fuissēmus
2d " fuissēs	*2d* " fuissētis
3d " fuisset	*3d* " fuissent

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON

439. Specimen Sentences:

> **Vulnere aeger sum,** *I am ill from* (or *with*) *a wound.*
> **Glōriā tuā gaudeō,** *I rejoice in your glory.*

a. In both these sentences the Ablative expresses *Cause* or *Reason* (English *from, with, in, on account of, because of*). No preposition appears.

Our rule will then be:

440. *Cause or Reason may be expressed by the Ablative.*[1]

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

441. Specimen Sentences:

Lūcius multitūdine suōrum valet, *Lucius is strong in the number of his soldiers.*

Mārcus et Lūcius virtūte parēs sunt: ingeniō nōn sunt parēs, *Mark and Lucius are equal in courage: in intellect they are not equal.*

a. In these sentences the Ablative answers the question, *In what respect ? Wherein ?*

We may then lay down the rule that:

442. *The Respect in Which the meaning of a Verb or Adjective is to be taken may be expressed by the Ablative.*[2]

---

[1] The construction is of composite origin, the idea having been expressed originally by three entirely distinct cases, the Ablative, the Sociative, and the Locative. Our English ways of expressing the idea correspond (thus " desperate from his trouble," " desperate with his trouble," " desperate in his trouble ") ; only, in English the use of the differing *Prepositions* has kept the three constructions from coming to be thought of as one.

[2] The construction is of composite origin, having come from three distinct sources, the true Ablative of the Point of View from Which (thus " equal *from the Point of View* of courage "), the Sociative (thus " strong *with* the number of his soldiers," " *by means of* the number of his soldiers "), and the Locative (thus " equal *in* courage "). We have the same ways of expressing the idea in English, but the use of differing *Prepositions* keeps them from becoming one in our thought.

THE SUBSTANTIVE quod-CLAUSE OF FACT

443. Specimen Sentences:

Id mihi placet, quod puerī pīlīs nōn ūtuntur, *this pleases me,* (namely) *that the boys do not use javelins.*

Mihi placet quod puerī pīlīs nōn ūtuntur, *it pleases me that the boys do not use javelins.*

Quod puerī pīlīs nōn ūtuntur laudō, *I praise* (the fact) *that the boys do not use javelins.*

a. In the first sentence the **quod**-Clause explains **id**, standing in a sort of Apposition to it. In the second and third sentences, the use is the same, except that the clause stands *by itself*, as the Subject or Object of the verb.

b. In all three examples the **quod**-Clause is like a Noun or Pronoun,—i. e., it is *Substantive.* And, in all, it states a *fact.*

We may then lay down the rule that:

444. *A Substantive* **quod**-*Clause of Fact (Indicative)* *may be used in explanation of some antecedent word; or it may itself form the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

a. **Quod-Clause of Respect.** The Substantive **quod**-Clause may be used in loose connection with the main sentence, meaning *with respect to the fact that, as to the fact that, as for* . . . . Thus:

Quod tū victōriam exspectās, vidēbimus cum pugnābimus, *as for the fact that you expect victory* (= *as for your expecting victory*), *we shall see when we fight.*

445.   VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, *equal; fair; favorable.*

aeque, Adv., *equally.*

auctōritās, -ātis, F. 3, *authority.*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (**con-** + **cēdō,** yield thoroughly), *yield, grant, concede.*

cōpia, -ae, F. 1, *abundance, supply.* In Pl., *resources;* (military) *forces.*

disciplīna, -ae, F. 1, *discipline.*

imperium, -ī, N. 2, *command, empire.*

libenter, Adv., *willingly.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, *move.*

opus (same word as before), with **est** and Abl. = *there is need of.* Originally this Abl. was one of Means (thus *there is work to be done with* . . . .)

saepe (as before), *often.* Compar. **saepius,** Superl. **saepissimē.**

tempus, temporis, N. 3, *time.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, *all* (without exception).

446. READING MATTER

(Note that *times*, as well as persons, are here described.)

1. Mārcus tālis erat quī, cōnsiliō fīdēns, semper solitus esset omnīs cāsūs prōvidēre. Lūcius is erat quī, vīribus suīs cōnfīsus, nihil umquam timuisset. In eius modī certāminibus saepe vīcerat, nōnnumquam cāsū, saepius vīribus ·magnīs suīs, saepissimē autem cōnsiliīs et opibus Mārcī in omnibus rēbus frūctus.[1] Sed nōn ūnā[2] nunc cōnsilia capiēbant. Hoc autem tempus tāle erat quō (*or* cum) cōnsiliō ac iūdiciō magis quam vīribus opus esset. Quā rē[3] is quī omnia perīcula prōvīderat[4] meliōre (in) locō erat quam is quī nihil timuerat.[4]

2. Grātiā aequē valēbant Mārcus et Lūcius, auctōritāte plūs[5] valēbat[5] Mārcus. Hic et dūrus et aequus erat. Quā rē cōpiae eius per hōs diēs semper in opere versātae sunt; neque ūllum fuerat tempus cum is meliōre (in) locō apud condiscipulōs fuisset. Placēbat[6] hīs quod tam multa discēbant, et movēbantur perīculō in quō erant. Itaque ūniversī eī auctōritātem atque imperium libenter concēdēbant, disciplīnamque servābant.

447. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. There were many in Mark's forces who at first had not trusted his judgment; for Mark was the one[4] who had brought it about that they were less strong in number than the enemy. 2. But *all* were moved now by the danger; and there was need of discipline. 3. So they yielded everything to Mark's authority and command. 4. Their leader was both stern and fair. 5. It also pleased them that they were very-often learning new things together. 6. For which reason all were engaged equally willingly in doing work; nor had there ever been a time when Mark had been in greater popularity, or had been more powerful.[5]

---

[1] *Having enjoyed*, i. e., *because he had enjoyed.*

[2] *Together.*

[3] Abl. of Cause, *because of which thing, wherefore, for which reason.*

[4] Is this idea primarily Determinative, or primarily Descriptive?

[5] *More powerful.* **Plūs** is an Acc. of Degree.

[6] Impersonal (*it pleased*).

LESSON LIX

448. THE IMPERATIVE (Finished)

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
I.	Pres. 2d	amă	amăte	amāre	amāminī
	Fut. 2d	amātŏ	amātōte	amātor	
	Fut. 3d	amātŏ	amantŏ	amātor	amantor
II.	Pres. 2d	monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
	Fut. 2d	monētŏ	monētōte	monētor	
	Fut. 3d	monētŏ	monentŏ	monētor	monentor
III.	Pres. 2d	tege	tegite	tegere	tegiminī
	Fut. 2d	tegitŏ	tegitōte	tegitor	
	Fut. 3d	tegitŏ	teguntŏ	tegitor	teguntor
	Pres. 2d	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
	Fut. 2d	capitŏ	capitōte	capitor	
	Fut. 3d	capitŏ	capiuntŏ	capitor	capiuntor
IV.	Pres. 2d	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
	Fut. 2d	audītŏ	audītōte	audītor	
	Fut. 3d	audītŏ	audiuntŏ	audītor	audiuntor
Irreg. Verb sum	Pres. 2d	es	este		
	Fut. 2d	estŏ	estōte		
	Fut. 3d	estŏ	suntŏ		

449. The (so-called) Present Imperative refers to the *immediate* future, the Future to a more *distinctly* future time, or to future time in general (hence especially used in laws, treaties, and maxims). The negative is **nē**.

THE SUPINE

450. The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension. It has two cases only in ordinary use, an Accusative in -**um** and an Ablative in -**ū**. The Accusative is identical *in form* with the Perfect Passive Participle Neuter (though of a different Declension).

451. SUPINES

CONJUGATION	I	II	III		IV
Acc.	amātum	monitum	tēctum	captum	audītum
Abl.	amātū	monitū	tēctū	captū	audītū

452. Specimen Sentences:

Tē monitum veniō, *I come to warn you.*

Hoc facile factū est, (this is easy in-the-doing,=) *this is easy to do.*

As you see from these examples,

453. 1. *The Supine in* **-um** *is used to express Purpose after Verbs of Motion.*[1]

2. *The Supine in* **-ū** *is used to express Respect with Adjectives.*

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCORDANCE

454. Specimen Sentences:

Mōre suō, *in accordance with his custom.*

Ex cōnsuētūdine suā, *in accordance with his custom.*

Cōnsuētūdine suā, *in accordance with his custom.*

Voluntāte eius, (in accordance with his will,=) *with his good-will, with his approval.*

a. Each of these examples expresses that *in accordance with which* something is done. With **cōnsuētūdine,** one may use the Preposition or omit it. With the others it is not commonly used in prose. Hence we may lay down the rule that:

455. *That in Accordance with which one acts or judges may be expressed by the Ablative of certain words, regularly without a Preposition.*[2]

a. So especially **mōre** and **cōnsuētūdine, iūdiciō, exemplō, voluntāte.**

b. With *most* words, **dē** or **ex** must be used to express the idea.

---

[1] In origin, the Accusative Supine in **-um** is simply an old Accusative of the end of motion. **Monitum veniō** is like **domum veniō.**

[2] The frequent use of **ex** with **cōnsuētūdine,** and the *regular* use of **dē** or **ex** with all but a small list of words, show the construction to be of true Ablative (i. e., *Separative*) origin. It expressed the idea of that *from which* the act proceeded (thus **mōre suō,** "proceeding from his custom").

ABLATIVE, ETC., WITH A COMPARATIVE

456. Specimen Sentences:

Tū fortior frātre es, *you are braver than your brother.*
Tū fortior es quam frāter, *you are braver than your brother.*
Scūtum habēs meō melius, *you have a better shield than mine.*
Sextī scūtum longius est quam Mārcī, *Sextus' shield is longer than Mark's.*

a. You see that the idea *than* after a comparative may be expressed either by the Ablative,[1] or by **quam,** the second word then being in the same case as the first. But you also find *only* **quam,** if the first word is in any case but Nominative or Accusative.[2]

The examples represent regular usage. Our rules will then be:

457. *A Comparative Adjective is often followed by the Ablative meaning "than." But* **quam** *may generally be used instead, and MUST be used if the first of the words compared is in any case but Nominative or Accusative.*

458.   **VOCABULARY**

apertus, -a, -um, *open.*

citrā, *this side.* Prep., taking Acc.

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right;* **dextra, -ae,** as Noun, *right hand.*

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, 3 (**ē** + **dūcō**), *lead out.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *die.* Partic. **mortuus,** = *dead.*

passus, -ūs, 4, *pace* (with both feet; = about five English feet).

prō (as before), *in front of;* hence *as a representative of, in behalf of, for;* hence further, *in place of, as.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

septem, indecl. Adj., *seven.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left;* **sinistra, -ae,** as Noun, *left hand.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, 3, *touch.*

tempestās, -ātis, F. 3, *weather; bad weather, storm.*

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3 (**trāns** + **gradior,** step across), *cross.*

ultrā, *beyond, on the other side of.* Prep., taking Acc.

ūsus, -ūs, M. 4, *use; experience.*

---

[1] The idea is of the thing *reckoned from* as a standard.

[2] Because then the second word does not itself depend upon the *Comparative* idea (thus the shield is *not* longer than *Mark*).

459.   **READING MATTER**

(Watch for *is* describing persons and things, including *times*.)

1. Magnae secūtae sunt tempestātēs, quae et puerōs et multōs ex patribus eōrum domī continērent.[1]

2. Eō tempore cum (*or* quō) bonam exspectābant[2] tempestātem, ferē sīc dē commūnī studiō loquēbantur: (Talk of some fathers) Hoc tempus id est cum opus sit[3] bonīs et aequīs iūdicibus. Magnāne sunt auctōritāte et grātiā iī quōs puerī ēlēgērunt?[1] (Ans.) Ita; iī sunt quī magnum reī mīlitāris ūsum habuerint.[1] Hīs ambō exercitūs aequē cōnfīdunt. Nēminī quidem plūs quam hīs cōnfīdunt; nam nēmō hīs perītior (comparative) est. Hās lēgēs iam prōnūntiāvērunt:

3. (Lēgēs pugnae) Intervāllum septem diērum estō. Hīs diēbus nēmō fīnīs alterīus exercitūs trānsgreditor. In apertā valle ab utrāque parte flūminis ante diem pugnae dictum nēmō versātor. Nēmō cōnsilia ducis suī cum mīlitibus alterīus ducis commūnicātō.

4. Locum castrīs Mārcus ad dextram, Lūcius ad sinistram capitō. Haec castra aequō spatiō ā flūmine absuntō. Hoc spatium quadringentōrum passuum estō.

5. Septimō diē dēcertantō. Eius diēī decimā hōrā[4] ūnus ex iūdicibus signum cornū datō. Tum ducēs suum quisque exercitum ēdūcuntō vel citrā vel ultrā flūmen pugnātum.

6. Scūtīs et gladiīs modo in proeliō ūtuntor. Pīlīs nē ūtuntor. Alia omnia Rōmānō faciuntō mōre.

7. Quī gladiō tāctus erit,[5] prō mortuō habētor, exque exercitū suō ā tergō excēditō.

8. (Comment of a listener) Haec facilia dictū sunt, factū erunt difficillima. Quī pugnātum vēnerint, iī nōn libenter discēdent.

---

[1] Does this clause determine or describe?

[2] *At the time when.* A Determinative **cum**-Clause (**425,** *c*).

[3] *The present time is one when,* = *is such that.* What kind of clause?

[4] The Romans reckoned twelve hours, from sunrise to sunset.

[5] *Who shall be touched, he* . . . = *he who*, etc.

LESSON LX

THE INFINITIVES (Finished)

460. 1. We have seen how to form the Present Infinitives (92, 179).

2. The Perfect Infinitives correspond in form to the Perfect Indicatives. Thus Active Indicative **amāvī,** *I have loved,* Infinitive **amāv-isse,** *to have loved;* Passive Indicative **amātus sum,** *I have been loved,* Infinitive **amātus esse,**[1] *to have been loved.*

3. The Future Infinitive Active is formed by the Future Active Participle with **esse.** Thus **amātūrus esse,**[1] *to be going to love.* The Future Passive is peculiarly formed, namely by the Supine in **-um,** coupled with **īrī.** Thus **amātum īrī,** *to be going to be loved.*

461. The Infinitives for our specimen verbs are thus:

I		II	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
amāre	amārī	monēre	monērī
amāvisse	amātus esse	monuisse	monitus esse
amātūrus esse	amātum īrī	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī

III			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
tegere	tegī	capere	capī
tēxisse	tēctus esse	cēpisse	captus esse
tēctūrus esse	tēctum īrī	captūrus esse	captum īrī

IV		IRREGULAR VERB sum
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
audīre	audīrī	esse
audīvisse	audītus esse	fuisse
audītūrus esse	audītum īrī	futūrus esse or fore

---

[1] Esse is very frequently omitted in the Perfect Passive Infinitive, and almost always so in the Future Active Infinitive. In our reading, this freedom of choice will be shown by parentheses.

THE MEANINGS OF THE INFINITIVE TENSES[1]

462. The tenses of the Infinitive express an act as, at the time of the verb on which they depend, *completed* (Perfect Infinitive), *in progress* (Present Infinitive), or *yet to come* (Future Infinitive). They are thus purely *relative* tenses, like those of the Participle. Thus:

Dīcitur labōrāvisse, *he is said to have worked* (Perfect Infinitive).

Dīcitur labōrāre, *he is said to be working* (Present Infinitive).

Dīcitur labōrātūrus esse, *he is said to be going to work* (Future Infinitive).

USE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

463. When, instead of being put directly (Direct Discourse), one's words or thoughts are made to depend upon a verb of saying, thinking, or the like, they are said to be in *Indirect Discourse.*

a. Thus in "I think (or *know*, or *believe*) him to be honest," the words "him to be honest" are an *indirect* expression of the thought, "he is honest." In "he says that he shall be present," the words "that he shall be present" are an *indirect* expression of the words, "I shall be present."

b. English can use the Infinitive with such verbs as *think, believe, know*, etc. (as above). Latin, by a striking usage, can employ it also with such verbs as *say* (**dīcō**), where *we* have to use a *clause*, commonly introduced by *that*,—which may, however, be omitted.

---

[1]The Latin Present Infinitive was at first merely a verbal noun, in two cases,—a Dative in **-ī**, and a Locative in **-e**. These were used like the cases of any other nouns in the same period. Thus "I drive the slave to work" (Dative of Direction), "I see the slave at work,—in the act of working" (Locative). As the *verb*-feeling grew, the case-endings became meaningless, and were then used to express voice; *and forms also then sprang up to express the other two tense-ideas* (Perfect and Future).

The English "to-Infinitive" has had in part exactly the same history. It was originally a Dative Noun, helped out by the Preposition "to." The original Dative forces still remain in common use, as in "he went out *to play*," and "I drove him *to work*." But all consciousness of the *case* has passed away, so that the Infinitive may to day be used also as *Subject* (thus in "to play is easier than to work") or *Object* (thus in "I love to play").

c. Thus the ideas of the three statements, **ego audīvī,** *I have heard,* **ego audiō,** *I hear,* and **ego audiam,** *I shall hear,* may be expressed in dependence upon a verb of saying in any tense, *becoming Infinitive,* as in the following:

464. Specimen Sentences:

Dīcit sē audīvisse, *he says (that) he has heard*   (he says **audīvī**).
Dīcit sē audīre, *he says (that) he hears*   ("   "   **audiō**).
Dīcit sē audītūrum (esse), *he says (that) he shall hear* ("   "   **audiam**).
Dīxit sē audīvisse, *he said (that) he had heard*   (he said **audīvī**).
Dīxit sē audīre, *he said (that) he heard*   ("   "   **audiō**).
Dīxit sē audītūrum (esse), *he said (that) he should hear*   ("   "   **audiam**).

a. You see that in each of these sentences the Infinitive makes an indirect Statement, and that its Subject is in the Accusative.

Our rule will then be:

465. *The Infinitive is used to express an indirect Statement after verbs of Saying, Thinking, Perceiving, Knowing, and the like.   The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative.*[1]

a. The Subject is sometimes omitted, when perfectly clear. Thus:

> **Dīcit parātum esse,** *he says that he is ready.*
> **Dīxit audīvisse,** *he said that he had heard.*

466. For verbs having no participial stem (thus **studeō, studēre, studuī,**—) the Future Infinitive is replaced by **fore** or **futūrum esse** with **ut** and the Subjunctive (of expected future fact; **421,** 3); and the same equivalent *may* be used for the Future Infinitive of *any* verb.   Thus:

Nōn crēdō fore ut ille studeat, *I don't believe that it will be (the case) that he will study,* = *I don't believe that he will study.*

---

[1] This use of the Infinitive has grown out of case-uses (see last footnote), as in "I drive him to work" (Dative of Direction), and "I see him at work" (Locative), which last easily suggests, "I see that he *is working.*" From verbs of perceiving, the use probably first extended itself to verbs of knowing or thinking, and then to verbs of saying. The Accusative, originally the object of the main verb, came to be felt as the *Subject* of the *Infinitive.*

467. VOCABULARY

collis, -is, M. 3, *hill.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (con- + mittō, bring together), *join; commit.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, 3 (con- + tendō, stretch thoroughly), *strain; strive, hasten.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (dē + dūcō), *lead off.*

exterus, -a, -um, *outside,* Compar. **exterior,** *outer,* Superl. **extrēmus** or **extimus,** *outermost, extreme* (or *the edge of*).

impedīmentum, -ī, N. 2, *hindrance.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle* or *themiddle-of.*

sub, *under.* Prep., taking Acc. of motion, and Abl. of rest.

468. READING MATTER

1. (A judge) Multī venient pugnam spectātum. Hī pugnantibus impedīmentō erunt. Quō modō hoc prohibeāmus? (Another) Id facillimum erit factū. Hōs ūniversōs ante pugnam in extrēmam vallem sub collēs dēdūcēmus. Prō certō habeō[1] ambōs exercitūs, signō datō, in mediam vallem contentūrōs (esse), ibique proelium commissum īrī. (The third) Facile erit eōs quī aderunt sub collēs dēdūcere; sed manēbunt sub collibus?

2. (One asks) Quem vōs putātis victūrum (esse)? Lūcī exercitus aliquantō maior est quam Mārcī. (Another) Mārcus multō dīligentior Lūciō est. Prō certō habeō eum suō mōre omnēs dolōs cōgitāvisse, atque etiam nunc reī mīlitārī domī studēre.

3. Ūnus ē iūdicibus crēdēbat Mārcum victūrum (esse). Prō certō habēbat omnēs dolōs ab eō cōgitātōs (esse).

469. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. I feel sure that Mark has formed plans, is drilling his men, and will conquer. 2. But I believe that those who come to witness the battle will be a great hindrance[2] to the fighters. 3. (Ans.) The judges say that they shall lead-off[3] all these (people) under[3] the different hills on[4] the edge-of-the valley. 4. The armies will hasten toward the middle-of-the valley, and the battle will be joined there.

---

[1] *Hold for certain,=feel sure.*

[2] Be careful about the case.

[3] Idea of rest, or of motion?

[4] See the *Latin* idea, in **468,** 1.

LESSON LXI

INFLECTION OF THE REGULAR VERB (Finished)

THE GERUND

470. 1. We have seen that, in many combinations, the Future Passive Participle has gained the power of expressing the *leading idea* in its phrase, as in **cupidus bellī gerendī,** *desirous of war to be waged,* which amounts to saying *desirous* OF WAGING *war.* The Gerundive is thus nearly the equivalent of a Verbal Noun. It is in *thought* the leading and governing word, but not yet *grammatically* so.

2. It naturally came in time to take this one step further, and became a *complete* Verbal Noun, in the Neuter Gender and Singular Number. It is then called the *Gerund.* Thus in:

> **Cupidus bellum gerendī,** *desirous of waging war.*

We may then define the Gerund as follows:

471. The Gerund is a Complete Verbal Noun. As Verbal, it has the power of governing a Substantive. As a Noun, it is itself governed in case.

The Gerund exists only in four cases. Thus, for **amō,**

> *Gen.* amandī
> *Dat.* amandō
> *Acc.* amandum
> *Abl.* amandō

472. Since the Gerundive and Gerund are closely corresponding constructions, we may conveniently sum up their uses together, as follows:

473. The Gerundive and Gerund exist only in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases. The case-uses are in general the same as those of Nouns. Thus:

474. GERUNDIVE	GERUND
Gen. cupidus pugnae videndae, *desirous of seeing the fight.*	cupidus pugnam videndī, *desirous of seeing the fight.*
Dat. diem cōnstituērunt operī faciendō, *they have appointed a day for doing the work.*	diem cōnstituērunt pugnandō, *they have appointed a day for fighting.*
Acc. alacer ad pugnam videndam, *eager for seeing the battle.*	alacer ad pugnandum, *eager for fighting.*
Abl. dīligentia in bellīs legendīs, *diligence in reading-up wars.*	dīligentia in legendō, *diligence in reading.*

a. In the Dative, or after a Preposition, the Gerundive is necessary if a Substantive is used. Otherwise the choice is free.

THE NATURAL HARMONY OF TENSES ("Sequence of Tenses")

475. 1. If you are thinking of two acts as connected (main and subordinate), they (1) are likely to be in the same division of time; and (2) the subordinate act is likely to be seen in its temporal relation to the main act (which makes *the point of view*). Thus "I watched" (yesterday) "a man who was stealing" (*then*, of course).

2. In the Subjunctive, as you already know and feel, the tenses of the present or future point of view are the Present and Perfect, of the past point of view the Imperfect and Past Perfect.

Hence, in combinations of verbs and dependent clauses:

476. *A verb of the present or future is generally accompanied by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, a verb of the past by an Imperfect or Past Perfect Subjunctive.*

477. Table of the Natural Harmony of Tenses ("Sequence").

In the Past	In the Present	In the Future
Past Act and Past Point of View	Present Act and Present Point of View	Future Act and Future Point of View
Thus Quaesīvī quid agerem, *I asked* (then) *what I was* (then) *to do.*	Thus Quaerō quid agam, *I ask* (now) *what I am* (now) *to do.*	Thus Quaeram quid agam, *I shall ask* (then) *what I am* (then) *to do.*
Dux erat quī nihil prōvīdisset, *he was a leader who had foreseen nothing.*	Dux est quī nihil prōvīderit, *he is a leader who has foreseen nothing.*	Dux erit quī nihil prōvīderit, *he will be a leader who will have foreseen nothing.*

NEW FORCE GAINED BY THE CONSECUTIVE quī-CLAUSE

The Causal or Adversative quī[1]-Clause

478. Specimen Sentences:

1. **Magnae secūtae sunt tempestātēs, quae puerōs domī continērent,** *great storms followed, which kept the boys at home.* (From the Reading Matter in **459**, 1.)

2. **Magnae hae sunt tempestātēs, quae hōs puerōs, pugnandī cupidōs, domī continuerint,** *great storms are these which* (and *since they*) *have kept these boys, eager for fighting, at home.*

3. **Dolet Lūcius, quī pugnāre magnopere cupiat,** *Lucius grieves, who* (= *since he*) *is very eager to fight.*

4. **Mārcus, quī pugnāre magnopere cupiat, tamen dē hīs tempestātibus nōn dolet.** *Mark, who* (= *although he*) *is very eager to fight, nevertheless doesn't grieve about these storms.*

a. In the first sentence the **quī**-Clause is a consecutive clause, such as we have already had a number of times.

b. In the second sentence the **quī**-Clause is consecutive, and very like the one in the first; but it *also, in consequence of the nature of the combination,* suggests an additional idea of *Cause* or *Reason;* i. e., you feel that it not only expresses the result of the greatness of the storms, but the reason why the speaker *says* "great."—In this way the Subjunctive **quī**-Clause gets a new power, that of expressing Cause or Reason; and it is then naturally employed to express Cause or Reason *alone,* as in the third example.[2]

c. The Adversative use (i. e., to express *Opposition,* as in the fourth example) grows out of the Causal use.

We may then lay down the rule that:

479. *A Relative Clause in the Subjunctive may be used to express Cause or Opposition* (Causal or Adversative quī-Clause).

---

[1] This is to be understood as meaning any form of the Relative,—*any* case, gender, or number, or any relative *Adverb* (as **ubi** or **unde**).

[2] Another instance of the rise of a new force in a construction, illustrated by our formula (force originally consecutive [**x**], then consecutive plus causal [**x + y**], then causal only [**y**]).

480. VOCABULARY

ācer (as before), *fierce.* Compar. ācrior, Superl. ācerrimus.[1]

ācriter, Adv. for ācer, *keenly, fiercely.* Compar. ācrius, Superl. ācerrimē.

patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *suffer, allow, permit.*

quārē (cf. **446**, 1, and footnote 3), Rel. and Interrog. Adv., *for which reason, wherefore, why.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hope.*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow, tardy; disinclined.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*

481. READING MATTER

1. (A timid mother) Tū scīs mē ex hōc bellō aliquid semper exspectāvisse incommodī. Quārē hīs tantīs tempestātibus gaudeō. Diem puerī cōnstituērunt dēcertandō. Sed spērō fore ut ipsā morā ūniversī tardiōrēs ad pugnandum sint. (Another mother) Tū gaudēs, quae timeās nē fīliō tuō noceātur. Sed nōn est timendum.[2] Iūdicēs perītī sunt tālēs rēs administrandī, nec patientur quemquam cuiquam nocēre. (First speaker) Quod tū dīcis[3] iūdicēs hominēs perītōs esse, id mē nōn tantum movet. Hī puerī ācriōrēs[4] sunt, ācriusque[4] contendent.

482. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. One mother says that she is-glad-of these (so-)great storms. 2. She feels sure that her son will be injured in the fighting. 3. This does not move me much. 4. (Same ideas, in past.) A certain mother said yesterday that she was-glad-of these storms; that she felt sure that her son would be injured. 5. I think that she will not allow him to fight.

6. Why don't *you* practice? Are you slow for fighting? 7. (Ans.) The boys formed their plans at a time when I was ill (*descriptive* idea); for-which-reason I was not chosen. 8. (First speaker) I am desirous of witnessing[5] the battle, but I hope[6] the boys will not fight too fiercely.

---

[1] As you see, Adjectives in **-er** have a peculiar way of forming the Superlative,—namely, in **-errimus**, as if by adding **-rimus** to the **-er**. Adverbs formed from them follow (Adj. ācerrimus, Adv. ācerrimē).

[2] Impersonal, *it is not to be feared,* = *one should not fear.*

[3] See **444**, *a.*

[4] The Comparative often means "too."

[5] Gerund, for practice.

[6] Note omission of "that."

LESSON LXII

IRREGULAR VERBS

483. In the last Lesson, we finished the inflection of the regular verbs.

484. There are a few verbs left, which present a little irregularity. *This irregularity is confined, so far as the endings are concerned, to the forms made from the Present Stem.*

a. Hence if you merely know the Principal Parts of a given irregular verb, all the forms from the *Perfect* Stem will follow with certainty.

b. Further, in the forms belonging to the Present Stem, you can always make the Imperfect Subjunctive Active, as in Regular Verbs, by adding -m to the Present Infinitive Active.

c. In most cases, the irregularity of ending is confined to the Present Indicative Active, as in the first verb to be given.

485.   CONJUGATION OF **possum,** *am able, can*
         Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum [1]	possim
	potes	possīs
	potest	possit
	possumus	possīmus
	potestis	possītis
	possunt	possint
Imperf.	poteram, -ās, -at, etc.	possem, -ēs, -et, etc.
Fut.	poterō, -is, -it, etc.	

---

[1] Old Latin has an Adjective meaning *able,* in two forms, **potis** and **pote.** These forms were originally of different genders, but came to be used for any gender. Among other uses, they were compounded with **sum.** The forms above arose from these compounds. Thus **potis-sum** (**possum**), *I am able;* **pote-es** (**potes**), *you are-able.*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Perf.	potuī, -istī, -it, etc.[1]	potuerim, -īs, -it, etc.
Past Perf.	potueram, -ās, -at, etc.	potuissem, -ēs, -et, etc.
Fut. Perf.	potuerō, -is, -it, etc.	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	potēns (which has be-
Perf.	potuisse	come an Adjective)

NEW FORCES GAINED BY THE CONSECUTIVE cum-CLAUSE

486. Specimen Sentences:

Puerī cōnsilia eō tempore (or tum) cēpērunt cum ego aeger essem. Posteā, cum mē habērem melius, ā Mārcō accipī cupiēbam. Sed, cum mē in armīs nōn exercuissem, is mē nōn accēpit. *The boys formed their plans at a time when I was ill. Later, when I was feeling better* (had myself better), *I wished to be accepted by Mark. But, since I had not drilled, he did not take me.*

a. In the first sentence (you yourself wrote it in translating **482**, 7), the **cum-**Clause is a simple descriptive clause, like those which we have several times had. It describes its antecedent, namely, **eō tempore.** The boys formed their plans *at a time when I was ill,—at a time of illness on my part.* This was the Situation, the State of Affairs, the Circumstances. Hence we may call such a clause a *Descriptive* **cum-***Clause of Situation.*

b. In the second sentence, the **cum-**Clause, which is in itself precisely like the first one, similarly gives the situation for the main verb, **cupiēbam.**—But it was *because* of this situation (namely, my feeling better) that I wished to be accepted. Hence an additional idea of *Cause* or *Reason* comes into the construction (" when " and " *because;* " **x**+**y**).

c. The natural consequence was that the construction was next used to express the idea of Cause or Reason alone (**y**), with the original idea of time wholly gone out of it, as in the third sentence in the passage above ("*since* I had not practiced ").

---

[1] The forms of the Perfect Stem, together with the Present Participle **potēns,** are from an old Second Conjugation verb **poteō, potēre, potuī,** which has otherwise disappeared.

d. But the main act *may* be performed, not *because* of the character of the situation, but *in spite of it*, as in the following:

Cum mē omnīnō nōn exercuissem, Lūcius mē accēpit, *when* (or *although*) *I had not practiced at all, Lucius accepted me.*

Here the additional idea is that of Opposition ("when" and "*although*"). The clause then comes also to be used with this new idea alone ("although").

We may sum up these uses in the following rules:

487. *A Subjunctive* **cum**-*Clause may be used to describe the Situation under which the main act took place* (Descriptive **cum**-Clause of Situation).

488. *A Descriptive* **cum**-*Clause of Situation may be used with an additional idea of Cause or Opposition* (Descriptive **cum**-Clause, with additional Causal or Adversative Idea).

489. *A Subjunctive* **cum**-*Clause may be used to express Cause or Opposition alone* (Causal or Adversative **cum**-Clause).

490.   **VOCABULARY**

centuriō, -ōnis, M. 3, *centurion* (commander of a company).

cohors, cohortis, -ium, F. 3, *cohort* (tenth part of a legion).

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, 3 (con- + sistō, cf. stō; stand firmly), *take position; halt.*

cum (same word as before), Conj., *when, as; since; although.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*

īnferus, *below.* Compar. **īnferior,** *lower,* Superl. **īnfimus** or **īmus,** *lowest.*

lēgātus, -ī, M. 2, *ambassador; lieutenant* (high officer).

legiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *legion.*

licet, licēre, licuit and **licitum est,** 2, Impers., *be permitted.*

mīlle, indecl. Adj. or Noun, *a thousand.* Pl. as Noun, **mīlia, -ium,** N. 3. **Mīlle passuum =** 5,000 feet, or a Roman mile.

multus (as before), *much,* Compar. **plūs,** *more,* Superl. **plūrimus,** *most* (or a *great deal,* Pl., *a great many*).

possum, posse, potuī, —, irr., *be able, can.* With **plūs,** etc., *be more able, can do more,* etc.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī and **-cucurrī, -cursum,** 3 (prō + currō), *run forward, charge.*

superus, -a, -um, *above.* Compar. **superior,** *higher,* Superl. **suprēmus** or **summus,** *highest.*

tribūnus, -ī, M. 2, *tribune.*

491.   READING MATTER

1. (At Mark's house. Mark, to his father) Omnia mōre et exemplō Rōmānō fēcī. Exercitum in legiōnēs et cohortēs dīvīsī. Hōs lēgātōs, tribūnōs, centuriōnēs ēlēgī. Summī sunt cōnsilī. Plūrimōs dolōs sciunt, et plūrimum[1] auctōritāte valent.

2. (The father) Lūcius multitūdine plūs[2] potest. Quid vōs in pugnandō potestis? (One answers) Multum[2] nōs possumus.

3. (Mark) Prīmō nihil[2] poterant meī, atque disciplīna eōrum mala erat; imperium autem cum mihi concessissent, mox multa didicērunt. Nunc eōs exercuī, ita ut summī[3] et īnfimī[3] aliquot hōrās atque multa mīlia passuum ambulāre possint; ut ducentōs vel quadringentōs passūs celeriter currere possint; ut servātīs ōrdinibus vel prōcurrere vel sē recipere possint; ut, ūnā fugientēs, vel simul vel deinceps cōnsistere possint.

4. (The father) Numquam crēdidī fore ut tuī tantum possent. Ō magna vīs disciplīnae, quae ex puerīs mīlitēs perītissimōs faciat! 5. Nunc, cum haec didicerītis, mihi liceat omnia bona vōbīs optāre. Vincat Mārcī exercitus!

492.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (The father) But when Lucius had chosen his army,[4] didn't he also, according to the Roman custom, divide it into legions and cohorts, and choose lieutenants, tribunes and centurions? 2. Don't his soldiers concede command to him? 3. Can't *they* also walk many miles, and run two hundred or four hundred paces? 4. Haven't they learned a-great-many stratagems? 5. Hasn't Lucius also drilled the highest and the lowest, so that they can run forward together, and then halt one-after-another or retreat keeping their ranks? 6. Your men can (do) very-much. 7. Can they (do) more than Lucius's soldiers (can)?

8. (Mark) Since Lucius has never been diligent, it is permitted to think that he has not been diligent in drilling his men.

---

[1] Acc. of Degree. Adjectives so used (cf. **multō**, etc.) are much like Adverbs. Translate *are very strong.*

[2] Like **plūrimum** above.

[3] = *the greatest and the least.*

[4] Clause of Situation.

LESSON LXIII

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

493. CONJUGATION OF volō, nōlō, mālō

Principal Parts $\begin{cases} \text{volō, velle, voluī, ——, } \textit{will, want} \\ \text{nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, } \textit{be unwilling}^1 \\ \text{mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, } \textit{prefer}^1 \end{cases}$

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim
	vīs	velīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
	vult	velit	nōn vult	nōlit
	volumus	velīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
	vultis	velītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint
Imperf.	volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem
Fut.	volam		nōlam	
Perf.	voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim
Past Perf.	volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem
Fut. Perf.	voluerō		nōluerō	

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE		
Pres.	mālō	mālim	*Pres.*	nōlī	nōlīte
	māvīs	mālīs	*Fut.*	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	māvult	mālit			
	mālumus	mālīmus			
	māvultis	mālītis			
	mālunt	mālint			
Imperf.	mālēbam	māllem			
Fut.	mālam				
Perf.	māluī	māluerim			
Past Perf.	mālueram	māluissem			
Fut. Perf.	māluerō				

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

| *Pres.* | volēns | nōlēns | |

---

^{1} Nōlō is from nōn and volō, *don't want*, mālō from magis volō, *want more*.

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

494. A Conclusion is a statement, the truth or realization of which depends upon the truth or realization of something else called a Condition (*if*-clause, or an equivalent). Thus "if he has come" (Condition), "we are safe" (Conclusion). The negative for both is **nōn**.

a. Conditions are introduced by **sī**, *if*, **nisi**, *unless*, Relatives, or Conjunctions (thus **quī** or **quīcumque**, *whoever*, **cum**, *whenever*, etc.).

b. Conditions and Conclusions may deal with a single case (Individual), or *any number* of cases of a kind (General). Thus:
"If he has come, he brings presents." (Individual.)
"If ever he comes, he brings presents." (Generalizing.)
"When he comes, he brings presents." (Generalizing Conjunction.)
"Whoever comes, brings presents." (Generalizing Relative.)

NEUTRAL CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS, PRESENT OR PAST

495. Specimen Sentences:

Id sī fēcistī, bene fēcistī, *if you have done this, you have done well.*
Id sī facis, bene facis, *if you are doing this, you are doing well.*

a. As you see, these conditions imply nothing as regards the truth or falsity of the condition and conclusion. We may then call them *neutral*, and may state the usage as follows:

496. *Neutral Conditions and Conclusions in the Present or Past are expressed by the Indicative.*

FUTURE CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

497. Specimen Sentences:

Id sī faciēs, bene faciēs, *if you (shall) do this, you will do well.*
Id sī faciās, bene faciās, *if you should do this, you would do well.*

a. Both examples refer to the Future. The difference is merely one of greater or less *vividness*. The Indicative (*if . . . . shall*) is more vivid, the Subjunctive (*if . . . . should*) less vivid.

b. The Present Subjunctive, as we call it, clearly here refers to the *Future*. Similarly the Perfect Subjunctive may be employed as a *Future Perfect*, as in **id modo sī fēcerīs, bene fēcerīs,** *if you should have done merely this, you would have done well.*

We may then lay down our rules as follows:

498. 1. *More Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Indicative tenses of Future time* (the Future and Future Perfect).

2. *Less Vivid Future Conditions*[1] *and Conclusions*[2] *are expressed by Subjunctive tenses of Future time* (the so-called Present and Perfect).

499.   **VOCABULARY**

amplus, -a, -um, *ample,* **large.**
  amplius, Compar. Neut., as
  Substantive, *more;* as Acc. of
  Degree, *more, further.*

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy,* and

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy.*
  Take Abl. (Construction of
  doubtful origin.)

fidēs, -eī, F. 5, *faith, loyalty;*
  promise, word.

honestus, -a, -um, *honorable.*

imperātor, -ōris, M. 3, *general.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, 2,
  bid, order. Takes Infinitive.

mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, irr.,
  want more, prefer.

malus (as before), *bad,* Compar.
  peior, *worse,* Superl. **pessimus,**
  worst.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, irr., *not
  want, be unwilling.*

**perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -ter-
  ritum,** 2 (per + terreō), *thor-
  oughly frighten, terrify.*

quandō, Conj., *since, as.*

quoniam, Conj., *since.*

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum,
  3, *break.*

sīve or **seu,** Conj., *or if, or;* **sīve
  . . . . sīve . . . .** (seu . . . . seu
  . . . .), *whether . . . . or . . . .*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
  superus, above, over), *over-
  come, defeat, conquer.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, 1,
  forbid. Takes Infinitive.

volō, velle, voluī, ——, irr.,
  want, will.

---

[1] Formed by the coming-together of four kinds of independent conditions.
Thus:

	CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Volitive:	*let him come* (**veniat**):	
Anticipatory:	*I expect him to come* (**veniat**):	*I should* (in that case) *be*
Optative:	*I hope he may come* (**veniat**):	*glad* (**gaudeam**).
Potential:	*he may perhaps come* (**veniat**):	

  When these constructions were used *dependently* (with **sī,** etc.), the differences of feeling of course disappeared, leaving only the idea common to all the forms, namely that of a *Condition.*

[2] The Subjunctive *Conclusion* is simply a statement of Mental Certainty.

500. READING MATTER

(A soldier to Mark) Tēcum, imperātor, licetne mihi loquī? (Ans.) Tē dīcere iubeō. (Soldier) Hāc rē perterritus sum, quod malā tempestāte tam multōs diēs proelium exspectāvimus. Forsitan aliquis iam Lūcium dē tuīs cōnsiliīs certiōrem[1] fēcerit.[1] Etiam nunc, sī quis eum certiōrem fēcerit, facile victor sit. (Ans.) Quandō tū dīxistī, respondēbō; sed īrātus sum quod omnīnō timuistī. Pessimum est exemplum. Num tū Lūcium certiōrem facere vīs? (Soldier) Ego certē nōlō; numquam voluī fidem rumpere; sed nōn volō ut alius id faciat. (Ans.) Quem tū putās velle? Id quod tū facere nōn vīs, omnēs nostrī facere nōlint, quoniam honesta volumus omnēs.

Et honesta aequē vult Lūcius. Dignus est fidē nostrā. Sīve nōs vincēmus sīve ille vincet, nihil sē indignum fēcerit.[2] Etiam sī quis nostrum cum eō dē cōnsiliīs nostrīs loquī velit, nōn liceat; vetet illum Lūcius omnīnō dīcere. Is est hostis noster quī superārī mālit quam hōc modō vincere. Summā ille est fidē. Quārē nōlī[3] amplius dē hāc rē vel mēcum vel cum aliīs loquī.

501. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. (Another repeats the scolding outside.) If we should make you general, should you want to talk with any one who should want[4] to inform you about the plans of the enemy? 2. (Ans.) I should not want (to). 3. (The other) Why should you think that Lucius wants (to)? 4. The boys of our school are all honorable. 5. It is not permitted to believe anything unworthy of them.

6. You said that you were terrified lest some one should break faith. 7. Whether we shall fight now or after many days, no one will do this, since all would prefer to be defeated. 8. But as you have thought the worst, we order you to say nothing further. 9. If you talk about this again, we shall forbid you to fight along (ūnā) with the rest. 10. You will not be worthy.

---

[1] *Make more certain, inform.*
[2] What difference from fēcerit above?
[3] *Be unwilling (to),=do not.*
[4] Really a condition,=*if he.*

LESSON LXIV

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

CONJUGATION OF fīō, *become*

502. **Fīō,** *become,* serves as the Passive of **faciō,** *make,* in the Present System. The Perfect System and the Future Passive Participle are formed regularly from **faciō.**

Principal Parts: fīō[1]   fierī   factus sum

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	fīō	——		fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	——		fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt		fīat	fīant
Imperf.	fīēbam			fierem	
Fut.	fīam				
Perf.	factus sum			factus sim	
Past Perf.	factus eram			factus essem	
Fut. Perf.	factus erō				

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres. fī	fīte	*Pres.* fierī		*Perf.* factus	
		Perf. factus esse		*Fut.* faciendus	
		Fut. factum īrī			

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
faciendī	faciendī, -ae, -ī
faciendō	faciendō, -ae, -ō
faciendum	faciendum, -am, -um
faciendō	faciendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

factum, -ū

a. Compounds of **faciō** with Prepositions usually have the regular Passive. Thus the Principal Parts of **cōnficiō** are:

Active: cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.
Passive: cōnficior, cōnficī, cōnfectus sum.

---

[1] The i is long throughout, except in **fit** and before short e (thus **fierī, fierem**).

503. CONJUGATION OF eō, *go*

(Note the contracted forms.)

Principal Parts: eō īre iī (*or* īvī) itum

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
Imperf.	ībam		īrem	
Fut.	ībō			
Perf.	iī (*or* īvī)	iimus	īerim	
	īstī (*or* iistī)	īstis (*or* iistis)		
	iit (*or* īt)	iērunt (*or* iēre)		
Past Perf.	ieram		īssem	
Fut. Perf.	ierō			

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ī īte	*Pres.*	īre	*Pres.*	iēns, iēns, Gen. euntis
Fut.	ītō ītōte	*Perf.*	īsse (*or* iisse)	*Fut.*	itūrus
	ītō euntō				
		Fut.	itūrus esse	*Fut. Pass.*	eundum (est, Impersonal)

GERUND

eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō

PICTURESQUE USES OF THE TENSES: HISTORICAL PRESENT, etc.

504. By the use of tenses properly belonging to the present point of view, a past scene may be vividly brought before the mind, and its events pictured as *now taking place*. The dependent clauses may be made picturesque, by the same means, or they may be put in the sober tenses of the past. Thus:

Dux mīlitī imperat ut eat, ⎫
Dux mīlitī imperat ut īret, ⎬ *the leader orders the soldier to go.*

a. A Present Tense so used is called an *Historical Present.*[1]

---

[1] Our best English uses the picturesque tenses very little. And we regularly use them in *all* parts of the sentence, if in any.

THE AORISTIC NARRATIVE CLAUSE WITH ubi, ut, post-
quam, OR simul (atque)

505. Specimen Sentences:

Ubi
Ut
Postquam
Simul (atque) } hostīs vīdit, cōnsilium mūtāvit.

when
when or as
after
as soon as } *he saw the enemy, he changed his plan.*

a. You notice that the four conjunctions of time here employed
introduce a clause in *narration,* i. e., they *tell* you something (**vīdit**),
in the progress of a story, as a preparation for the main event (**mūta-
vit**). And you notice also that the tense used is an *aorist* (not "when
he *had* seen," which would be situation, but merely "when he *saw*").
This is the regular usage. We may then lay down the rule that:

506. *An Aoristic Indicative Clause with* **ubi, ut, post-
quam,** *or* **simul** (**atque**), *may be used in narration to
introduce the main event.*

The tense is the Perfect or the Historical Present.

a. The Aoristic Narrative Clause is interchangeable with the
Descriptive **cum**-Clause of Situation (**487**). Thus you may say:

(either) **ubi hostīs vīdit,**
    when he saw the enemy, } **cōnsilium mūtāvit,**
(or) **cum hostīs vīdisset,**   *he changed his plan.*
    when he had seen the enemy, }

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

507. As we have repeatedly seen,

Accompaniment is expressed by **cum** *and the Ablative.*

Cum amīcō profectus sum, *I set out with a friend.*

a. But in military language **cum** *may be omitted, if the noun has
a modifier, and this is not a numeral.* Thus:

Omnibus cōpiīs profectus sum, *I set out with all my forces.*
(but) **Cum ūnā legiōne profectus sum,** *I set out with one legion.*

508. VOCABULARY

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *approach*. Word of Relation.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. con- and locus), *place, station*.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (dē+cēdō), *go away, withdraw*.

eō, īre, iī (or īvī), itum, irr., *go*.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, irr., *become*. Used also as Passive of faciō.

intrā, *within*. Prep., taking Acc.

merīdiēs, -ēī, M. 5, *midday*.

palūs, -ūdis, F. 3, *swamp*.

posterus, -a, -um (cf. post, after), *following*. Compar. posterior, *later*, Superl. postrēmus or postumus, *latest*.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *suspect*.

triplex, -ex, Gen. -icis, *triple*.

ubi (as before) *where*; also *when*.

ut (as before) *as;* also *when*.

509. READING MATTER

(Fair weather. The battle) Posterō diē post merīdiem duo exercitūs ad sua quisque castra eunt. Omnia mōre Rōmānō fiunt. Lūcius aciem triplicem īnstruit. Mārcus, quia minōrem habēbat numerum, maiōrem partem suōrum in duplicī aciē cōnstituit; reliquōs intrā silvam prope palūdem quandam conlocat. Haec autem palūs ā silvā ad flūmen pertinēbat.

Paulō ante decimam hōram, iūdicēs eōs quī pugnam spectātum vēnerant certiōrēs fēcērunt tempus pugnandī adesse; ipsī sub collēs in extrēmam vallem dēcēderent;[1] quī ex eō locō excessissent[2] priusquam dēcertātum esset,[2] eōs ex valle pulsum īrī.

Ubi signum pugnae datum est, Lūcī exercitus ad flūmen contendit. Mārcī autem mīlitēs, ita ut iussī erant, minus celeriter pontī adpropinquāvērunt. Lūcius eum prior trānsgressus in mīlitēs Mārcī omnibus cōpiīs impetum ācerrimē fēcit. Hī, sē perterritōs esse simulantēs, terga vertērunt atque secundum flūmen cucurrērunt. Īnsecūtī sunt hostēs.

Etiam tum, sī Lūcius dē dolīs suspicātus esset,[3] facile propter numerum suōrum victor esset.[3] Sed nihil est suspicātus.

---

[1] Command of judges (Vol. Subj.). [2] Past Fut.-Perf. (English "should").
[3] A Future Condition and Conclusion from a *past* point of view: *Even then, if Lucius should suspect stratagems, he would easily be victor.*

LESSON LXV

COMPARISON

510. *Introductory.* You have already become familiar with the common types of regular comparison, both for Adjectives and for Adverbs, and with the comparison of nearly all the more important irregular words also; but the whole will now be put together for review, distributed among three Lessons.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

511. 1. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior,** the Superlative by adding **-issimus,** to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel, if it has one. Thus:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
certus	certior	certissimus
dīligēns	dīligentior	dīligentissimus

2. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative in **-errimus,** as if by adding **-rimus** to the **-er.** Thus:

ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus

3. Certain Adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative in **-illimus,** as if by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel. Thus:

facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus

4. But many Adjectives form the Comparative and Superlative by prefixing **magis,** *more,* and **maximē,** *most,* to the Positive. This is true of most Adjectives in which the vowel of the stem is itself preceded by another vowel. Thus:

idōneus	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus

THE ABLATIVE OF WAY OR MANNER

512. Specimen Sentences:

Cāsū eum vīdī, *I saw him by chance.*

Hōc modō vincō, *I conquer by this method* (=*in this way*).

Pedibus ībō, *I shall go* (with the feet =) *on foot.*

Cum cūrā omnia explōrās, *you explore everything with care.*

Magnā cum cūrā omnia explōrās, *you explore everything with great care.*

a. You see that Way or Manner may be expressed by the Ablative.[1]

b. The construction, being very common, in the main resisted the coming-in of prepositions.[2]

The usage may then be stated thus:

513. *Way or Manner may be expressed by the Ablative, regularly without a Preposition.*

But Abstract Nouns in less frequent use take **cum** *if there is no Modifier, and MAY take it even if there is one.*

THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

514. Specimen Sentences:

Duo exercitūs prōcurrērunt, proelium commīsērunt. Subitō hostēs fugere, *the two armies rushed forward, and joined battle. Suddenly the enemy fled.*

a. Such constructions occur in lively passages.—As you see, the Infinitive here makes a *statement,* just as an Indicative would do.[3] And you notice that, like an Indicative, it has its Subject in the Nominative. We may then lay down the rule that:

515. *In lively narration, the Infinitive may be used in place of an Indicative. Its Subject is then in the Nominative.*

---

[1] The construction is of composite origin, formed from the coming-together of Ablative, Sociative, and Locative uses. Cf. English " from design," " with design," " in haste " (all expressing Manner). But in English the Prepositions keep the three constructions from coming to seem like one.

[2] In the oldest stage of language there were no prepositions.

[3] This construction probably originated in a Locative use of the Infinitive, when the two forms (-e and -ī) still had their case-forces. Thus, *lo! the enemy in flight !*

CLAUSE OF CAUSE OR REASON WITH **quod, quia, quoniam,**
OR **quandō**

516. Specimen Sentences:

Gaudeō quod tū valēs, *I am glad that* (= because) *you are well.*
Quia valeō, pugnābō, *because I am well, I shall fight.*
Quoniam ōtium habēs, venī, *since you have leisure, come.*
Quandō puerī pugnātūrī sunt, ego certē aderō, *since the boys are
going to fight, I shall certainly be present.*

a. In these examples, as you see, the Indicative clause states a
fact, as the *Cause* or *Reason* for something given in the main
sentence.

We may then lay down the rule that:

517. *Cause or Reason may be expressed by an Indica-
tive Clause with* **quod, quia, quoniam,** *or* **quandō.**[1]

ABLATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION

518. Specimen Sentences:

Castrīs suōs ēdūcit, *he leads his men out of the camp.*
Ex castrīs suōs ēdūcit, *he leads his men out of the camp.*
Pugnā dēsistunt, *they cease from fighting.*

a. Verbs of separation are mostly compounds containing one of
the separative prepositions, **ab, dē, ex.** The three examples illus-
trate the general usage of nouns depending upon them. In the first
two, literal separation in place is expressed, and either with or with-
out a preposition. In the last, figurative separation is expressed,
and no preposition is used. This corresponds to the regular usage.

We may then lay down the rule that:

519. *Verbs of Separation take the Ablative, with or
without a Preposition. But verbs expressing Figurative
Separation only regularly omit the Preposition.*

---

[1] You can easily see how the force of Cause or Reason came into the
clause with **quod.** "I am glad that" naturally suggests "I am glad because."
Quia (which is an old Neuter Pl. of **quī,** just as **quod** is a Neuter Sing.) got
its causal force in the same way. **Quoniam** and **quandō,** which were originally
conjunctions of time meaning *when,* have gained their causal force in the
same way as English "since."

520. VOCABULARY

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,
1 (circum + dō), *throw around,
surround.*
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout.*
clāmor, -ōris, M. 3, *shout.*
cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded.*
cōnfestim, Adv., *immediately.*
cursus, -ūs, M. 4, *running, run.*
dēmum, Adv., *at last, finally.*
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, 3
(ē+iaciō), *throw out.* Mē
ēiciō, *I rush out.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, F. 1, *ambush,
ambuscade.*
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clū-
sum, 3 (inter+claudō, shut),
shut in, hem in, block.
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, 3, *slip.*
manus, -ūs, F. 4, *hand; band.*
subsidium, -ī, N. 2, *reserve, rein-
forcement, help.*
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, irr.
(trāns+eō), *go across, cross
over, go over.*

521. READING MATTER
(The End of the Battle)

Ubi autem priōrēs mīlitēs Lūcī magnō cursū euntēs palūdī adpropinquāvērunt, ex exercitū Mārcī iī quī (in) extrēmō dextrō cornū cōnstiterant restitērunt, hostibusque obstābant. Idem ab aliīs deinceps factum est, ita ut tōta mox aciēs contrā mīlitēs Lūcī cōnstitissent. Hī autem, cum maximē temerē essent cōnsecūtī, nunc inter flūmen et Mārcī exercitum interclūsī erant; nam ā sinistrō latere palūs prōgredī vetābat.

Tum iī quōs Mārcus in īnsidiīs conlocāverat magnō (cum) clāmōre sē ex silvīs ēiciunt, suīsque subsidiō veniunt; simulque tertia aciēs, cum ad sinistram cōnfestim trānsīsset, hostēs etiam ab hōc latere circumvenit. Sīc Mārcus, flūmine et palūde ūsus, minōre exercitū exercitum maiōrem undique circumdederat. Tum dēmum vērum commissum est proelium. Lūcius suīs clāmāre[1] ut omnibus vīribus pugnārent. Hī autem, ut[2] in tālī rē fit,[2] ita inter sē cōnfertī erant ut manibus armīsque nōn possent commodē ūtī; et quīdam etiam, ex īnferiōre locō in flūmen lāpsī, magnō in perīculō erant. Itaque iūdicēs imperāvērunt ut omnēs pugnā dēsisterent; Mārcum[3] enim superāvisse.[3]

---

[1] Historical Infinitive. [2] *As happens in such a case.*
[3] The Accusative-with-Infinitive betrays Indirect Discourse.

LESSON LXVI

IRREGULAR VERBS (Finished)

522.   CONJUGATION OF ferō, *bear*

Principal Parts: **ferō   ferre   tulī   lātum**

		Active		Passive	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
Pres.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar	
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris *or* -e	
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur	
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur	
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī	
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur	
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer	
Fut.	feram		ferar		
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim	
Past Perf.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem	
Fut. Perf.	tulerō		lātus erō		

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer[1]	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus (esse)
Fut.	lātūrus (esse)	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	ferēns	*Perf.*	lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	*Fut.*	ferendus

SUPINE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
lātum, -ū	ferendī, etc.	ferendī, ferendae, ferendī, etc.

---

[1] Dīcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō have Imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer.

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

(New Force Gained by the Subjunctive Tenses of the Past)

523. In the Reading Matter of **509** we had the sentence:

**Etiam tum, sī Lūcius dē dolīs suspicātus esset, facile propter nume-
rum suōrum victor esset,** *even then, if Lucius should suspect
stratagems, he would easily be victor on account of the
number of his men.*

a. The mind of the teller of the story was here fixed upon a point
in the past, at which the outcome of the battle was still in the future.
Sī suspicātus esset is a *past future-perfect* and **victor esset** is a *past
future* (i. e., the expression of a mental certainty about something
which *at this past time was sure to come*).

b. But as we look back from the *present* point of view, we see that
both condition and conclusion express something which we know to
be *contrary to the actual fact.* Lucius *did not* suspect, and *is not*
victor. Practically, then, the meaning suggested becomes "if Lucius
had suspected, he *would* now be the victor." In this way, the
Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive get the new power of
expressing conditions and conclusions contrary to fact, the Imperfect
dealing with Present time, and the Past Perfect with finished action
at any time in the past up to the present moment.

We may then lay down the rule that:

524. *Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact are
expressed by the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive.
The Imperfect refers to the Present, the Past Perfect to
the Past.*

a. We may now present all Conditions and Conclusions together:

525. Table of Conditions and Conclusions (Summary)

Future	More Vivid: Indicative, Future or Future Perfect.
	Less Vivid: Subjunctive, Present or Perfect.
Present or Past	Neutral: Indicative, Present or Past Tenses.
	Contrary to Fact: Subjunctive, Imperfect or Past Perfect.

DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH CERTAIN
PREPOSITIONS

526. Specimen Sentences:

Disciplīna animum exercituī adfert (ad + fert), *discipline brings spirit to an army.*

Pontī adpropinquant, *they approach (draw near to) the bridge.*

Mārcus exercituī praeest, *Mark (is in front for the army, =) is in command of the army.*

a. The Dative in the first example is the Dative of Direction, just as it would be after **ferō** *without* **ad**. In the second it is the Dative of Relation (after **adpropinquō**, *draw near to*, just as after **propinquus**, *near to*). In the third, it is the Dative of the Persons Concerned. Now a great many instances of the kind occurred with verbs thus compounded with Prepositions. The result was that it seemed natural to use the Dative with verbs compounded with *any* Preposition, unless the idea of space-relation was too prominent.

We may then lay down the rule that:

527. *The Dative is used after many Verbs compounded with certain Prepositions.* (These are **ad, ante, circum, con-, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super**).

528.   **VOCABULARY**

adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum, irr. (ad + ferō), *bring* (to).

citerior, -ius, *on this side, hither* (a Compar. form). Superl. **citimus,** *hithermost.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fight.*

facultās, -ātis, F. 3 (cf. facilis), *facility; opportunity.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr., *bear, bring, carry.*

fortūna, -ae, F. 1, *fortune.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *admire.*

noctū, Adv., *at night, by night.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *take possession of, occupy.*

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum, 4, *share.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, *promise.*

propior, -ius, *nearer* (a Compar. form). Superl. **proximus,** *nearest, close by.*

quoad (quō + ad, up to what time), Conj., *until* (like dum).

super, *above.* Prep., taking Acc.

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (trāns + dūcō), *lead across.*

tumulus, -ī, M. 2, *mound, low hill.*

ulterior, -ius, *on the other side, farther* (a Compar. form). Superl. **ultimus,** *farthest.*

529.   READING MATTER

Omnēs nunc Mārcī mīrābantur ingenium. Lūcius autem, quī vellet hanc glōriam partīrī saltem, aegrē pugnam[1] adversam[1] ferēbat. Itaque cum domum Mārcī noctū vēnisset, ōrat[2] ut iterum liceat[2] dīmicāre; sēsē enim dē·dolīs atque īnsidiīs nihil prōvīdisse. "Sī," inquit, "eōdem nōs modō pugnāvissēmus,[3] ego nunc victor essem."[3] "Ita vērō," inquit Mārcus; "sed, nisi ego prōvīdissem[3] dīversō nōs modō pugnātūrōs, tibi maiōrem exercitum numquam dedissem.[3] Sī tū autem fortūnam tuam aegrē fers, facultātem quam petis dabō.[3] Ut tū vīs, fīat. Concēdō ut iterum dēcertētur." Itaque prōnūntiātum est exercitūs posterō diē iterum dīmicātūrōs. Iūdicēs īdem quī[4] anteā[4] sē proeliō adfore pollicitī sunt.

Hōrā pugnae cōnstitūtā signō datō, Mārcus suōs trāns pontem magnō cursū trādūcit. Lūcius autem, quī dolīs iterum superārī nōllet,[5] omniaque nunc timēret, tumulum silvae proximum occupat, superque eum īnstrūctīs suīs, exspectābat quoad sē Mārcus adgraderētur.[6] Id fēcit, nē quod auxilium huic in pugnā adferrētur. Mārcus autem, quia putāverat in ulteriōre parte vallis, nōn in citeriōre, pugnātum īrī, omnia prōvīderat. Itaque suīs cōpiīs prōgressus est quoad sub tumulum vēnit,[7] ubi eās cōnsistere iubet.

---

[1] *Adverse battle,* = *defeat.*
[2] **Ōrat** expresses neither exactly Will nor exactly Wish, but rather Request or Entreaty; and the Substantive Clause that follows of course expresses the same idea. Some grammarians put this with the Volitive Subjunctive, others with the Optative. But the languages that keep the two moods distinct show that *both* were used to express the idea; and the Latin usage has thus probably come down from both. Compare English "I beg that he shall be forgiven" (Volitive form) and "I beg that he may be forgiven" (Optative form).—The same is true of the corresponding idea of Consent, seen in **fiat** and in **concēdō ut iterum dēcertētur** (Substantive Clause) below.
[3] What kind of Condition and Conclusion?
[4] *The same* (who had promised) *before,* = *the same as before.*
[5] Causal **quī**-Clause,—*because he didn't wish* . . . .
[6] Looked *forward to* by *Lucius* (Anticipatory Subjunctive). ⎫ Both with
[7] Looked *back upon* by *the narrator* (Indicative of Fact). ⎭ **quoad.**

LESSON LXVII

IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

530. Several Adjectives show two or three different stems in the three Degrees, or different forms of the same stem. Compare English *good, better, best*. Thus:

bonus, *good*	**melior**, *better*	**optimus**, *best*
malus, *bad*	**peior**, *worse*	**pessimus**, *worst*
magnus, *great*	**maior**, *greater*	**maximus**, *greatest*
multus, *much*	**plūs**, *more*	**plūrimus**, *most*
parvus, *small*	**minor**, *smaller*	**minimus**, *smallest*

531. For a few Adjectives, the Positive is lacking or rare, or appears only in *Adverbs* or *Prepositions*. Thus:[1]

citrā, *on this side*	**citerior**, *hither*	**citimus**, *hithermost*
ultrā, *beyond*	**ulterior**, *farther*	**ultimus**, *farthest*
in, intrā, *within*	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**, *innermost*
prope, *near*	**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**, *nearest*
prae, prō, *before*	**prior**, *former*	**prīmus**, *first*
exterus, *outside* (and **ex**)	**exterior**, *outer*	{ **extrēmus** / **extimus** } *outermost*
īnferus, *below*	**īnferior**, *lower*	{ **īnfimus** / **īmus** } *lowest*
superus, *above* (and **super**)	**superior**, *higher*	{ **suprēmus** / **summus** } *highest*
posterus, *following* (and **post**)	**posterior**, *later*	{ **postrēmus** *last* / **postumus** *late-bórn* }

---

[1] The definitions given in the list represent the simplest meanings. But most of the words have figurative meanings also. For example, you will find **superior** in the Reading Matter of the present Lesson in the sense of *higher-in-point-of-time*, i. e., *former;* and it also often means *superior*, just as the opposite, **īnferior**, *lower*, often means *inferior*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Finished)

532. Specimen Sentences (from the Reading Matter of **509**):

Paulō ante decimam hōram iūdicēs eōs quī pugnam spectātum vēnerant certiōrēs fēcērunt tempus pugnandī adesse; ipsī sub collēs in extrēmam vallem dēcēderent; quī ex eō locō excessissent priusquam dēcertātum esset, eōs ex valle pulsum īrī. *A little before four o'clock the judges informed those who had come to see the battle that the time for the fighting was at hand; that they* (the spectators) *should withdraw under the hills at the edge of the valley; that those who should leave that place before the battle should be finished would be expelled from the valley.*

a. All of the sentence after the words **certiōrēs fēcērunt** reports in substance what the judges said, but it is not in their exact words. It is thus in Indirect Discourse.

b. The first thing said is that the time was at hand (in the original form, **tempus adest**, "the time is at hand"). This, as the Principal Statement, is expressed by the Infinitive, as you have already learned in **465**.

c. The next thing is a Command, which in the original form would be expressed by an Imperative, **sub collēs discēdite**, "withdraw under the hills." But the Imperative cannot be used here, because that mood is, by its very nature, the form for *direct* command. Some other mood must therefore be employed, and this must have in effect the same power. Obviously the Volitive Subjunctive has it, and so completely meets the needs. The same holds true similarly in Prohibitions (*negative commands*).

d. The next thing originally said was: "Those who shall leave that place," **quī ex eō locō excēderint** (Future Perfect Indicative), "before the battle shall be over, will be expelled from the valley." The future idea in "who shall leave," being thrown back into the past, becomes a *past*-future idea (just as **priusquam dēcertātum esset,** "before the battle should be finished," is); and you already know (**381**) that the one and only way which the Romans had for expressing a past-future idea in a dependent clause by a single verb is the Anticipatory Subjunctive. In this indirect telling of the story, then, the Future Perfect Indicative must necessarily become a Subjunctive.

e. In other words, the Future or Future Perfect Indicative would necessarily go over into the Subjunctive if the time of the main verb was past; and the Imperative would necessarily do so, no matter what the time was. *But the two things happened so often that it seemed natural to put ALL clauses in Indirect Discourse* (except the Principal Statement) *into the same mood; and this became the fixed habit.*

We may then sum up as follows:

THE CONSTRUCTIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Summary)

533. *In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statement is put in the Infinitive, with Subject Accusative (which may be omitted if perfectly clear). All other verbs that would be in the Indicative if in Direct Discourse, and all Commands or Prohibitions, are put in the Subjunctive.* Thus:

Nūntius imperātōrī dīcit quid factum sit; sī prōgrediātur, magnō eum in perīculō futūrum esse, quia itinera interclūsa sint, *the messenger tells the general what has been done; that, if he shall advance, he will be in great danger, because the roads are blocked.*

a. **Quid factum sit** stands for **quid factum est?** a Question of Fact: *what has been done?*

b. **Sī prōgrediātur** stands for **sī prōgrediēris,** a more Vivid Future Condition: *if you shall advance.* (Note the change of Persons.)

c. **Quia itinera interclūsa sint** stands for **quia itinera interclūsa sunt,** a Clause of Cause or Reason with **quia:** *because the roads are blocked.* (Cf. **517.**)

534. Table of the Constructions of Indirect Discourse by Kinds

CONSTRUCTION	EXPRESSED BY
Indirect (Principal) Statements of Fact	Infinitive with Subject Accusative
Indirect Questions of Fact	Subjunctive
Indirect Commands or Prohibitions	Subjunctive (**ut, nē**)
Clauses Subordinate to any of these	Subjunctive

535.

VOCABULARY

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (con- + clāmō), *shout vigorously, shout out.*

cōnsultō, Adv., *purposely, intentionally.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (dē + mittō), *send down, let down.* **Mē dēmittō,** *I descend, come down.*

exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, slight.*

initium, -ī, N. 2, *beginning.*

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1 (in + stō, stand on against), *press on.*

interior, *inner.* See **531.**

orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *circle.* **In orbem cōnsistō,** *take position in a circle.*

partim, Adv., *partly.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (prae + faciō, make to be in front), *put in command (of).*

quasi, Adv. (cf. quam and sī), *as if, almost.*

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (re- + ferō), irr., *bring back.* **Pedem referō,** *I retreat, retire.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, 3, *draw, drag; drag out.*

vōx, vōcis, F. 3, *voice.*

536.

READING MATTER

Tum clāmat Mārcus, "Quid vīs? Cūr rem trahis? Sī cōpiās nostrās exiguās timēs, cūr nōn in intimā silvā mānsistī?" Ad quae quaesīvit Lūcius, ubi Mārcus reliquōs in īnsidiīs conlocāvisset, quī sibi subsidium ferrent? Is respondet omnēs adesse omnēsque parātōs esse dīmicāre. Tum magnā vōce, ut hostēs audīre possent, suōs prōgredī iussit; sed lēgātīs quōs cornibus dextrō et sinistrō praefēcerat (ipse mediae aciēī praeerat) iam ante (*in advance*) docuerat quid in tālī rē facerent.

Conclāmant omnēs. Ācerrimē initiō pugnātum est. Tum Mārcus cum puerīs minōribus, quōs cōnsultō mediā aciē conlocāverat, pedem celeriter referunt; cornua tardius (Compar.) cēdunt. Hostēs, quī sē iam vīcisse crēderent, cupidē īnstāre. Ita fit ut omnēs mox Lūcī mīlitēs dē tumulō sēsē dēmīsissent, atque uterque exercitus quasi in orbem cōnstitisset. Tum tertia Mārcī aciēs, subitō partim ad dextram partim ad sinistram trānsgressa, hostīs adgressa est ā tergō. Sīc minor exercitus exercitum maiōrem aequō locō undique circumvēnerat, mīlitēsque Lūcī, ut superiōre pugnā, armīs commodē ūtī nōn poterant. Tum iūdicēs prōnūntiāvērunt Mārcum iterum vīcisse.

LESSON LXVIII

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

537. 1. Adverbs from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions commonly end in ē. Thus **tardus**, Adv. **tardē; aeger**, Adv. **aegrē**.

2. Adverbs from Adjectives of the Third Declension commonly end in -ter. Thus **dīligēns** (Gen. **dīligentis**), Adv. **dīligenter; ācer** (Gen. **ācris**), Adv. **ācriter**.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

538. In Comparison the Adverb follows the formation of the Adjective, except that the Comparative ends in -ius (like the Neuter Nominative-Accusative of the Comparative Adjective), and the Superlative in -ē. Thus:

tardē, *slowly*	**tardius**, *more slowly*	**tardissimē**, *most slowly*
dīligenter, *diligently*	**dīligentius**, *more diligently*	**dīligentissimē**, *most diligently*
ācriter, *fiercely*	**ācrius**, *more fiercely*	**ācerrimē**, *most fiercely*
facile, *easily*	**facilius**, *more easily*	**facillimē**, *most easily*

   a. **Magis** and **maximē** are often used, as with Adjectives (**511**, 4).

IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

539. The following show two or three different stems in the three Degrees (like the corresponding Adjectives given in **530**), or are otherwise peculiar or defective:

bene, *well*	**melius**, *better*	**optimē**, *best*
male, *ill*	**peius**, *worse*	**pessimē**, *worst*
magnopere, } *greatly* **multum,** } *much*	**magis**, *more*	**maximē**, *most*
multum, *much*	**plūs**, *more*	**plūrimum**, *most*
parum, *little*	**minus**, *less*	**minimē**, *least*
——————	**prius**, *before*	**prīmum**, *first*
prope, *near*	**propius**, *nearer*	**proximē**, *nearest, next*
saepe, *often*	**saepius**, *oftener*	**saepissimē**, *oftenest*

SPECIAL USES OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLA-
TIVE DEGREES

540. The Comparative Degree sometimes has the force of *rather
. . . .* or *too . . . .* , and the Superlative of *very . . . .* Thus:

cupidus, *eager*	cupidior, *too eager*	cupidissimus, *very eager*
cupidē, *eagerly*	cupidius, *too eagerly*	cupidissimē, *very eagerly*

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE
(More General Construction)

541. Specimen Sentences:

> Optimum est nōs īre, *It is best (for us to go,=) that we go.*
> Volō tē īre, *I want you to go.*

So in a variety of uses. Hence, we may say that:

542. *The Infinitive with Subject Accusative may be used
in dependence upon many Verbs and Phrases.*[1]

543. You will note that this construction comes into a sort of
rivalry with the Subjunctive construction. Compare the following:

> Volō tē īre, *I want you to go.*
> Volō ut tū eās, *I want (that you go,=) you to go.*

a. Some verbs and phrases admit either construction (as **volō**)
others the Subjunctive only (as **imperō**), others the Infinitive only
(as **iubeō** and **vetō**). You should note as you read, and remember.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION IN CLAUSES DEPENDING
UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE OR INFINITIVE

544. Specimen Sentences:

Mōs est ut rēgēs quī victī sint in triumphō dūcantur, *it is the custom
that kings who have been conquered should be led in triumph.*
Mōs est rēgēs quī victī sint in triumphō dūcī, *it is the custom for
kings who have been conquered to be led in triumph.*

---

[1] Another instance of the general development seen in the footnotes on
pages 181, 182, — due to the influence of the Infinitive with Subject Accusa-
tive in Indirect Discourse, and of such natural constructions of Accusative
and Infinitive as in "compel him to . . . ," "urge him to . . . , " where
the Infinitive was originally a Dative of Direction.

a. The Subjunctive Clauses in these sentences have no reason in themselves for being in that mood. If attached to Indicatives, *they* would *also* be Indicative (thus rēgēs quī victī sunt in triumphō dūcuntur, *kings who are conquered are led in triumph*). The reason for the mood here must therefore be that the clauses are *influenced* by the Subjunctive and Infinitive.

We may then lay down the rule that:

545. *A Dependent Clause attached to a Subjunctive or Infinitive Clause, and expressing an essential part of the thought conveyed by it, is put in the Subjunctive.*[1]

546.   **VOCABULARY**

accurrō, -currere, -currī and -cu-currī, —, 3 (ad+currō), *run up.*

Baculus, -ī, M. 2, a Roman name.

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3 (con-+nōscō, earlier form gnōscō), *learn thoroughly, find out; recognize.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (con-+mūtō) *completely change.*

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3 (con-+legō), *gather, collect.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (dē+faciō, make away), *fail.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3 (ē+rumpō), *break out, sally out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *sally.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (ex+capiō, take from some one), *receive, pick up.*

experior, experīrī, expertus sum, 4, *try.*

Galba, -ae, M. 1, a Roman name.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *kill.*

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (inter+mittō, send between), *intermit, stop.*

porta, -ae, F. 1, *gate.*

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, 3 (cf. reliquus), *leave.*

salūs, -ūtis, F. 3, *salvation, safety.*

sex, indecl. Adj., *six.*

Sextius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

spēs, -eī, F. 4, *hope.*

tantummodo, Adv. (tantum+modo, so much only), *merely.*

tēlum, -ī, N. 2, *missile.*

Volusēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

---

[1] This usage came about especially through the frequent occurrence (1) of dependent Subjunctive clauses which really owed their Mood to Indirect Discourse, but happened to be dependent upon other Subjunctive Clauses; (2) of past-future Subjunctives in dependence upon other Subjunctives; and (3) of Subjunctive clauses with real but not obvious mood-force, in dependence upon other Subjunctives (cf. **501**, 1, footnote 4). The use with the Infinitive is a still further extension.

547. READING MATTER

(An Incident from Real Warfare: Victory in a Desperate Situation)

Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex pugnārētur[1] ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, centuriō, et Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse[2] spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum[3] auxilium[3] experīrentur.[4] Itaque celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent[5] proelium ac tantummodo tēla quae missa essent[6] exciperent; post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret[7] neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Itaque commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem[8] potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs[9] interficiunt.[9]

548. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. They had now been fighting more than six hours and not only strength but missiles were failing. 2. Then a centurion and a tribune showed Galba that, unless they should try a desperate remedy, there was no hope of safety; (that) if, however, stopping[10] the battle[10] for a little, and merely picking up the missiles that should be sent, they should sally out by all the gates, they would leave the enemy no opportunity for collecting themselves or for knowing what was going on;[11] and would surround and kill those who had come to hope to possess the camp. And this[12] was done.

---

[1] Must mean HAD *now* BEEN. Note **hōrīs sex.**

[2] Indirect Principal Statement.

[3] = *a desperate remedy.*

[4] Indirect Future Condition.

[5] Indirect Command.

[6] Past-Future Subj., also in Indir. Disc., and also *suggesting* Attraction. Cf. footnote on opposite page.

[7] Indirect Question of Fact. Translate *what was going on.*

[8] *Had come* INTO *the hope* (notice the case), = *had come to hope.*

[9] *Kill those . . . . , surrounded.* In English, *surround and kill.*

[10] Use the Ablative Absolute.

[11] = "was being done."

[12] Use the *connecting* pronoun.

PART III: SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE GALLIC UPRISING OF 54 B. C.[1]

CHAPTER I

549. **Disposition of the Roman Army in Belgium for the Winter**

Eō annō propter frūmentī inopiam coāctus est Caesar legiōnēs in plūris cīvitātīs distribuere; ex quibus ūnam in[2] Morinōs dūcendam[3] C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō. Quārtam in[4] Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō ad fīnēs Trēvirōrum hiemāre iussit. Trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; hīs M. Crassum et L. Mūnātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem et cohortīs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.

---

[1] You have finished your study of forms and constructions, and are now to see how effectively you can use your knowledge, to understand what a Roman writer has to say. The Lessons from this point on tell the story of a dramatic chain of events in one of the Gallic campaigns of Julius Caesar. Five years before, Rome had possessed, of what we now know as France, a small territory in the southeast. Caesar, the Roman governor of this province and also of North Italy and a strip of country further east, checked an attempted westward migration of the Swiss, which threatened the province. From this beginning, he became involved (not unwillingly) in a series of wars; and, when our story opens, he had practically conquered France and Belgium, and had even made a tentative invasion of Britain. In all this, he was spreading the civilization which we have inherited.

In the autumn of 54 before Christ, his work was nearly undone by a sudden uprising, and the bad error of judgment of two of his lieutenants. Fortunately, he had not yet gone back to North Italy for the winter. These Chapters tell, in his own narrative (condensed), what happened.

[2] *Into* (note the Accusative) *the country of.*

[3] You see that the Future Passive Participle can serve to express *Purpose.*

[4] *In* (note the Ablative) *the country of.*

550.   VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, cöēgī, coāctum, 3 (con-+agō, drive together), *gather; compel.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, 3, *distribute.*

frūmentum, -ī, N. 2, *grain.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. hiems), *winter.*

inopia, -ae, F. 1, *want, lack, scarcity.* (Opposite of cōpia.)

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.*

quīnque, indecl. Adj., *five.*

ROMAN NAMES	ROMAN NAMES (CONT'D)	GALLIC NATIONS
Aurunculeius, -ī.	Rōscius, -ī.	Bellovacī, -ōrum.
Caesar, Caesaris.	Sabīnus, -ī.	Eburōnēs, -um.
Cicerō, -ōnis.	Titūrius, -ī.	Esuviī, -ōrum.
Cotta, -ae.	Titus, -ī.	Morinī, -ōrum.
Crassus, -ī.	Trebōnius, -ī.	Nerviī, -ōrum. Also
Fabius, -ī.		Sing. Nervius, *a Ner-*
Labiēnus, -ī.	GALLIC KINGS	*vian.*
Mūnātius, -ī.	Ambiorīx, -īgis.	Rēmī, -ōrum.
Plancus, -ī.	Catuvolcus, -ī.	Trēverī, -ōrum.

Abbreviations: C., Gāius; L., Lūcius; M., Mārcus; Q., Quīntus; T., Titus.

551.   MATTER FOR TRANSLATION[1]

1. There was a scarcity of grain this year. 2. If[2] the legions should winter[2] together, the supply[3] from the neighboring[4] country would fail.[2] 3. Caesar therefore distributed them among several states.

4. He gave one legion and five cohorts to Sabinus and Cotta to lead[5] into the country of the Eburones; (and) another legion to Labienus to lead into the country of the Remi. 5. Another legion he placed in the country of the Esuvii; (and) this he ordered Cicero to command. 6. Others he sent to different regions, with different lieutenants.

---

[1] The notes will now leave you more largely to your own power of thinking out Latin ways of expression, both for choice of words and for constructions.

[2] A Future Condition and Conclusion from a *past* point of view.

[3] Use cōpia.

[4] Use propinquus and loca.

[5] Purpose. Express it as Caesar did in the Latin opposite.

CHAPTER II

552.   **Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus**

Atque hārum omnium legiōnum hīberna mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur.[1] Caesar intereā, quoad[2] legiōnēs conlocātās mūnītaque hīberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

Ab omnibus, quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque esse mūnītum.

Diēbus quīndecim quibus[3] in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī,[4] Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī, ad castra oppugnātum vēnērunt.[4] Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent, atque, equitibus ēmissīs, equestrī proeliō superiōrēs[5] fuissent,[6] dēspērātā rē[6] hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī[7] aliquī[8] ex nostrīs ad conloquium prōdīret: habēre[9] sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent.[10]

---

[1] Tense of the Situation, the State of Affairs.

[2] Summary of ideas with words meaning *until* (**dum, dōnec,** and **quoad**):
{ Actual Act looked back upon,   Indicative.
{ Act looked forward to (Anticipated),   Subjunctive.

[3] *Within which.* In English we say *after.*

[4] Really *in*dependent. A Forward-Moving Relative Clause.

[5] *Higher* in what sense? If you cannot see, consult p. 208, footnote 1.

[6] Note *two* ways of introduction used together, the **cum-**Clause and the Ablative Absolute.

[7] At once, you see that a Volitive Substantive Clause is coming.

[8] Unusual use of **aliquī** as Substantive, in place of **aliquis**.

[9] This must be a Principal Statement in Indirect Discourse. Now look back at **utī . . . . prōdīret,** and you will find that the two fill out the meaning of the same verb, **conclāmāvērunt.** The *whole* is thus clearly in Indirect Discourse. This shows us once more that there is no real difference between a Volitive Clause after a verb of saying, and a Command in Indirect Discourse. The latter is only one particular instance of the former.

[10] Why is **vellent** Subjunctive, and what does it stand for?

553. VOCABULARY

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum, 3, *ascend, mount.*

centum, indecl. Adj., *a hundred.*

conloquium, -ī, N. 2, *colloquy.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (dē + spērō, hope), *despair (of).*

ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissum, 3 (ē + mittō), *send out.*

eques, equitis, M. 3, *horseman, cavalryman.* In Pl., *cavalry.*

equestris, -e, *cavalry* (as Adj.).

Gallia, -ae, F. 1, *Gaul.*

hīberna, -ōrum, N. 2, *a winter camp, winter quarters.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, 3 (in + pellō, drive on), *impel.*

Indūtiomārus, -ī, M. 2, name of a Gallic king.

intereā, Adv. (inter + eā), *meanwhile.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *delay.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, *construct, fortify.*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ob + pugnō), *besiege, attack (a fortified place).*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, irr. (prōd-, oldest form of prō, + eō), *come forth.*

quīndecim, indecl. Adj. (cf. quīnque and decem), *fifteen.*

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (re + dūcō), *lead back.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, 3 (trāns + dō), *hand over.*

tumultus, -ūs, M. 4, *disturbance, uprising.*

vāllum, -ī, N. 2, *wall, rampart.*

554. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Caesar waited until he was informed[1] that the legions had come into winter-quarters. 2. And, even then, he by chance delayed, which fact[2] was the salvation of the Roman power[3] in Gaul. 3. For when Cotta and Sabinus had constructed a camp, Ambiorix and Catuvolcus suddenly attacked it.

4. Our men, however, defended themselves fiercely, and the cavalry, being sent out from the camp, were[4] superior in a cavalry battle. 5. The barbarians then shouted-out that[5] some one of our men should[5] be sent to them for a conference, (saying) that they wished to talk about the common interest.[2]

---

[1] Is this an actual act looked back upon, or an act looked forward to?

[2] Use rēs,—a convenient general word. See two places in the Latin opposite.

[3] Say "for salvation to . . ."(428).

[4] Be careful of the tense. This will test your feeling.

[5] What kind of a clause, in English as in Latin?

CHAPTER III

555.   **The Parley**

Mittitur ad eōs conloquendī causā[1] C. Arpīneius, eques Rōmā-
nus, et Q. Iūnius; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum[2] locūtus
est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī
dēbēre; id quod fēcerit[3] dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum, nōn aut
iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis. Esse Gal-
liae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppugnandīs
hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō legiōnī subsidiō venīre
posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse.[4]

Quibus[5] quoniam[5] prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiō-
nem[6] officī prō beneficiō Caesaris: monēre, ōrāre Sabīnum, ut suae
ac mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum Rhē-
num trānsīsse: hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum[7] esse cōnsilium,
velintne,[8] prius quam fīnitimī sentiant, mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem
aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum quīnquā-
gintā, alter paulō amplius ab eīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī, tūtum
iter per fīnēs datūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne[9] habitā[9] discēdit Ambiorīx.

---

[1] (With the cause of,=) *for the sake of, with the purpose of.* **Causā** or
grātiā following a Gerund or Gerundive is a common way of expressing
Purpose.

[2] *After this fashion*, or *as follows.*

[3] *That which he had done.* Evidently a Determinative Clause. Why, then,
Subjunctive?

[4] *Gauls had not been able easily to deny Gauls*, i. e., *it wouldn't have been
easy for him, as a Gaul, to deny Gauls.*

[5] Double Connective (*whom since . . .*), where English would use but one
(*since . . . them*).—What mood have you learned is used with **quod, quia,
quoniam,** and **quandō (517)**? Why then the Subjunctive here?

[6] *Had reckoning of, took account of, had regard for.*

[7] *Their own counsel*, i. e., *a matter for themselves to decide.*

[8] **Velint-ne**, *whether they wanted, whether they chose.*

[9] *Having delivered this address.* What construction?

556.

Arpīneius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

beneficium, -ī, N. 2 (cf. **bene** and **faciō**), *well-doing, kindness.*

bīduum, -ī, N. 2, *two days.*

coāctus, -ūs, M. 4, *compulsion.*

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, 2, *confess.*

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3 (con- + loquor), *confer,*

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, 3, *consult (for), look out for.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2 (dē + habeō, have from), *owe; ought.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring.* Pl. as Subst., *neighbors.*

Iūnius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *say no, say . . . not, deny, refuse.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *speech, argument.*

pietās, -ātis, F. 3, *loyalty, patriotism.*

prō (same word as before), *in behalf of;* hence, *in return for.* Prep., taking Abl.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. Adj., *fifty.*

Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2, *the Rhine.*

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (satis + faciō), *do enough (for), satisfy.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

557. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The argument of Ambiorix was after this fashion: 2. I have not besieged your camp of my own will or judgment, but under the compulsion of the state. 3. The Gauls have formed a common plan to attack[1] all (of) Caesar's winter-camps on the same day. 4. I, a Gaul, could[2] not[2] say-no to the Gauls.

5. (But[3]) since I have now satisfied them, it is permitted to me to have regard for my duty in-return-for Caesar's kindness. 6. I speak for the sake[4] of warning you. 7. A great band of Germans has crossed the Rhine. 8. Before they shall[5] be present, I beg you to lead off your soldiers to (the camp of) Cicero or Labienus. 9. I will give you a safe conduct[6] through our territory.

---

[1] Of course you will not use the Infinitive in *Latin.*

[2] = "Was not able" (**nōn potuī**).

[3] Omit, and use double connective.

[4] Use **causā.**

[5] Is this looked back upon (Fact), or forward to (Anticipation)?

[6] Say "a safe journey."

CHAPTER IV

558. **Difference of Opinion. The Wrong Plan Prevails**

Arpīneius et Iūnius quae audierant[1] ad lēgātōs dēferunt.
Illī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur,[2] tamen nōn neglegenda[3]
exīstimābant.[2] Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, magnaque[4]
inter eōs exsistit contrōversia.[4] Cotta complūrēsque tribūnī
mīlitum nihil temerē agendum[3] neque ex hībernīs iniussū
Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant.[2] Contrā ea Sabīnus sērō
factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs
Germānīs convēnissent.[5] Magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī superi-
ōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam; brevem cōnsulendī[6] esse
occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam.

Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem
dat[7] Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-
nūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars
noctis. Prīmā lūce ex castrīs proficīscuntur, longissimō agmine
maximīsque impedīmentīs.

---

[1] What kind of clause is this?

[2] The tense expresses the *Situation*, the *State of Affairs*.

Tenses in Historical Writing { When one is talking about the past, Situation will always be expressed by the Imperfect or Past Perfect (which are the *Help-ing Tenses*); while the *Leading Events* will be expressed by Aorist Perfects or Picturesque Presents. Remember this in your own writing.

[3] **Esse** is omitted, as *very frequently* in Indirect Discourse.

[4] Adjective not only before the Noun (abnormal place), but *at the head of the clause;* while the Noun itself is *suspended*, to heighten curiosity. Write like this yourself.

[5] This, you see, had not yet occurred. The act was still to be done (future). The tense, then, is not a real Past Perfect, but a Past *Future* Perfect (future to **clāmitābat**, and finished before, i. e., Perfect to, **sērō factūrōs**). You will find the English tense by which you translate to corre-spond exactly.

[6] *Opportunity* OF, where we say FOR.

[7] **Dat . . . . manūs** = *yields*. Note the emphasis of order. Something finally *done* (dat) by Cotta,—namely, ... *giving up* (shown by **manūs**).

559. VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *think, suppose.*

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, 2, *burn, be in a blaze.*

brevis, -e, *short, small.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. clāmō), *keep crying out.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, 3 (con-, intensive, + sūmō, take up), *consume, spend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr. (dē + ferō), *carry off; report.*

disputātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *discussion.*

dolor, -ōris, M. 3, *pain.*

etsī (et + sī), Conj., *even if; although.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *estimate; think.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3 (ex + sistō, cause to stand out), *break out, arise.*

impedīmentum, -ī, N. 2 (as before), *hindrance,* in Pl., *baggage.*

iniussū, Adv., *without orders.*

lūx, lūcis, F. 3, *light.* Prīma lūx, *daylight.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *occasion, opportunity.*

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (per + dūcō, lead along), *prolong.*

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 (per + moveō, move), *move deeply.*

sērō, Adv., *late, too late.*

tandem, Adv., *at last.*

vigilia, -ae, F. 1, *watch, vigil.*

560. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. Some[1] spoke after this fashion: 2. The things which have been reported[2] to the council are said, not by a friend, but by an enemy. 3. Why should we trust an enemy? 4. Let us do nothing rashly. 5. We ought not to depart[3] from our winter quarters without orders from Caesar.

6. Against this, the argument of others[1] was after this fashion: 7. We shall act[4] too late when the Germans shall have joined themselves to the Gauls. 8. Before they shall be present in front of our camp, let us lead off our men to the nearest winter quarters. 9. Caesar has set out for Italy. 10. Let *us* set out without delay for (the camp of) Cicero or Labienus.

---

[1] Aliī . . . . aliī . . . . , in the proper cases.
[2] What kind of clause?
[3] Use Impersonal verb, as opposite ("it ought not to be departed by us").
[4] Use **faciō.**

CHAPTER V

561. **Ambuscade**

At hostēs posteā quam ex vigiliīs dē profectiōne eōrum sēn-sērunt,[1] conlocātīs īnsidiīs in silvīs Rōmānōrum adventum exspec-tābant; et cum sē maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīsisset,[2] ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt atque proelium committere coepērunt. Tum dēmum Sabīnus, quī nihil prōvīdisset,[3] trepidāre et concursāre. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset[4] haec posse in itinere accidere, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat.

Hī cum[5] propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē[6] omnia obīre et quid quōque[7] locō faciendum esset prōvidēre pos-sent,[8] iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod[9] cōnsilium, etsī in eius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit;[10] nam et[11] nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostīs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod[9] nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur.

---

[1] Aoristic Narrative Clause (**506**). **Posteā quam = postquam.**

[2] Descriptive **cum**-Clause of Situation (**487**). Practically interchangeable with the Aoristic Narrative Clause with **ubi, ut, postquam**, etc. (**506**, *a*).

[3] The mood shows that the idea is *Causal* (Causal **quī**-Clause; **479**).

[4] Contracted form (for **cōgitāvisset**). So *often* from stems in **-āvī, -ēvī, -īvī.**

[5] Don't think of a *translation* for **cum** as you read, but wait to see how the clause turns out. Here are the possibilities for it, if Subjunctive:

Possibilities of Subjunctive cum-Clause
- (Merely) Descriptive; *when* (**487**).
- Descriptive, with additional Causal or Adversative force; *when* (and *since*, or *although;* **488**).
- (Purely) Causal or Adversative; *since*, or *although* (**489**).

[6] *Through themselves*, that is, *in person.* The line was too long.

[7] This is **quōque**, not **quoque**. It is the Ablative of **quisque**, *each*.

[8] This proves to be a Causal **cum**-Clause (*since;* **489**).

[9] Always be on your guard with **quod** (Relative Pronoun *or* Conjunction)!

[10] *Fell*, in the sense of *happened*. (Compare English "befell.")

[11] After **nam**, **et** *cannot* mean "and." What then?

562. VOCABULARY

accidō, accidere, accidī, ——, 3 (ad+cadō), *befall, happen.*

adventus, -ūs, M. 4, *arrival.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptum est, defective, *began, started.*

concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. con- and currō), *run to and fro.*

convallis, -is, F. 3, *valley, defile.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *despair.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, irr. (dē+sum), *be wanting, fail.*

incommodē, Adv., *disadvantageously, unfortunately.*

longitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *length.*

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, 3 (cf. minus), *lessen, diminish.*

obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum, irr. (ob+eō, go to meet), *attend to.*

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum, 3, *show.*

profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *departure.*

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, 3, *censure.*

timor, -ōris, M. 3, *fear.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *be in a flutter, lose one's head.*

563. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The Gauls, placing[1] an ambuscade in the woods, waited until the army came-down[2] into a valley. 2. Then our men saw, too-late, that the enemy had broken faith. 3. They were now in the greatest danger. 4. Their line of march was very long, and a great multitude was attacking it on either side. ·

5. Cotta and Sabinus were not able to attend to everything in person. 6. They therefore ordered their men to leave the baggage and take-position in a circle. 7. This[3] plan is often to be approved in such a case; but it strengthened[4] the hope of the enemy, who believed[5] the Romans to be thoroughly frightened.

---

[1] The English Present Participle is often inexact in tense. The real tense-fact here is *Perfect* (HAVING *placed*. They didn't wait *while* placing, but *after* they had placed, *when* they had placed).— But Latin *has* no Perfect Active Participle.

Now, if cónlocō, *place*, were a *Deponent* verb, you could use the Perfect *Passive* Participle, which has active meaning (**315**). But it is not. Hence you must express the idea by a clause with a conjunction meaning *after* or *when* (**ubi**, etc., or **cum**), or by the Ablative Absolute, with Perfect *Passive* Participle. This happens often.

[2] Your translation will show whether you have mastered the *until*-Clauses.

[3] How can you tie this sentence neatly to the last one?

[4] Say "strengthened hope for the enemy," using cōnfirmō.

[5] Use the mood which will add the idea of *since.*

CHAPTER VI

564.   **A Desperate Battle. Gallic Strategy**

Nostrī omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns[1] quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant et, quam[2] in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint,[2] cēdant, rūrsus sē[3] ad signa recipientīs īnsequantur. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et ab iīs quī cesserant et ab iīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur.

Tamen multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant; et magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur,[4] nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant. Tum Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur, L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs ōrdinēs adhortāns in adversum[5] ōs fundā vulnerātur. Hīs rēbus permōtus[6] Sabīnus interpretem ad Ambiorīgem mittit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat.[7]

---

[1] This is a good illustration of the *Generalizing* Clause, which is very like a General Condition (**494** *a* and *b*): *As often as* (=*if at any time*) *any cohort charged, a great number of the enemy would fall.*

Note, now, the *equivalency* of several introductory words:

Quotiēns	quaeque	cohors prōcurrerat,	*as often as any cohort charged.*
Cum	quaepiam	cohors prōcurrerat,	*when* *any cohort charged.*
Quaecumque		cohors prōcurrerat,	*whatever* *cohort charged.*
Sī	qua	cohors prōcurrerat,	*if* *any cohort charged.*

All these are general, and all *assume* something as a fact; whence the Indicative mood (note the two **cum**-Clauses of this kind below).

[2] *In whatever direction.* General, in *future*, Indirect Discourse.

[3] Be careful! **Recipientīs** is active, and must have some Object.

[4] *Adversative* **cum**-Clause. For the tense-force, see **547**, footnote 1.

[5] *In the opposed face* = *full in the face.*

[6] Obviously *Situation.* This is what Participles regularly express.

[7] You see that the feeling is that of *Request* or *Entreaty* (cf. **529**, footnote 2).

565. VOCABULARY

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *encourage; exhort, urge.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3 (animus+ad+vertō, turn the mind to), *notice.*

conicio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (con- +iaciō), *hurl.*

fortiter, Adv., *bravely.* Compar. **fortius,** Superl. **fortissimē.**

funda, -ae, F. 1, *sling.*

interpres, -pretis, M. 3, *mediator, interpreter.*

Lūcānius, -ī, M. 2, a Roman name.

neu (also **nēve**), Conj., *and not, nor.* Corresponds to **nē,** as **nec** to **nōn.**

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *observe.*

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī or **parsī, parsūrus,** 3, *spare* (Verb of Attitude).

praeceptum, -ī, N. 2, *direction.*

procul, Adv., *at a distance, from a distance.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam or **quidpiam** (quis- declined as in quis-que, **200**), Indef. Adj., *any.*

quotiēns, Adv. and Conj., *how often, as often as.*

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *run back, retreat.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ask, request.*

rūrsus, Adv., *back, again.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (sub + veniō), *come to aid.*

vēlōciter, Adv., *swiftly.*

566. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The enemy hurled their javelins from a distance on all sides into the legion. 2. If any cohort charged, they would give-way. 3. When our men retired[1] again, both (those) who had given-way and those who had stood close-by would surround them. 4. Still they fought most bravely for many hours. 5. Then, when Cotta had been wounded full in the face by a sling, and[2] was no[2] longer[2] able to command his men, Sabinus sent an interpreter to Ambiorix to beg that he should spare those to whom he had promised[3] safe conduct.

---

[1] A *Generalizing* Clause. Compare the *if*-clause just above.—You remember also the Determinative **cum**-Clause (Indicative, **426**), which defines an individual time, just as a **quī**-Clause does a man, etc. We are ready, then, to put the Indicative **cum**-Clauses into a Summary, as follows:

Indicative cum-Clause { Determinative, fixing an individual time (**426**).
{ Generalizing, of a repeated action (footnote opposite and **494,** *a*).

[2] Say "nor now" (**nec iam**).   [3] You see that this is *Indirect.*

CHAPTER VII

567. The Trick. Destruction of the Army

Ambiorīx respondit: Sī velit[1] sēcum conloquī, licēre; eī nihil[2] nocitum īrī; in eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur,[3] pugnā ut excēdat et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat, atque in eō persevērat.

Sabīnus, quōs[4] tribūnōs[4] mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, et, cum[5] propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere[6] imperātum facit, suīsque ut[6] idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt,[7] paulātim circumventus interficitur.

Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant, impetūque in nostrōs factō[8] ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī[9] interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.[10]

---

[1] What kind of Condition would this be in Direct Discourse?

[2] Accusative of Extent. Translate *no harm AT ALL would be done him.*

[3] *If it should seem (best) to him.* What does the clause go with? Clauses in Latin are more likely to belong to something that is coming than to something that has preceded. Keep this constantly in mind in reading: *Most clauses modify FORWARD.*

[4] *What tribunes he had,* = *the tribunes whom,* etc. A common arrangement. Call it the RELATIVE CLAUSE LEADING.

[5] This is the *bare* cum-Clause of Situation (no additional idea).

[6] Note iubeō with Infinitive, but imperō with Subjunctive (**543**, *a*).

[7] Agō here means *deal with, discuss.*

[8] Translate by the (inexact) English Present Participle.

[9] They do it *to themselves* (sē), and *they themselves* do it (ipsī).—Our English expression is less full.

[10] Clearly Labienus ought now at once to send word to Caesar and all the other camps. See whether he does so.

568. VOCABULARY

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (ab + iaciō), *throw away; throw down, throw.*

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (ad + cēdō, move toward), *approach.*

condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *terms, condition(s).*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3 (ē + gradior, step out), *march out, go out.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3 (ē + lābor, slip), *slip out, escape.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3 (inter + pōnō), *put between;* with fidem, *pledge.*

paulātim, Adv. (cf. paulum), *little by little, gradually.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf. turba), *throw into confusion.*

propius, Compar. of prope, *near.* Adv., used as Prep.

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2 (subs, a form of sub, + teneō, hold up), *sustain.*

569. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. To this Ambiorix said: If Sabinus wishes to talk with me, I pledge my word that no harm will be done him. 2. Sabinus then sent an interpreter to[1] ask Cotta to go with him for the purpose[1] of conferring with Ambiorix. 3. Cotta answered: I will not leave the battle in order[1] to go[1] to an armed enemy.

4. Sabinus, upon (**cum; 487**) approaching Ambiorix and throwing down his arms, was surrounded and killed. 5. Then the barbarians attacked our men fiercely. 6. A-few-only escaped from the battle. 7. A small part with difficulty returned to the camp, and here, at night, all killed themselves to a man.

---

[1] You see here *three* English ways of expressing Purpose, and there are others, as with volitive "shall" and "for . . . . -ing" (cf. ad with Gerundive, etc.).—The ways in Latin may be summarized as follows:

Purpose may be expressed by
- Dative of an Abstract Noun.
- Quī, quō, ut, or nē, with the Subjunctive (volitive).
- The Supine in -um (only after verbs of motion).
- Ad with the Gerundive or Gerund.
- Causā or grātiā with Genitive of the Gerundive or Gerund.
- The Future Passive Participle in agreement with the Object of a verb.

Remember that: *Purpose is never expressed by the Infinitive in Latin prose.*

CHAPTER VIII

570. An Attempt to surprise **Cicero's Camp** fails.   The Siege

Barbarī ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant magnāque manū legi-
ōnem oppugnāre incipiunt.   Nostrī celeriter ad arma concur-
runt,[1] vāllum ascendunt.[1]   Aegrē is diēs sustentātur.

Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra
oppugnant.   Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne[2] quā prīdiē resistitur.
Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus.   Tunc ducēs Nerviōrum
cum Cicerōne conloquī sēsē velle dīcēbant.   Factā potestāte,
eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Sabīnō ēgerat,[3] commemorant: licēre
illīs ex hībernīs discēdere et sine metū proficīscī.   Cicerō ad
haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī
Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē barbarī fervefacta iacula in casās,
quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt.
Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt.   At tanta mīlitum virtūs
fuit atque ea[4] praesentia animī, ut, cum[5] undique flammā tor-
rērentur, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet[6] nēmō,[6] sed paene nē
respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum ācerrimē fortissimēque
pugnārent.

---

[1] Note the rapid movement of the narration, without connectives.

[2] *By the same theory,* = *in the same way.*   An Ablative of Means which
has *become* an Ablative of Manner.   This is one of the common expressions
of Manner into which a Preposition never came; **512,** *b.*

[3] *Had discussed with Sabinus,* = *had urged upon him.*   What kind of clause?

[4] You see in this passage an easy proof of what you learned in **422;**
namely that the Pronoun **is** can be used just like an Adjective (=tālis).
Ea here is actually yoked up (by **et**) with the Adjective **tanta** (*so great . . . .
and such . . . . , that*).

[5] The Situation in which (and *in spite of which*) no one left the rampart.
Descriptive **cum**-Clause of Situation, with additional adversative idea; **488.**
Note that English "when" has the same power (example in **572, 7**).

[6] Which is changed in position to give emphasis, **dēcēderet,** or **nēmō**?

571.   VOCABULARY

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ad
  + volō, fly), *fly (to), rush (to).*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
  1 (make to remember), *state,*
  mention.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -pre-
  hendī, -prehēnsum, 3, *seize,*
  catch.

concurrō, -currere, -currī and
  -cucurrī, -cursum, 3 (con-+
  currō), *run together, rush.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī,-factum,
  3, *heat red hot.*

flamma, -ae, F. 1, *flame, fire.*

iaculum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin.*

metus, -ūs, M. 4, *fear.*

paene, Adv., *almost.*

populus, -ī, M. 2, *people.*

praesentia, -ae, F. 1, *presence.*

prīdiē, Adv., *the day before.*

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
  tum, 3 (re + -spiciō; cf. spectō),
  look back, look around.

strāmentum, -ī, N. 2, *straw.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (cf.
  sustineō) *sustain.*

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum,
  2, *scorch, burn.*

tunc, *then,* a stronger tum (from
  tum + -ce, = *that* then).

572.   .MATTER FOR TRANSLATION [1]

1. The barbarians flew to[2] attack Cicero's winter-quarters
before he should hear of the battle.   2. Our men defended them-
selves with difficulty.   3. The enemy[3] attacked on the following
day and on several days in succession.   4. Then, an opportunity
for conferring with Cicero being given (them), they warned and
begged him to lead[4] his troops out of their territory.   5. To which
he answered: "It is not the custom of the Roman people to
receive terms from an armed enemy."

6. On the seventh day of the siege, the presence of mind of
our soldiers saved the camp.   7. For even when[5] their cabins
had caught fire, no one left the ramparts.

---

[1] Use picturesque tenses freely for practice, not only with main verbs,
but in subordinate clauses (though *never with* cum).

[2] Express this purpose by **ad** with Gerundive, for practice.

[3] Is "the enemy" really Singular or Plural in meaning?

[4] Request or Entreaty. In Latin, a Substantive Clause (cf. **529**, footnote 2).

[5] Situation *in spite of which.*

CHAPTER IX

573.   A Letter is carried through to Caesar

Erat[1] ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, quī ad Cicerōnem
perfūgerat. Hic servō persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Cae-
sarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert, et Gallus inter
Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne ad Caesarem pervenit.

Caesar acceptīs[2] litterīs[2] hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī statim[3]
nūntium ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius hīberna aberant[1] ab eō
mīlia passuum vīgintī quīnque. Iubet mediā nocte legiōnem
proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō[4] Crassus.
Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit. Scrībit[5] Labiēnō, sī reī[6]
pūblicae[6] commodō[6] facere possit, cum legiōne ad fīnīs Nervi-
ōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat[1]
longius, nōn putat exspectandam. Equitēs circiter quadrin-
gentōs ex proximīs hībernīs conligit.

Hōrā circiter tertiā dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē
mīlia passuum vīgintī prōgreditur. Fabius, nōn multum mo-
rātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

---

[1] What is the meaning of the *Imperfect?*   Would the Perfect be right
here?

[2] Translate by the (inexact) English Present Active Participle, *receiving.*

[3] Note the promptness with which Caesar acts, and to which he had
trained his lieutenants.   You see that Crassus does more than is asked of him.
Caesar's political enemies said of him that he was a monster for vigi-
lance and quickness.   How much time did he allow for the covering of the
twenty-five miles by the messenger (who, of course, went on horseback)
and the start of Crassus?   How many hours was it before Crassus was near
Caesar's camp?   About how many miles must Crassus' legion have covered
before the evening of the first day?

[4] *With the messenger*, that is, without delaying at all.

[5] What follows may be a Statement (Infinitive), or an Indirect Question
(Subjunctive), or a Command (Subjunctive).   What does it turn out to be?

[6] (With advantage on the part of, =) *with advantage to the common good.*

574. VOCABULARY

circiter, Adv., and Prep. with Acc., *about.*

commodum, -ī, N. 2, *advantage.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, irr. (ex + ferō), *carry out* or *away.*

exeō, -īre, -iī and -īvī, -itum, irr. (ex + eō), *go out, march out.*

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (in + ligō, bind), *bind up.*

intus, Adv., *within.*

littera, -ae, F. 1, *letter* (of the alphabet). Pl., *a letter.*

longē (as before), *far.* Compar. longius, Superl. longissimē.

occurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3 (ob + currō, run against), *meet.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3 (per + fugiō, flee through), *take refuge, desert.*

praemium, -ī, N. 2, *reward.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3, *write.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *suspicion.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

Verticō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

vīgintī, indecl. Adj., *twenty.*

575. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. One of the Nervians, Vertico by name, had taken refuge with Cicero. 2. This (man) persuaded a slave to carry a letter to Caesar. 3. Having received it,[1] Caesar immediately wrote[2] to Crassus and Fabius to come quickly to him, leaving a small band only to defend their camps. 4. He also sent a message to Labienus to come to him, if[3] he should be able[3] to leave (= "go out from") his camp without serious danger. 5. The rest of the army, which was farther away, he determined not to wait for.

6. Crassus left (his camp) (upon) receiving Caesar's message, not delaying long. 7. (When) informed that he was approaching, Caesar set out with all his forces.

---

[1] You have now recently seen five ways of introducing the main verb:

Five Ways of Introducing the Main Verb:
- Ubi, ut, postquam, or simul atque with Indicative.
- Cum with Subjunctive.
- Dum, *while,* with Present Indicative.
- Participle.
- Ablative Absolute.

The first way is Aoristic (*absolute* tense), the others express Situation.

[2] What ideas *might* follow "wrote," and what idea *does* follow?

[3] Is this Direct Discourse, or Indirect? — Arrange in Latin order.

576.   CHAPTER X

**Caesar enters the Enemy's Country. How he sends a Message
to Cicero**

Labiēnus, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent,[1]
veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset,[2]
hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset,[2] litterās Caesarī remittit
quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset.[3]
Rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit.[4]

Caesar, cōnsiliō Labiēnī probātō, etsī opīniōne[5] trium legiōnum
dēiectus[5] ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium
in celeritāte[6] pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs[7] itineribus[7] in Nerviōrum
fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur,[8]
quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs
magnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.
Sī adīre nōn possit,[9] monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā intrā
mūnītiōnem abiciat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat prae-
ceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque
ab nostrīs bīduō animadversā tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspi-
citur, dēmpta[10] ad Cicerōnem dēfertur.[10]

---

[1] What is the main force of this clause, and what the additional one?

[2] Future in meaning. You have now seen examples enough to allow you
to say this: *Every tense of the Subjunctive has two forces, one that of the
Indicative of the same name, the other a future force.*

[3] Periphrastic (**233**, 2, *b*), — *was going to lead*, i. e., *would have to lead*.

[4] Caesar could get a message through, and Labienus could get one back.
Had Labienus then done his duty?

[5] *Cast down from his expectation* (*of having*), i. e., *disappointed in his
expectation* (*of having*). Translate **dēiectus reciderat** like two *main* verbs,
connected by *and*. — What is the force of the case of **opīniōne**?

[6] Again you see Caesar's quickness in thought and action.

[7] *With great days' marches,* = *with forced marches* (Abl. of Manner; **513**).

[8] Evidently an Indirect Question. Of what kind?

[9] Is this Condition direct, or indirect?

[10] In English, *is taken down and carried* (cf. footnote 5).

577.   **VOCABULARY**

adeō, adīre, adiī or adīvī, aditum, irr. (ad+eō, go to), *approach.*

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, 2, *adhere, stick.*

captīvus, -a, -um, *captive.*

celeritās, -ātis, F. 3, *swiftness, speed.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, 3 (con-+-spiciō, spy), *see.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (dē+iaciō, throw down), *cast down* (literally or figuratively).

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, 3 (dē, down+emō, take), *take down.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F. 3 (cf. mūniō), *fortification.*

opīniō, -ōnis, F. 3, *opinion; expectation.*

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, 3 (per+scrībō), *write fully, write out.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (prae+capiō, take in advance), *direct, order.*

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel., *how great, as great as.*

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, 3 (re+cadō), *fall back; be reduced to.*

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3 (re+mittō), *send back.*

similis, -e, *like, similar.*

trāgula, -ae, F. 1, (Gallic) *javelin.*

578.   **MATTER FOR TRANSLATION**

1. Labienus, however, sent back a letter to Caesar (to the effect) that[1] all the forces of the Treveri had collected[2] around his camp, and[3] that for this reason he could[3] not[3] accomplish[3] a departure without great danger.

2. Caesar, although he had only two legions, advanced by forced marches into the territory of the Nervii. 3. There he learned from captives how[1] great a force had besieged the camp. 4. He then persuaded a Gallic horseman to carry a letter to Cicero. 5. If he could[4] not[4] enter the fortification, he instructed (the man) to send a javelin within the camp. This was done. 6. The javelin was noticed on the third day, and Cicero thus learned that[1] Caesar was coming to aid him.

---

[1] Is this a Statement, a Question, or a Command?

[2] Say "had been collected."

[3] "And . . . . not"="nor." "Could"="was able to." For "accomplish," see Caesar's phrase in the Latin opposite.

[4] = "should not be able."

CHAPTER XI

579. The Gauls fly to meet Caesar. Approach of the two Armies. Caesar's Strategy

Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter mīlia sexāgintā.

Posterō diē Caesar lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus[1] trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs[2] tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre. Cōnsīdit, et quam[3] aequissimō[3] potest[3] locō[3] castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē,[4] vix hominum mīlium[5] septem, tamen quam maximē contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus[6] veniat.

Prīmā lūce hostium[7] equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs[7] equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre[8] vāllō mūnīrī portāsque caespitibus obstruī, atque in hīs administrandīs[9] rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

---

[1] One of the ways of introducing the main verb given in the table on p. 233. What others would be possible with this same verb **prōgredior?**

[2] **Erat** is singular. **Rēs** is therefore Nominative *singular* (not plural) or *Accusative* plural. Which is it?

[3] *In an* AS-MOST-FAVORABLE-HE-CAN *place*, i. e., *in as favorable a place as possible.* This use of **quam** and the Superlative with **possum** is very common. **Possum** is often dropped from the phrase, leaving merely **quam** *with the Superlative*, with the same idea. You will see it twice below with an Adverb (**quam maximē**).

[4] *Though it was small in itself*, i. e., *was naturally small.*

[5] What kind of Genitive is this?

[6] *To=in the eyes of.* What case, and how do you name the use?

[7] What is the force of the position of **hostium** and **nostrīs?**

[8] From a word which you have had. What degree of comparison?

[9] Could the Gerund have been written here by Roman usage?

580. VOCABULARY

caespes, -itis, M. 3, *sod, turf.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4 (con-+mūniō), *fortify.*

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, 3 (con-+sīdō, sit), *sit down; halt; camp.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1 (cf. cōnspiciō), *get sight of.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *contempt.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, 3 (con-+trahō, draw together), *contract.*

equitātus, -ūs, M. 4, *cavalry.*

explōrātor, -ōris, M. 3, *scout.*

inīquus, -a, -um (in+aequus, not even), *disadvantageous.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3, *block up, obstruct.*

rīvus, -ī, M. 2, *stream.*

sexāgintā, indecl. Adj. *sixty.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *pretense.*

tantulus, -a, -um, *so small, so little.*

581. MATTER FOR TRANSLATION

1. The Gauls, being informed through scouts that Caesar was approaching, determined to meet him on the way. 2. So Cicero's legion was saved, if[1] Caesar should conquer.[1]

3. Having[2] learned[2] this, Caesar advanced more slowly, seeking as favorable a place as possible for fighting. 4. Getting[3] sight[3] of the Gauls after[4] a[4] while[4] beyond a valley and stream, he fortified a camp.

5. When, at daybreak, the Gauls approached, the Roman cavalry, as had been directed, yielded, and retreated within the fortifications. 6. At the same time Caesar ordered his men to fortify the camp with a higher wall, and, in doing the work, to run to and fro as much as possible, with a pretense of fear. 7. In this way he came into the greatest contempt in-the-eyes-of[5] the enemy.

---

[1] Evidently a Future Condition.   From what point of view?

[2] In how many ways can you express this Perfect Active Participle?

[3] Evidently the English tense is not exact.

[4] Say "after something (**aliquantum**) of time."

[5] Express simply by the case of the word for "enemy."   What usage?

CHAPTER XII

582.   **The Gauls are themselves Surprised**

Quibus[1] omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trāns rīvum
trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt. Nostrīs vērō[2] etiam
dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex
omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs prō-
nūntiārī[3] iubent, seu[4] quis[4] Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram
tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre;[5] post id tempus nōn
fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut vāllum manū
scindere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā
equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostīs in[6] fugam[6] dat,[6] sīc utī omnīnō
pugnandī causā resisteret[7] nēmō; magnumque ex eīs numerum
occīdit atque omnīs armīs[8] exuit.[8]

Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdē-
bant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem perve-
nit. Prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn[9] decimum[9] quemque[9] esse
reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus,
quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae.[10]

---

[1] Be sure you translate into genuine English.

[2] The office of **vērō** is often, as here, merely to emphasize the preceding
word. Translate by stress of voice.

[3] At this point, you can't tell with certainty whether a Statement or a
Command is coming. And you don't need yet to know, any more than a
Roman did.

[4] As you read along, do you think it probable (knowing the habit of Latin
order) that the Condition beginning with **seu quis** belongs with what has
preceded, or with what is coming?

[5] *Now* do you find a Statement, or a Command?

[6] *Throws them into flight, puts them to flight.*

[7] Resistō (re + sistō) here has its original meaning, *make a stand.*

[8] That is, makes them drop their arms as they fly.

[9] *Not each tenth,* = *not one in ten.*

[10] What kind of a clause is this, and why Subjunctive?

583. VOCABULARY

circummittŏ,-mĭttere,-mīsī,-mis-sum, 3 (circum+mittŏ), *send around.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, 3, *despise.*

exuŏ,-uere,-uī,-ūtum, 3, *strip (of), deprive (of).*

incolumis, -e, *unharmed, safe.*

intercēdŏ, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-sum, 3 (inter+cēdŏ), *come between, intervene.*

occīdŏ, -cīdere, -cīsī, -cīsum, 3 (ob+caedŏ, cut against), *kill.*

praecō, -ōnis, M.,3, herald.

prōdūcŏ, -dūcere,-dūxī,-ductum, 3 (prō+dūcŏ), *lead forth; draw up, muster.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3 (prō, forth, +sequor, follow), *follow after, pursue.*

scindŏ, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, *tear, tear down.*

584. TRANSLATE INTO LATIN

1. The enemy, deceived by these things, approached nearer the camp, and drew up a line of battle on the disadvantageous ground which intervened between it and the stream. 2. They then sent heralds around to proclaim that they would spare those who should come over to them before the third hour. 3. They even began to tear down the rampart by hand; so great was their contempt of our men. 4. Then Caesar sent out his forces by all the gates. 5. The Gauls, thoroughly terrified by the sudden sally, took[1] to[1] flight,[1] and many of them were killed.

6. Upon[2] arriving[2] at the winter-camp, Caesar recognized with what wisdom and courage Cicero had managed everything, for there was not one soldier left in ten without a wound.

---

[1] Say *gave themselves into flight.*

[2] Use **cum** with the Subjunctive. This is the lightest touch of the **cum**-Clause of Situation. Always write the Subjunctive without hesitation *if the clause tells you something new* in the story; for then its office cannot be to fix the time (for the reader didn't even know the fact before), but must be to give the *circumstances* under which the main act took place (Description).

On the other hand, you would write the Indicative (*Determinative* **cum**-Clause; **426**) in such a sentence as "I have slept under pine trees which were tall, straight, beautiful pine trees when North America was dis-covered" (Edward Everett Hale, at American Forest Congress, 1905).

SUMMARY OF CONSTRUCTIONS

(The references are to paragraphs.   N. means footnote.)

USES OF THE CASES

AGREEMENT

585. As far as their forms can show, words agree with the
words they belong with.   Thus:

1. An Appositive or Predicate Noun agrees in Case with the
Substantive to which it belongs (**44, 26,** *a*).

2. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with
their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case (**119, 147,
226,** *a*).

3. Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents in Gender
and Number; but their Case depends upon their relations
in the Clauses to which they belong (**189**).

4. A Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person
(**95,** *b*).

NOMINATIVE

586. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative (**24**).

GENITIVE

587. The Genitive is used to express:

1. Possession (Possessive Genitive; **53**).

2. The Whole to which a Part Belongs (Genitive of the Whole;
202).

3. Material or Composition (**387**).

4. Kind or Measure (Descriptive Genitive.   A modifier is neces-
sary; **390, 1**).

5. The Object, with many Nouns or Adjectives, and Participles
used as Adjectives (Objective Genitive; **209**).

DATIVE

588. The Dative is used to express:

  I. The Idea of Figurative Direction, and others derived from it, as follows:

    1. The Indirect Object of a Verb (**65**).

    2. Tendency, Purpose, or Result; (Abstract Nouns, **428**).

    3. The Concrete Object For Which something is Intended (**430**).

    4. That Toward Which a Quality, Attitude, or Relation is Directed, after Adjectives and Verbs expressing any of these ideas (**67**).

    5. The Person to Whom an Act or State Refers, or whom it Concerns (Dative of Reference or Concern; **260**).

    6. The Person Judging (**295**).

    7. The Agent of the Future Passive Participle (**281**).

    8. Possession, with the Verb sum (**289**).

  II. The Person or Thing Affected, in a construction of several origins, as follows:

    1. After many Verbs Compounded with certain Prepositions (ad, ante, circum, con-, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super; **527**).

ACCUSATIVE

589. The Accusative is used to express:

  I. The Idea of Space-Relation, and others derived from it, as follows:

    1. Space-Relation (not separative or locative), with a variety of Prepositions (**78**; list in **592, II**).

    2. Extent of Space, Duration of Time, and Degree (**434**).

  II. The Idea of the Verb-Object, and others derived from it, as follows:

    1. The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb (**62**).

    2. A Predicate, as well as Direct, Object with Verbs of Making, Choosing, Having, Regarding, Calling, or Showing (**330**).

    3. The Subject of an Infinitive (**465, 542**).

VOCATIVE

590. The Vocative is used in Address (**45**).

ABLATIVE

591. The Ablative is used to express:

I. Separative (*from-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. With the Prepositions **ab, dē, ex, sine**; also with **prō, prae** (**74, 89, 175, 301**).
2. The Agent of the Passive Voice, with **ā** or **ab** (**126**).
3. The Point of View From Which (**411**).
4. Separation, with or without a Preposition, with Verbs (**519**).
5. Comparison (the "than" idea), where **quam** is not used (**457**).
6. Accordance, with certain very common words (**mōre,** etc.; **455** and *a*).

II. Sociative (*with-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. Accompaniment, with **cum**. May be omitted in military language, if the noun has a modifier and this is not a numeral (**507** and *a*).
2. Loosely connected modifications of various kinds (Ablative Absolute; **308**).
3. Means or Instrument (**274**).
4. Measure of Difference (**332**).
5. The Object of **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor** (**334**).

III. Locative (*in-* or *at-*) Ideas, as follows:

1. Place In Which something Is or Is Done, with **in** and **sub** (**74, 78,** *a,* **467**). May be omitted with certain very common words, like **locō, regiōne,** etc. (**410** and *a*).
2. That in Which one Trusts, with **fīdō** (**432**). But the Dative is regular with nouns denoting Persons (principle of **67**).

IV. Ideas originally expressed in *two* or *more* of the three ways given above (the *from*-way, the *with*-way, and the *in*-way).

1. Time At or Within Which (**399**).
2. Respect (**442**).
3. Kind or Physical Characteristics; also, in a few phrases, Mental State or Situation. A modifier is necessary (**390, 2**).
4. Cause or Reason (**440**).
5. Way or Manner, regularly without a Preposition. But Abstract Nouns in less frequent use take **cum** if there is no modifier, and *may* take it even if there is one (**513**).

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

592. Prepositions expressing the Separative,[1] Sociative, or Locative[2] Idea (also **prō** and **prae**) take the Ablative. Prepositions expressing *other* Space Ideas take the Accusative (**78**). Thus we have come to know:

I. With the Ablative: **ab, dē, ex, sine** (Separative); **prō, prae** (originally Separative); **cum** (Sociative); **in** and **sub** (Locative).

II. With the Accusative: **ad, ante, apud, circiter** and **circum, citrā, contrā, in, inter, intrā, ob, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, trāns, ultrā.**

593.   ORDINARY EXPRESSION OF PLACE (407)

1. Place From Which by the Separative Ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex.**
2. Place To Which by the Accusative with **ad, in,** or **sub.**
3. Place In Which by the Locative Ablative with **in** or **sub.**

594.   EXPRESSION OF PLACE WITH NAMES OF TOWNS, domus AND rūs (409)

1. Place From Which by the bare Ablative (similarly **domō** and **rūre**).
2. Place To Which by the bare Accusative (similarly **domum** and **rūs**).
3. Place In Which by the Genitive of the First or Second Declension Singular, and elsewhere by the bare Ablative (similarly **domī** and **rurī** or **rūre**).

USES OF THE VERB

IMPERATIVE

595. The Imperative (negative **nē**) is used to express Command, Advice, Request, Entreaty, and the like (**137**).

---

[1] *From, away from, out of,*—literal or figurative.
[2] This must be understood as meaning, by convenient usage, not *any* kind of place-idea, but only that of the place *in* or *within* which,—English *in, within, on, at, under.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

596. The Subjunctive is used as follows (negative **nē** for Will or Wish, **nōn** for Other Ideas):

I. To express an act as willed, anticipated, or wished; or as proper, likely, possible, or certain in an imagined case (**368**).

   A. Note especially the use of the Subjunctive of Will (Volitive) in:

      1. Exhortations, Commands, and Prohibitions (**347**, and n.).
      2. Deliberative (better called Volitive) Questions (**349, 354**).
      3. Clauses of Purpose, with **quī, quō, ut,** or **nē** (**351**).
      4. Volitive Substantive Clauses:
        After Verbs of Will or Endeavor, with **ut** or **nē** (**352**).
        After Verbs of Hindrance, Prevention, or Check, with **nē, quōminus,** or **quīn** (**352**).
      5. Clauses of Fear or Anxiety, with **nē** corresponding to English "that" and **ut** corresponding to English "that not" (**353**).

   B. Note also the use of the Subjunctive of Anticipation in:

      1. Clauses with words meaning "before" (**antequam, priusquam; 356**).
      2. Clauses with words meaning "until" (**dum, dōnec, quoad; 356, 552,** n. 2).
      3. All Past-Future Clauses expressed by a single verb-form (**382, 558,** n. 5).

II. In Fact-Clauses of Consecutive nature or origin: Thus in:
      1. Descriptive Clauses with **quī** or **cum** (**421,** 1; **487, 488**).
      2. Result Clauses with **ut, ut nōn,** or **quīn** (**421,** 2).
      3. Substantive Clauses with **ut** or **ut nōn** after Verbs of Bringing About or Existence (**421,** 3).
      4. Causal or Adversative **quī**-Clauses (**479**) and **cum**-Clauses (**489**).

III. In Conditions and Conclusions. See **600, 601**.

IV. In Indirect Discourse. See **602,** II, *a.*

V. By Attraction, in clauses closely attached to a Subjunctive or Infinitive (**545**).

INDICATIVE

597. The Indicative (negative **nōn**) is used to express an act as a fact, declaring, inquiring, or assuming. Thus in:

  I. Independent Statements and Questions of Fact.

 II. Determinative Clauses, with appropriate Relative or Conjunction. Thus especially in the:
  1. Determinative **quī**-Clause, fixing the *person who*, or *thing which* (**426**).
  2. Determinative **cum**-Clause, fixing the *time at which* (**426, 584**, n. 2).

III. Clauses of Actual Past Acts with words meaning "before" or "until" (**antequam** or **priusquam, dum, dōnec,** or **quoad**).

IV. Aoristic Narrative-Clauses, with **ubi, ut, postquam,** or **simul atque** (Perfect or Historical Present; **506**).

 V. Substantive **quod**-Clauses, and **quod**-Clauses of Respect (**444** and *a*).

VI. Clauses of Cause or Reason with **quod, quia, quoniam,** or **quandō** (**517**).

SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

598. Neutral Conditions and Conclusions in the Present or Past are expressed by the Indicative (**496**).

a. So frequently in Generalizing Clauses, with **sī, nisi,** a Relative, or a Conjunction (**494**, *a* and *b*; **566**, n. 1).

599. More Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Indicative tenses of Future time (the Future and Future Perfect; **498, 1**).

600. Less Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions are expressed by Subjunctive tenses of Future time (the so-called Present and Perfect; **498, 2**).

601. Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact are expressed by the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperfect refers to the Present, the Past Perfect to the Past (**524**).

INFINITIVE

602. The Infinitive is used:

I. As in English, to express the Subject, Object, or Complement of a Verb (**87,** *a, b*). Also in freer relations, in dependence upon many Verbs and Phrases (often in rivalry with a Subjunctive Substantive Clause; **543** and *a*). Its Subject is in the Accusative (**542**).

II. In Principal Statements of Fact in Indirect Discourse. Its Subject is then in the Accusative (**465**).

a. **General Rule for Indirect Discourse:** In Indirect Discourse the Principal Statement is put in the Infinitive, with Subject Accusative (which may be omitted if perfectly clear). All other verbs that would be in the Indicative if in Direct Discourse, and all Commands or Prohibitions, are put in the Subjunctive (**533**).

III. In lively Narration, in place of an Indicative. Its Subject is then in the Nominative (**515**).

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND

603. 1. The Gerundive is almost a Verbal Noun in force, but is itself still dependent upon a Substantive, with which it agrees (**303** *a,* **470, 1**).

2. The Gerund is a complete Verbal Noun, governed like a Noun, but capable, like a Verb, of governing a Substantive, and being modified by an Adverb (**471**).

604. The Gerundive and Gerund exist only in the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative cases, and (with the differences stated above) are precisely parallel in their uses. These are, in general, the same as the uses of Nouns (**473**).

SUPINE

605. 1. The Supine in **-um** is used to express Purpose after Verbs of Motion (**453, 1**).

2. The Supine in **-u** is used to express Respect with Adjectives (**453, 2**).

USES OF THE TENSES

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE

606. The tenses of the Infinitive and Participle express an act as, at the time of the verb on which they depend, *completed* (Perfect), *in progress* (Present), or *yet to come* (Future). They do not, of themselves alone, tell in what division of time the act lies. They are thus purely relative (**462**).

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

607. The tenses of the Indicative tell in what division of time the act lies, namely, in the Past, the Present, or the Future. Thus *I was building* (in the Past), *I shall build* (in the Future).

608. They are of two quite different kinds:

I. One kind represents an act as at a certain stage of advancement (completed, in progress, or yet to come) at a time which is thought of. Thus *he was painting a picture.* Such tenses, when attached to any other verb, are naturally understood as relative to that verb, as in *I saw the picture which he was painting.*

II. The other kind represents an act, *not* as in a certain stage of advancement at a certain time, but *as a whole, in the lump.* Thus *he painted a picture.* Such tenses are absolute.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

609. The tenses of the Subjunctive have the same forces as the tenses of the Indicative of the same name; and, in addition, each has a future force (**576**, 2).

Thus in **videō quid faciās,** *I see what you are doing,* **faciās** is present; but in **tē ōrō ut id faciās,** *I beg you to do this,* **faciās** is future.

a. In conditions and conclusions contrary to fact, the Imperfect tense has gained a new power, that of referring to the Present (**524**). This will be omitted in the table below.

610. The following table, grouping the tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive, shows *the division of time* to which each carries the mind, the *kind* to which it belongs, and the *natural combinations*.

Flight of Time	Past »»»»»»»» ———	Present	Future ———→
MOODS:	INDIC. & SUBJ.	INDIC. & SUBJ.	INDIC. & SUBJ.
Absolute Tenses:	Perfect	Present	Future
Relative Tenses:	Imperf., Past Perf.	Pres., Pres. Perf.	Fut., Fut. Perf. (Subj. Pres., Perf. used over again)

THE NATURAL HARMONY OF TENSES
("Sequence")

611. The natural combinations in what we have to say (in Latin as in English) are of main tenses with relative tenses *of their own time*,—i. e., past tenses with relative tenses of the *past*, present with relative tenses of the *present*, and future with relative tenses of the *future*.   That is to say:

612. In combinations of main and dependent verbs, whether Subjunctive or Indicative, a verb of the past is generally accompanied by the Imperfect or Past Perfect, a verb of the present by the Present or Perfect, and a verb of the future by the Future or Future Perfect (replaced, in the Subjunctive, by the Present or Perfect).

a. But the Narrative Clause with ubi, ut, postquam, and simul atque is regularly aoristic (i. e. *absolute*, *un*related).   Thus "when the barbarians *came*," not "*had come*."

b. The tenses of the present are often used picturesquely in place of the soberer tenses of the past, to put past events before us as now *taking place*.   The subordinate verbs are likewise generally picturesque, but sometimes sober.

SUMMARY OF FORMS

DECLENSIONS, COMPARISON, NUMERALS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

613. The Declensions of Nouns are divided as follows:

First Declension:	a-Stems
Second Declension:	o-Stems
Third Declension:	Consonant or i-Stems
Fourth Declension:	u-Stems
Fifth Declension:	ē-Stems

FIRST DECLENSION: ā-*Stems*

614. serva, (*woman*) *slave*, F.

Stem		servā-	*Endings*
			F. (or M.)
Sing.	*Nom.*	serva	-a
	Gen.	servae	-ae
	Dat.	servae	-ae
	Acc.	servam	-am
	Voc.	serva	-a
	Abl.	servā	-ā
Pl.	*Nom.*	servae	-ae
	Gen.	servārum	-ārum
	Dat.	servīs	-īs
	Acc.	servās	-ās
	Voc.	servae	-ae
	Abl.	servīs	-īs

SECOND DECLENSION: o-*Stems*

615.   o-STEMS, in -us and -um

servus, *slave*, M.   dōnum, *gift*, N.

Stem		**servo-**	**dōno-**	*Endings*	
				M. and F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	servus	dōnum	-us	-um
	Gen.	servī	dōnī	-ī	
	Dat.	servŏ	dōnŏ	-ŏ	
	Acc.	servum	dōnum	-um	
	Voc.	serve	dōnum	-e	-um
	Abl.	servŏ	dōnŏ	-ŏ	
Pl.	*Nom.*	servī	dōna	-ī	-a
	Gen.	servŏrum	dōnŏrum	-ŏrum	
	Dat.	servīs	dōnīs	-īs	
	Acc.	servŏs	dōna	-ŏs	-a
	Voc.	servī	dōna	-ī	-a
	Abl.	servīs	dōnīs	-īs	

616.   SHORTENED ro-STEMS, in -er and -ir

puer, *boy*, M.   ager, *field*, M.   vir, *man*, M.

Stem		**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**	*Endings*
Sing.	*Nom.*	puer	ager	vir	As above,
	Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	except in
	Dat.	puerŏ	agrŏ	virŏ	Nom.-voc.
	Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	Sing.
	Voc.	puer	ager	vir	
	Abl.	puerŏ	agrŏ	virŏ	
Pl.	*Nom.*	puerī	agrī	virī	
	Gen.	puerŏrum	agrŏrum	virŏrum	
	Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	
	Acc.	puerŏs	agrŏs	virŏs	
	Voc.	puerī	agrī	virī	
	Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	

THIRD DECLENSION

617. CONSONANT STEMS

rēx, *king*, M. mīles, *soldier*, M. caput, *head*, N.

Stem	rēg-	mīlit-	capit-	*Endings*	
				M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	rēx	mīles	caput	-s *or* —	—
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	caput	-em	—
Voc.	rēx	mīles	caput	-s *or* —	—
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	capite	-e	-e
Pl. Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Voc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

618. CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

victor, *victor*, M. pater, *father*, M. rōbur, *oak*, N.

Stem	victōr-	patr-	rōbor-	*Endings*
				As above
Sing. Nom.	victor	pater	rōbur	
Gen.	victōris	patris	rōboris	
Dat.	victōrī	patrī	rōborī	
Acc.	victōrem	patrem	rōbur	
Voc.	victor	pater	rōbur	
Abl.	victōre	patre	rōbore	
Pl. Nom.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora	
Gen.	victōrum	patrum	rōborum	
Dat.	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus	
Acc.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora	
Voc.	victōrēs	patrēs	rōbora	
Abl.	victōribus	patribus	rōboribus	

THIRD DECLENSION

619.   CONSONANT STEMS (Continued)

sermō, *talk*, M.   multitūdō, *multitude*, F.   nōmen, *name*, N.

Stem	sermōn-	multitūdin-	nōmin-	*Endings*
Sing. Nom.	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	As
Gen.	sermōnis	multitūdinis	nōminis	given
Dat.	sermōnī	multitūdinī	nōminī	in
Acc.	sermōnem	multitūdinem	nōmen	**(617)**
Voc.	sermō	multitūdō	nōmen	
Abl.	sermōne	multitūdine	nōmine	
Pl. Nom.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Gen.	sermōnum	multitūdinum	nōminum	
Dat.	sermōnibus	multitūdinibus	nōminibus	
Acc.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Voc.	sermōnēs	multitūdinēs	nōmina	
Abl.	sermōnibus	multitūdinibus	nōminibus	

620.   CONSONANT STEMS (Finished)

(The Stems of these Nouns formerly ended in **s**. But **s** between vowels became **r**).

pulvis, *dust*, M.   mōs, *custom*, M.   corpus, *body*, N.

Stem	pulver-	mōr-	corpor-	
(Formerly	pulves-	mōs-	corpos-)	*Endings*
Sing. Nom.	pulvis	mōs	corpus	As
Gen.	pulveris	mōris	corporis	given
Dat.	pulverī	mōrī	corporī	in
Acc.	pulverem	mōrem	corpus	**(617)**
Voc.	pulvis	mōs	corpus	
Abl.	pulvere	mōre	corpore	
Pl. Nom.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Gen.	pulverum	mōrum	corporum	
Dat.	pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	
Acc.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Voc.	pulverēs	mōrēs	corpora	
Abl.	pulveribus	mōribus	corporibus	

THIRD DECLENSION: i-*Stems*

621.   NEUTER i-STEMS

		īnsigne, *signal,* N.	**animal,** *animal,* N.	**exemplar,** *pattern,* N.	*Endings*
Stem		**īnsigni-**	**animāli-**	**exemplāri-**	
Sing.	*Nom.*	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
	Gen.	īnsignis	animālis	exemplāris	-is
	Dat.	īnsignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
	Acc.	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
	Voc.	īnsigne	animal	exemplar	-e, —
	Abl.	īnsignī	animālī	exemplārī	-ī
Pl.	*Nom.*	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
	Gen.	īnsignium	animālium	exemplārium	-ium
	Dat.	īnsignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus
	Acc.	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
	Voc.	īnsignia	animālia	exemplāria	-ia
	Abl.	īnsignibus	animālibus	exemplāribus	-ibus

622. MASC. AND FEM. i-STEMS

(Mostly like Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

MIXED STEMS

(Consonant Stems in Sing., but i-Stems in Plural.)

fīnis, *end,* M. caedēs, *slaughter,* F. nox, *night,* F. gēns, *race,* F.

		fīni-	caedi-	noct- in Sing. nocti- in Pl.	gent- in Sing. genti- in Pl.
Stem					
Sing.	*Nom.*	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
	Gen.	fīnis	caedis	noctis	gentis
	Dat.	fīnī	caedī	noctī	gentī
	Acc.	fīnem	caedem	noctem	gentem
	Voc.	fīnis	caedēs	nox	gēns
	Abl.	fīne	caede	nocte	gente
Pl.	*Nom.*	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
	Gen.	fīnium	caedium	noctium	gentium
	Dat.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus
	Acc.	fīnīs (-ēs)	caedīs (-ēs)	noctīs (-ēs)	gentīs (-ēs)
	Voc.	fīnēs	caedēs	noctēs	gentēs
	Abl.	fīnibus	caedibus	noctibus	gentibus

THIRD DECLENSION (Finished)

623. EXCEPTIONAL i-STEMS

		turris, *tower*, F.	ignis, *fire*, M.
Stem		turri-	igni-
Sing.	*Nom.*	turris	ignis
	Gen.	turris	ignis
	Dat.	turrī	ignī
	Acc.	turrim (rarely -em)	ignem
	Voc.	turris	ignis
	Abl.	turrī (-e)	ignī (-e)
Pl.	*Nom.*	turrēs	ignēs
	Gen.	turrium	ignium
	Dat.	turribus	ignibus
	Acc.	turrīs (-ēs)	ignīs (-ēs)
	Voc.	turrēs	ignēs
	Abl.	turribus	ignibus

a. These Exceptional Stems show i in the *Singular,* as well as in the Plural.

VESUVIUS IN THE ERUPTION OF 1906
View taken from the Observatory

624.   **FOURTH DECLENSION : u-*Stems***

cāsus, *chance*, M.   cornū, *horn*, N.

Stem	cāsu-	cornu-	*Endings*	
			M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	cāsuī, -ū	cornū	-uī, -ū	-ū
Acc.	cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
Voc.	cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
Abl.	cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
Pl. Nom.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Voc.	cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

625.   **FIFTH DECLENSION : ē-*Stems***

diēs, *day*, M. and F.   rēs, *thing*, F.

Stem	diē-	rē-	*Endings*
Sing. Nom.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	reī	-ēī *or* -eī
Dat.	diēī	reī	-ēī *or* -eī
Acc.	diem	rem	-em
Voc.	diēs	ιēs	-ēs
Abl.	diē	rē	-ē
Pl. Nom.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum	-ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Voc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

The Genitive and Dative Singular have long e (ē) after a vowel, but short e after a consonant. Thus diēī, but reī.

626. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS

		domus, *house* or *home* (Mixed Second and Fourth)			**vīs,** *force* (Irregular Third)
Sing.	*Nom.*	domus	*Sing.*	*Nom.*	vīs
	Gen.	domūs *or* domī		*Gen.*	vīs (rare)
	Dat.	domuī *or* domō		*Dat.*	vī (rare)
	Acc.	domum		*Acc.*	vim
	Voc.	domus		*Voc.*	vīs
	Abl.	domū *or* domō		*Abl.*	vī
Pl.	*Nom.*	domūs	*Pl.*	*Nom.*	vīrēs
	Gen.	domuum *or* domōrum		*Gen.*	vīrium
	Dat.	domibus		*Dat.*	vīribus
	Acc.	domūs *or* domōs		*Acc.*	vīrīs (-ēs)
	Voc.	domūs		*Voc.*	vīrēs
	Abl.	domibus		*Abl.*	vīribus

HOUSE OF THE VETTII, POMPEII.   GARDEN COURT

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

627.   o- AND ā-STEMS

bonus, *good*

SINGULAR

Stem		bono-	bonā-	bono-
		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
	Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
	Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
	Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
	Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
	Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

Pl.	Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
	Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
	Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
	Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

628.   ro- AND rā-STEMS

miser, *miserable*   **piger,** *lazy*

SINGULAR   SINGULAR

Stem	misero-	miserā-	misero-	pigro-	pigrā-	pigro-
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Voc.	miser	misera	miserum	piger	pigra	pigrum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

PLURAL   PLURAL

Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT-STEM ADJECTIVES

629. Comparative Adjective   Adjective of One Ending

certior, *surer*   vetus, *old*

Stem	certiōr-		veter-	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
Gen.	certiōris	certiōris	veteris	veteris
Dat.	certiōrī	certiōrī	veterī	veterī
Acc.	certiōrem	certius	veterem	vetus
Voc.	certior	certius	vetus	vetus
Abl.	certiōre	certiōre	vetere	vetere
Pl. Nom.	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	certiōrum	certiōrum	veterum	veterum
Dat.	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
Voc.	certiōrēs	certiōra	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	certiōribus	certiōribus	veteribus	veteribus

a. All Comparative Adjectives are declined like **certior**.

b. There are very few common Consonant-Stem Adjectives of one ending.

ARCHES OF CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT NEAR ROME
Partly choked with earth. Water channel visible in middle

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

I-STEM ADJECTIVES

630.   **Of Three Endings**   **Of Two Endings**
                      ācer, *sharp*   fortis, *brave*

Stem		ācri-			forti-	
		M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
	Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis
	Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
	Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	forte
	Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	forte
	Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī
Pl.	*Nom.*	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
	Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium
	Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus
	Acc.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
	Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortia
	Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus

a. I-Stem Adjectives have the -i (ī) in the Abl. Sing., as well as in the regular places in the Plural.

631.   **Of One Ending: duplex,** *double*

                      Stem duplici-

		M. and F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	duplex	duplex
	Gen.	duplicis	duplicis
	Dat.	duplicī	duplicī
	Acc.	duplicem	duplex
	Voc.	duplex	duplex
	Abl.	duplicī	duplicī
Pl.	*Nom.*	duplicēs	duplicia
	Gen.	duplicium	duplicium
	Dat.	duplicibus	duplicibus
	Acc.	duplicīs (-ēs)	duplicia
	Voc.	duplicēs	duplicia
	Abl.	duplicibus	duplicibus

THIRD DECLENSION (Finished)

632.   PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

	amāns, *loving*		monēns, *warning*	
Stems	amant- in Sing.		monent- in Sing.	
	amanti- in Pl.		monenti- in Pl.	

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Sing. Nom.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
Gen.	amantis	amantis	monentis	monentis
Dat.	amantī	amantī	monentī	monentī
Acc.	amantem	amāns	monentem	monēns
Voc.	amāns	amāns	monēns	monēns
Abl.	amante *or* -ī	amante *or* -ī	monente *or* -ī	monente *or* -ī
Pl. Nom.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
Gen.	amantium	amantium	monentium	monentium
Dat.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus
Acc.	amantīs (-ēs)	amantia	monentīs (-ēs)	monentia
Voc.	amantēs	amantia	monentēs	monentia
Abl.	amantibus	amantibus	monentibus	monentibus

a. Present Participles are Mixed Stems (Abl. Sing. -e); but when used as *Adjectives*, they are i-Stems (Abl. Sing. -ī).

633. IRREGULAR: **plūs,** *more,* and **complūrēs,** *a good many*

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
			SINGULAR	
Nom.	——	plūs		
Gen.	——	plūris		
Dat.	——	——		
Acc.	——	plūs		
Voc.	——	——		
Abl.	——	plūre		
			PLURAL	
Nom.	plūrēs	plūra	complūrēs	complūria *or* -a
Gen.	plūrium	plūrium	complūrium	complūrium
Dat.	plūribus	plūribus	complūribus	complūribus
Acc.	plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra	complūrīs (-ēs)	complūria *or* -a
Voc.	——	——	——	——
Abl.	plūribus	plūribus	complūribus	complūribus

COMPARISON

634. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
certus	certior	certissimus
dīligēns	dīligentior	dīligentissimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
idōneus	magis idōneus	maximē idōneus

635. IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
multus, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*
parvus, *small*	minor, *smaller*	minimus, *smallest*

636. For a few Adjectives, the Positive is lacking or rare, or appears only in *Adverbs* or *Prepositions*. Thus:

citrā, *on this side*	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
ultrā, *beyond*	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest*
in, intrā, *within*	interior, *inner*	intimus, *innermost*
prope, *near*	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest*
prae, prō, *before*	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
exterus, *outside* (and ex)	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus / extimus } *outermost*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus / īmus } *lowest*
superus, *above* (and super)	superior, *higher*	suprēmus / summus } *highest*
posterus, *following* (and post)	posterior, *later*	postrēmus *last* / postumus *late-born*

637.   REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

tardē, *slowly*	tardius, *more slowly*	tardissimē, *most slowly*
dīligenter, *diligently*	dīligentius, *more diligently*	dīligentissimē, *most diligently*
ācriter, *fiercely*	ācrius, *more fiercely*	ācerrimē, *most fiercely*
facile, *easily*	facilius, *more easily*	facillimē, *most easily*

a. Magis and maximē are often used, as with Adjectives.

638. IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF
ADVERBS

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best*
male, *ill*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
magnopere, } *greatly,* multum, } *much*	magis, *more*	maximē, *most*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *most*
parum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least*
—————	prius, *before*	prīmum, *first*
prope, *near*	propius, *nearer*	proximē, *nearest, next*
saepe, *often*	saepius, *oftener*	saepissimē, *oftenest*

NUMERALS

639.   CARDINALS   ORDINALS

(Telling *how many*)   (Telling *which in order*)

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1	ūnus, *one*	prīmus, *first*
2	duo, *two*	secundus (or alter), *second*
3	trēs, *three*	tertius, *third*
4	quattuor, *four*, etc.	quārtus, *fourth*, etc.
5	quīnque	quīntus
6	sex	sextus
7	septem	septimus
8	octō	octāvus
9	novem	nōnus
10	decem	decimus
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12	duodecim	duodecimus
13	tredecim	tertius decimus
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17	septendecim	septimus decimus
18	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēnsimus
19	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēnsimus
20	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus
21	vīgintī ūnus *or*	vīcēnsimus prīmus *or*
	ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	ūnus et vīcēnsimus
30	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus
80	octōgintā	octogēnsimus
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus
100	centum	centēnsimus
101	centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus prīmus
120	centum (et) vīgintī, etc.	centēnsimus vīcēnsimus
121	centum vīgintī ūnus, etc.	cēntēnsimus vīcēnsimus prīmus
200	ducentī	ducentēnsimus
300	trecentī	trecentēnsimus
400	quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus
500	quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus
600	sescentī	sescentēnsimus
700	septingentī	septingentēnsimus
800	octingentī	octingentēnsimus
900	nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus
1,000	mīlle	mīllēnsimus
1,100	mīlle centum	mīllēnsimus centēnsimus
2,000	duo mīlia, etc.	bis (= *twice*) mīllēnsimus
10,000	decem mīlia, etc.	deciēns mīllēnsimus
100,000	centum mīlia, etc.	centiēns mīllēnsimus

640. DECLENSION OF **duo,** *two* (Similarly **ambō,** *both*)

Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs *or* duo	duās	duo
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

THE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

641. The Pronominal Adjectives and the Pronouns are in the main of the First and Second Declensions, but with the peculiar Pronominal Endings, -īus and -ī (sometimes -ius, pronounced like English -yoos, and -i) in the Genitive and Dative Singular. The individual points of each must be separately acquired. They are arranged below in the order of variation from the type first given.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

642. Nine Adjectives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, *except in the Genitive and Dative Singular*, which have the peculiar *Pronominal Endings* -īus and -ī in all genders. But alius has Neuter aliud, and its Genitive is generally replaced by alterīus, from alter. The nine words are:

ūnus, *one, only*	alius, *other, another* (of several)
ūllus, *any*	alter, *the other* (of two), *a second*
nūllus, *none, no*	uter, *which?* (of two)
sōlus, *sole, alone*	neuter, *neither* (of two)
	tōtus, *total, whole*

  a. Except ūnus and sōlus these lack the Vocative.

643. The Declension in the Singular is thus as follows:

tōtus, *whole*   alter, *the other*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	alterō	alterā	alterō

alius, *another*   uter, *which?* (of two)

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	(alterīus	alterīus	alterīus)	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	utrum	utram	utrum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	utrō	utrā	utrō

  a. The Plural is regular in all these words.

644.   ipse, *self*

		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
	Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	Voc.	———	———	———
	Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

		M.	F.	N.
Pl.	*Nom.*	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	Voc.	———	———	———
	Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

a. Notice that **ipse** *is declined precisely like the Pronominal Adjectives, except for the single form* **ipse** *itself.*

645.   ille, *that, he.* SIMILARLY iste, *this (that) of yours*

		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	ille	illa	illud
	Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus
	Dat.	illī	illī	illī
	Acc.	illum	illam	illud
	Voc.	———	———	———
	Abl.	illō	illā	illō

		M.	F.	N.
Pl.	*Nom.*	illī	illae	illa
	Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs
	Acc.	illōs	illās	illa
	Voc.	———	———	———
	Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. **Ille** *is like* **ipse,** *except for the* **d-***Neuter (Nom.-Acc. Sing.).*

646.   is, *this, that, the, he, she, it*

		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	is	ea	id
	Gen.	eius	eius	eius
	Dat.	eī	eī	eī
	Acc.	eum	eam	id
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	eō	eā	eō
Pl.	*Nom.*	eī *or* iī (ī)	eae	ea
	Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
	Dat.	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)
	Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)	eīs *or* iīs (īs)

647.   īdem, *the same*

		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	īdem	eadem	idem
	Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
	Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
	Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
Pl.	*Nom.*	eīdem *or* īdem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
	Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
	Dat.	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)
	Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)	eīsdem *or* īsdem (iīsdem)

a. Notice that īdem *is declined very nearly like* is *above, with* -dem *added.*

b. In the Plural of is, the preferred forms are spelled with two i's, but pronounced with one. In the Plural of īdem, the preferred forms are both spelled and pronounced with one i.

648.   hic, *this, he*

		M.	F.	N.
Sing.	*Nom.*	hic	haec	hoc
	Gen.	huius	huius	huius
	Dat.	huic	huic	huic
	Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc
Pl.	*Nom.*	hī	hae	haec
	Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs
	Acc.	hōs	hās	haec
	Voc.	——	——	——
	Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. **Hic** (for hi-ce), *together with* **quī, quis, quīdam,** *and* **quisque** (*next two pages*) *has a special pronominal ending* **-ae,** *in the Nom. Sing. Fem., and the Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl.*

THE ANIO AS IT DIVIDES ABOVE TIVOLI
Before its fall

649. quī, Rel. Pronoun, *who,*   quis, Interrog. Pronoun, *who?*
     and Interróg. Adjective, *what?*   (as Substantive)

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quem	quid
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quō	quō

(Same for both words) PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quīcumque**, *whoever*, is declined like **quī** with **-cumque** added.

650.   **quīdam,** *a certain*
Adjective and Substantive

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam *or* quiddam (Substantive)
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam *or* quiddam (Substantive)
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL (same for Adjective and Substantive)

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. Notice that **quīdam** *is declined like* **quī** *above with* **-dam** *added, but has also the Neuter Substantive form from* **quis.**

COMPOUNDS OF quis

(Compounds of **quis** have **quod-** Adjective and **quid-** Substantive.)

651. **quisquam**, *any at all* (Substantive)

	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam
Voc.	———	———
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

652. **quisque**, *each :* As Adjective   As Substantive

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quaeque	quodque	quisque	quidque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quemque	quidque
Voc.	———	———	———	———	———
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōque	quōque

a. Similarly **quispiam**, *any.*

653. **aliquis (aliquī)**, *some, any.* SIMILARLY **quis**, Indefinite

As Adjective   As Substantive

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	aliquis	aliquid
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod	aliquem	aliquid
Voc.	———	———	———	———	———
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō

PLURAL (same for Adjective and Substantive)

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. *Note that* **aliquis** *and the Indefinite* **quis** *are declined like Interrogative* **quis (649)**, *but with the adjective ending* -a *in place of the pronominal* **ae**.

654.   PERSONAL PRONOUNS   REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

       (*I, you*)   (*myself, yourself, himself, etc.*)

	First	Second	First	Second	Third
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR		
Nom.	ego	tū			
Gen.	meī	tuī	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Voc.	——	tū	——	——	——
Abl.	mē	tē	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
	PLURAL		PLURAL		
Nom.	nōs	vōs			
Gen.	nostrum, -trī	vestrum, -trī	nostrī	vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Voc.	——	vōs	——	——	——
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

a. The Pronouns of the *Third* Person are is, ille, hic, iste.

655.   CONJUGATION OF sum (Irregular)

(Given first because entering into Conjugation of the Regular Verbs.)

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present	
1st Sing.	sum, *I am*	sim
2d "	es, *thou art*	sīs
3d "	est, *he (she, it)is*	sit
1st Pl.	sumus, *we are*	sīmus
2d "	estis, *you are*	sītis
3d "	sunt, *they are*	sint
	Imperfect	
1st Sing.	eram, *I was*	essem
2d "	erās, *thou wast*	essēs
3d "	erat, *he was*	esset
1st Pl.	erāmus, *we were*	essēmus
2d "	erātis, *you were*	essētis
3d "	erant, *they were*	essent

Future

1st Sing.	erō, *I shall be*	
2d "	eris, *thou wilt be*	
3d "	erit, *he will be*	
1st Pl.	erimus, *we shall be*	
2d "	eritis, *you will be*	
3d "	erunt, *they will be*	

Perfect

1st Sing.	fuī, *I have been, was*	fuerim
2d "	fuistī, *thou hast been, wast*	fuerīs
3d "	fuit, *he has been, was*	fuerit
1st Pl.	fuimus, *we have been, were*	fuerīmus
2d "	fuistis, *you have been, were*	fuerītis
3d "	fuērunt, -ēre, *they have been, were*	fuerint

Past Perfect

1st Sing.	fueram, *I had been*	fuissem
2d "	fuerās, *thou hadst been*	fuissēs
3d "	fuerat, *he had been*	fuisset
1st Pl.	fuerāmus, *we had been*	fuissēmus
2d "	fuerātis, *you had been*	fuissētis
3d "	fuerant, *they had been*	fuissent

Future Perfect

1st Sing.	fuerō, *I shall have been*	
2d "	fueris, *thou wilt have been*	
3d "	fuerit, *he will have been*	
1st Pl.	fuerimus, *we shall have been*	
2d "	fueritis, *you will have been*	
3d "	fuerint, *they will have been*	

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d	es, *be thou*	este, *be ye*	
Fut. 2d	estō, *thou shalt be*	estōte, *you shall be*	
3d	estō, *he shall be*	suntō, *they shall be*	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse, *to be*	
Perf.	fuisse, *to have been*	
Fut.	futūrus esse, *or* fore, *to be about to be*	

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

656. FIRST CONJUGATION

amō, *love*

Principal Parts: amŏ amāre amāvī amātum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

amŏ	amem	amor	amer
amās	amēs	amāris, -re	amēris, -re
amat	amet	amātur	amētur
amāmus	amēmus	amāmur	amēmur
amātis	amētis	amāminī	amēminī
amant	ament	amantur	amentur

Imperfect

amăbam	amārem	amābar	amārer
amăbās	amārēs	amābāris, -re	amārēris, -re
amăbat	amāret	amābātur	amārētur
amăbāmus	amārēmus	amābāmur	amārēmur
amăbātis	amārētis	amābāminī	amārēminī
amăbant	amārent	amābantur	amārentur

Future

amăbŏ		amābor	
amăbis		amāberis, -re	
amăbit		amābitur	
amăbimus		amābimur	
amăbitis		amābiminī	
amăbunt		amābuntur	

Perfect

amāvī	amāverim	amātus sum	amātus sim
amāvistī	amāverīs	amātus es	amātus sīs
amāvit	amāverit	amātus est	amātus sit
amāvimus	amāverīmus	amātī sumus	amātī sīmus
amāvistis	amāverītis	amātī estis	amātī sītis
amāvērunt, -ēre	amāverint	amātī sunt	amātī sint

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
amāveram	amāvissem	amātus eram	amātus essem
amāverās	amāvissēs	amātus erās	amātus essēs
amāverat	amāvisset	amātus erat	amātus esset
amāverāmus	amāvissēmus	amātī erāmus	amātī essēmus
amāverātis	amāvissētis	amātī erātis	amātī essētis
amāverant	amāvissent	amātī erant	amātī essent

Future Perfect

amāverō		amātus erō	
amāveris		amātus eris	
amāverit		amātus erit	
amāverimus		amātī erimus	
amāveritis		amātī eritis	
amāverint		amātī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	amā	amāte		amāre	amāminī
Fut.	amātō	amātōte		amātor	amantor
	amātō	amantō		amātor	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amāre		amārī
Perf.	amāvisse		amātus esse
Fut.	amātūrus esse		amātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	amāns	*Perf.*	amātus
Fut.	amātūrus	*Fut.*	amandus

GERUND · GERUNDIVE

	GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	amandī	*Gen.*	amandī, -ae, -ī
Dat.	amandō	*Dat.*	amandō, -ae, -ō
Acc.	amandum	*Acc.*	amandum, -am, -um
Abl.	amandō	*Abl.*	amandō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

amātum, -ū

657.   **SECOND CONJUGATION**

moneō, *warn*

Principal Parts: moneō   monēre   monuī   monitum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneō	moneam	moneor	monear
monēs	moneās	monēris, -re	moneāris, -re
monet	moneat	monētur	moneātur
monēmus	moneāmus	monēmur	moneāmur
monētis	moneātis	monēminī	moneāminī
monent	moneant	monentur	moneantur

Imperfect

monēbam	monērem	monēbar	monērer
monēbās	monērēs	monēbāris, -re	monērēris, -re
monēbat	monēret	monēbātur	monērētur
monēbāmus	monērēmus	monēbāmur	monērēmur
monēbātis	monērētis	monēbāminī	monērēminī
monēbant	monērent	monēbantur	monērentur

Future

monēbō		monēbor	
monēbis		monēberis, -re	
monēbit		monēbitur	
monēbimus		monēbimur	
monēbitis		monēbiminī	
monēbunt		monēbuntur	

Perfect

monuī	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuistī	monuerīs	monitus es	monitus sīs
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerīmus	monitī sumus	monitī sīmus
monuistis	monuerītis	monitī estis	monitī sītis
monuērunt, -ēre	monuerint	monitī sunt	monitī sint

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

monueram	monuissem	monitus eram	monitus essem
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus erās	monitus essēs
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monitī erāmus	monitī essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	monitī erātis	monitī essētis
monuerant	monuissent	monitī erant	monitī essent

Future Perfect

monuerō		monitus erō	
monueris		monitus eris	
monuerit		monitus erit	
monuerimus		monitī erimus	
monueritis		monitī eritis	
monuerint		monitī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	monē	monēte	monēre	monēminī
Fut.	monētō	monētōte	monētor	
	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	monēre		monērī
Perf.	monuisse		monitus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse		monitum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	monēns	*Perf.*	monitus
Fut.	monitūrus	*Fut.*	monendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	monendī	*Gen.*	monendī, -ae, -ī
Dat.	monendō	*Dat.*	monendō, -ae, -ō
Acc.	monendum	*Acc.*	monendum, -am, -um
Abl.	monendō	*Abl.*	monendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

monitum, -ū

658. THIRD CONJUGATION

tegō, *cover*

Principal Parts: tegō   tegere   tēxī   tēctum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

tegō	tegam	tegor	tegar
tegis	tegās	tegeris, -re	tegāris, -re
tegit	tegat	tegitur	tegātur
tegimus	tegāmus	tegimur	tegāmur
tegitis	tegātis	tegiminī	tegāminī
tegunt	tegant	teguntur	tegantur

Imperfect

tegēbam	tegerem	tegēbar	tegerer
tegēbās	tegerēs	tegēbāris, -re	tegerēris, -re
tegēbat	tegeret	tegēbātur	tegerētur
tegēbāmus	tegerēmus	tegēbāmur	tegerēmur
tegēbātis	tegerētis	tegēbāminī	tegerēminī
tegēbant	tegerent	tegēbantur	tegerentur

Future

tegam		tegar	
tegēs		tegēris, -re	
teget		tegētur	
tegēmus		tegēmur	
tegētis		tegēminī	
tegent		tegentur	

Perfect

tēxī	tēxerim	tēctus sum	tēctus sim
tēxistī	tēxerīs	tēctus es	tēctus sīs
tēxit	tēxerit	tēctus est	tēctus sit
tēximus	tēxerīmus	tēctī sumus	tēctī sīmus
tēxistis	tēxerītis	tēctī estis	tēctī sītis
tēxērunt, -ēre	tēxerint	tēctī sunt	tēctī sint

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

tēxeram	tēxissem	tēctus eram	tēctus essem
tēxerās	tēxissēs	tēctus erās	tēctus essēs
tēxerat	tēxisset	tēctus erat	tēctus esset
tēxerāmus	tēxissēmus	tēctī erāmus	tēctī essēmus
tēxerātis	tēxissētis	tēctī erātis	tēctī essētis
tēxerant	tēxissent	tēctī erant	tēctī essent

Future Perfect

tēxerō	tēctus erō
tēxeris	tēctus eris
tēxerit	tēctus erit
tēxerimus	tēctī erimus
tēxeritis	tēctī eritis
tēxerint	tēctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	tege	tegite		tegere	tegiminī
Fut.	tegitō	tegitōte		tegitor	
	tegitō	teguntō		tegitor	teguntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	tegere	tegī
Perf.	tēxisse	tēctūrus esse
Fut.	tēctūrus esse	tēctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	tegēns		*Perf.*	tēctus
Fut.	tēctūrus		*Fut.*	tegendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	tegendī	*Gen.*	tegendī, -ae, -ī
Dat.	tegendō	*Dat.*	tegendō, -ae, -ō
Acc.	tegendum	*Acc.*	tegendum, -am, -um
Abl.	tegendō	*Abl.*	tegendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

tēctum, -ū

659.   THIRD CONJUGATION, IN -iŏ

capiŏ, *take*

Principal Parts: capiŏ capere cēpī captum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiŏ	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis, -re	capiāris, -re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur

Imperfect

capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
capiēbās	caperēs	capiēbāris, -re	caperēris, -re
capiēbat	caperet	capiēbātur	caperētur
capiēbāmus	caperēmus	capiēbāmur	caperēmur
capiēbātis	caperētis	capiēbāminī	caperēminī
capiēbant	caperent	capiēbantur	caperentur

Future

capiam		capiar	
capiēs		capiēris, -re	
capiet		capiētur	
capiēmus		capiēmur	
capiētis		capiēminī	
capient		capientur	

Perfect

cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
cēpistī	cēperīs	captus es	captus sīs
cēpit	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
cēpimus	cēperīmus	captī sumus	captī sīmus
cēpistis	cēperītis	captī estis	captī sītis
cēpērunt, -ēre	cēperint	captī sunt	captī sint

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essēs
cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	captī erāmus	captī essēmus
cēperātis	cēpissētis	captī erātis	captī essētis
cēperant	cēpissent	captī erant	captī essent

Future Perfect

INDICATIVE		INDICATIVE	
cēperō		captus erō	
cēperis		captus eris	
cēperit		captus erit	
cēperimus		captī erimus	
cēperitis		captī eritis	
cēperint		captī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
Fut.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns	*Perf.*	captus
Fut.	captūrus	*Fut.*	capiendus

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	capiendī	*Gen.*	capiendī, -ae, -ī
Dat.	capiendō	*Dat.*	capiendō, -ae, -ō
Acc.	capiendum	*Acc.*	capiendum, -am, -um
Abl.	capiendō	*Abl.*	capiendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

captum, -ū

660.   FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, *hear*

Principal Parts: audiō   audīre   audīvī   audītum

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
audīs	audiās	audīris, -re	audiāris, -re
audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
audītis	audiātis	audīminī	audiāminī
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur

Imperfect

audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, -re	audīrēris, -re
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāminī	audīrēminī
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur

Future

audiam		audiar	
audiēs		audiēris, -re	
audiet		audiētur	
audiēmus		audiēmur	
audiētis		audiēminī	
audient		audientur	

Perfect

audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvistī	audīverīs	audītus es	audītus sīs
audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverīmus	audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
audīvistis	audīverītis	audītī estis	audītī sītis
audīvērunt, -ēre	audīverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Past Perfect

audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audīverātis	audīvissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audīverant	audīvissent	audītī erant	audītī essent

Future Perfect

audīverō		audītus erō	
audīveris		audītus eris	
audīverit		audītus erit	
audīverimus		audītī erimus	
audīveritis		audītī eritis	
audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
Fut.	audītō	audītōte	audītor	
	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

| *Pres.* | audiēns | *Perf.* | audītus |
| *Fut.* | audītūrus | *Fut.* | audiendus |

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	audiendī	*Gen.*	audiendī, -ae, -ī
Dat.	audiendō	*Dat.*	audiendō, -ae, -ō
Acc.	audiendum	*Acc.*	audiendum, -am, -um
Abl.	audiendō	*Abl.*	audiendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

audītum, -ū

661. ### SYNOPSIS (BIRD'S-EYE-VIEW)

for three Specimen Verbs

Principal Parts			
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum, *love*
tegō	tegere	tēxī	tēctum, *cover*
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum, *hear*

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amō	tegō	audiō
Imperf.	amābam	tegēbam	audiēbam
Fut.	amābō	tegam	audiam
Perf.	amāvī	tēxī	audīvī
Past Perf.	amāveram	tēxeram	audīveram
Fut. Perf.	amāverō	tēxerō	audīverō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amem	tegam	audiam
Imperf.	amārem	tegerem	audīrem
Perf.	amāverim	tēxerim	audīverim
Past Perf.	amāvissem	tēxissem	audīvissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	amā	tege	audī
Fut.	amātō	tegitō	audītō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amāre	tegere	audīre
Perf.	amāvisse	tēxisse	audīvisse
Fut.	amātūrus esse	tēctūrus esse	audītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	amāns	tegēns	audiēns
Fut.	amātūrus	tēctūrus	audītūrus

GERUND

amandī, etc.	tegendī, etc.	audiendī, etc.

SUPINE

amātum, -ū	tēctum, -ū	audītum, -ū

SYNOPSIS

for three Specimen Verbs, Finished

Principal Parts			
	amor	amārī	amātus sum, *be loved*
	tegor	tegī	tēctus sum, *be covered*
	audior	audīrī	audītus sum, *be heard*

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amor	tegor	audior
Imperf.	amābar	tegēbar	audiēbar
Fut.	amābor	tegar	audiar
Perf.	amātus sum	tēctus sum	audītus sum
Past Perf.	amātus eram	tēctus eram	audītus eram
Fut. Perf.	amātus erō	tēctus erō	audītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amer	tegar	audiar
Imperf.	amārer	tegerer	audīrer
Perf.	amātus sim	tēctus sim	audītus sim
Past. Perf.	amātus essem	tēctus essem	audītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	amāre	tegere	audīre
Fut.	amātor	tegitor	audītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amārī	tegī	audīrī
Perf.	amātus esse	tēctus esse	audītus esse
Fut.	amātum īrī	tēctum īrī	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	amātus	tēctus	audītus
Fut.	amandus	tegendus	audiendus

GERUNDIVE

amandī, -ae, -ī, etc.	tegendī, -ae, -ī, etc.	audiendī, -ae, -ī, etc.

662.　　　CONJUGATION OF DEPONENTS

	Conj. I	mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *wonder at*
Principal	II	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *respect*
Parts:	III	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
	IV	partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *share*

INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
Pres.	mīror	vereor	sequor	partior
	mīrāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partīmur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
Imperf.	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
Fut.	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
Perf.	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
Past Perf.	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
Fut. Perf.	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	mīrer	verear	sequar	partiar
Imperf.	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
Perf.	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
Past Perf.	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
Fut.	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. Act.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Fut. Act.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
Perf. Pass.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut. Pass.	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUNDIVE AND GERUND

mīrandī, etc.　　verendī, etc.　　sequendī, etc.　　partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

mīrātum, -ū　　veritum, -ū　　secūtum, -ū　　partītum, -ū

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION
(or Roundabout Future)

663. The Periphrastic Conjugation is made up of the Future Active or Future Passive Participle with the verb **sum.** Thus:

ACTIVE

amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*	amātūrus sim
Imperf.	amātūrus eram, *I was about to love*	amātūrus essem
Fut.	amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love*	
Perf.	amātūrus fuī	amātūrus fuerim
Past Perf.	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem
Fut. Perf.	amātūrus fuerō	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amātūrus esse
Perf.	amātūrus fuisse

PASSIVE

amandus sum, *I (am to be loved) have to be loved*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	amandus sum, *I have to be loved*	amandus sim
Imperf.	amandus eram, *I had to be loved*	amandus essem
Fut.	amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*	
Perf.	amandus fuī	amandus fuerim
Past Perf.	amandus fueram	amandus fuissem
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuerō	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amandus esse
Perf.	amandus fuisse

a. The Periphrastic Future is, by its nature, confined to uses in which it *states*, or *assumes*, something as about to be done (as in "the war which the boys are going to wage," **bellum quod puerī gestūrī sunt,** or "if the boys are going to wage war," **sī puerī bellum gestūrī sunt**). Thus it cannot be used to express ordinary Purpose, for it would mean, for example, not "in order that the boys may wage war," but "in order that they may *be about to* wage war."

664.   CONJUGATION OF possum, *am able, can*

Principal Parts: possum   posse   potuī ———

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum	possim
	potes	possīs
	potest	possit
	possumus	possīmus
	potestis	possītis
	possunt	possint
Imperf.	poteram, -ās, -at, etc.	possem, -ēs, -et, etc.
Fut.	poterō, -is, -it, etc.	

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Perf.	potuī, -istī, -it, etc.	potuerim, -īs, -it, etc.
Past Perf.	potueram, -ās, -at, etc.	potuissem, -ēs, -et, etc.
Fut. Perf.	potuerō, -is, -it, etc.	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	potēns (which has become an Adjective)
Perf.	potuisse	

COINS OF THE EMPEROR HADRIAN
And Sabina, his wife

665.   CONJUGATION OF volō, nōlō, mālō

$$\text{Principal Parts}\begin{cases}\textbf{volō}\quad\textbf{velle}\quad\textbf{voluī}\ \text{------}\ will;\ want\\ \textbf{nōlō}\quad\textbf{nōlle}\quad\textbf{nōluī}\ \text{------}\ be\ unwilling\\ \textbf{mālō}\quad\textbf{mālle}\quad\textbf{māluī}\ \text{------}\ prefer\end{cases}$$

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim
	vīs	velīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
	vult	velit	nōn vult	nōlit
	volumus	velīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
	vultis	velītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint
Imperf.	volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem
Fut.	volam		nōlam	
Perf.	voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim
Past Perf.	volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem
Fut. Perf.	voluerō		nōluerō	

	INDIC.	SUBJ.		
Pres.	mālō	mālim		IMPERATIVE
	māvīs	mālīs	*Pres.* nōlī	nōlīte
	māvult	mālit	*Fut.* nōlītō	nōlītōte
	mālumus	mālīmus		
	māvultis	mālītis		
	mālunt	mālint		
Imperf.	mālēbam	māllem		
Fut.	mālam			
Perf.	māluī	māluerim		
Past Perf.	mālueram	māluissem		
Fut. Perf.	māluerō			

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.   volēns   nōlēns

666. CONJUGATION OF fīŏ, *become*

(= Passive of faciŏ)

(The Perfect System and the Future Passive Participle are formed regularly from faciŏ.)

Principal Parts: fīŏ   fierī   factus sum

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	fīŏ	——	fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	——	fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant
Imperf.	fīēbam		fierem	
Fut.	fīam			
Perf.	factus sum		factus sim	
Past Perf.	factus eram		factus essem	
Fut. Perf.	factus erō			

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. fī fīte		*Pres.* fierī	*Perf.* factus
		Perf. factus esse	*Fut.* faciendus
		Fut. factum īrī	

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
faciendī	faciendī, -ae, -ī
faciendō	faciendō, -ae, -ō
faciendum	faciendum, -am, -um
faciendō	faciendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

factum

factū

a. Prepositional compounds of faciŏ usually have the regular Passive. Thus the Principal Parts of cōnficiŏ are:

Active: cōnficiŏ, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.
Passive: cōnficior, cōnficī, cōnfectus sum.

---

[1] The i is long except in **fit** and before short **e** (thus **fierī, fierem**).

667. CONJUGATION OF eō, *go*

(Note the contracted forms.)

Principal Parts: eō īre iī (*or* īvī) itum

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
Imperf.	ībam		īrem	
Fut.	ībō			
Perf.	iī (*or* īvī)	iimus	īerim	
	īstī (*or* iistī)	īstis (*or* iistis)		
	iit (*or* īt)	iērunt (*or* iēre)		
Past Perf.	ieram		īssem	
Fut. Perf.	ierō			

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ī	īte	*Pres.*	īre	*Pres.*	iēns, iēns, Gen. euntis
Fut.	ītō	ītōte	*Perf.*	īsse (*or* iisse)	*Fut.*	itūrus
	ītō	euntō				
			Fut.	itūrus esse	*Fut. Pass.*	eundum (est, *Impersonal*)

GERUND

eundī
eundō
eundum
eundō

REMAINS OF ROMAN ROAD IN NORTHERN SYRIA
From Butler's "Architecture and Other Arts," by permission

668.   CONJUGATION OF ferō, *bear*

Principal Parts: ferō   ferre   tulī   lātum

	| Active |		| Passive |	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris *or* -e
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
Past Perf.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō		lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus (esse)
Fut.	lātūrus (esse)	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres. ferēns	*Perf.* lātus
Fut. lātūrus	*Fut.* ferendus

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
ferendī	ferendī, -ae, -ī
ferendō	ferendō, -ae, -ō
ferendum	ferendum, -am, -um
ferendō	ferendō, -ā, -ō

SUPINE

lātum, -ū

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The references are to sections. Figures in brackets refer to the Summary of Forms.

ā or ab, Prep. with Abl., *from, away from; by* (of Agent of Passive Voice). Ā fronte, etc., *on the front*, etc.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, *throw away, throw down, throw.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (also abfuī, abfutūrus), irr., *be away, be absent, be distant* [655].

ac, see atque.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *approach.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, ———, 3, *befall, happen.*

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *take, receive, accept.*

accurrō, -currere, -currī and -cu-currī, ———, 3, *run up.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, fierce*, 293 [630]. Compar. ācrior, Superl. ācerrimus, 511, 2 [634].

aciēs, -ēī, F. 5, *sharp edge, line of battle.*

ācriter, Adv., *keenly, fiercely.* Compar. ācrius, Superl. ācer-rimē, 538 [637].

ad, Prep. with Acc., *at, (near) by.* With idea of motion, aim, purpose, etc., *to, toward, for.* Ad hunc modum, *after this fashion.*

adeō, adīre, adiī (or adīvī), adi-tum, irr., *approach*, 503 [667].

adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum, irr., *bring (to)*, 522 [668].

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3, *step, go, go against, attack.*

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -hae-sūrus, 2, *adhere, stick.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *en-courage; exhort, urge.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, 3, *join (to).*

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1, *assist, aid.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *administer, manage, do.*

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *approach.* Word of Relation, taking Dat.

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *accustom (to).*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, irr., *be by, be present, be at hand, be here* [655].

adventus, -ūs, M. 4, *arrival.*

adversus, -a, -um, *adverse, opposed.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fly (to), rush (to).*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill.*

aegrē, Adv., *in an ill manner, ill, with difficulty* or *annoyance.*

aequē, Adv., *equally.*

aequus, -a, um, *equal; fair; favorable.*

aestās, -ātis, F. 3, *summer.*

ager, agrī, M. 2, *field,* **111** [616].

agmen, agminis, N. 3, *army* (on a march); *line of march.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3, *drive, lead; carry on, deal with, discuss; act, do; pass, spend.*

agricola, -ae, M. 1, *farmer.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, *eager.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, *some.* Neut. as Substantive = *somewhat.*

aliquis, aliquid (Adj. forms aliquī, aliqua, aliquod), Indefinite, *some, any one, any,* **207** [653].

aliquot, indecl. Adj., *some, several.*

aliter, Adv., *otherwise, differently.*

alius, -a, -ud, *other, another* (of several); *different, else.* Alius ... alius, *one ... another;* Pl. *some ... others,* **130** [643].

alter, -tera, -terum, *other, another* (of two), *a second.* Alter ... alter, *the one, the other;* Pl., *one party ... the other party,* **130** [643].

altior, *higher.* Compar. of altus, *high.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, lofty.*

amāns, *loving,* Pres. Act. Partic. of amō. Declension, **300** [632].

Ambiorīx, -īgis, M. 3, a name.

ambō, -ae, -ō, *both,* **328** [640].

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *walk.*

amīca, -ae, F. 1 (woman or girl), *friend.*

amīcus, -ī, M. 2 (man or boy), *friend.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *love, like* [656].

amplius, *more.* As Acc. of Degree, *more, further;* equivalent to an Adv. Compar. Neut. of amplus, *ample.*

amplus, -a, -um, *ample, large.*

an, Conj., *or* (in second part of a question).

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3, *notice.*

animal, -ālis, -ium, N. 3, *animal,* **270** [621].

animus, -ī, M. 2, *mind, spirit; feeling.*

annus, -ī, M. 2, *year.*

ante, Prep. with Acc., *before, in-front-of.* Also Adv., *before, in advance.*

anteā, Adv., *before this, before that, formerly.*

apertus, -a, -um, *open.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *address; call, name.*

aptus, -a, -um, *apt, fitted, fit.*

apud, Prep. with Acc., *at, among; at-the-house of.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *think, suppose.*

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, 2, *burn, be in a blaze.*

arma, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *arms, weapons.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *arm.*

Arpīneius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

ars, artis, -ium, F. 3, *art, skill.*

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum, 3, *ascend, mount.*

at, Conj., *but, yet.* Of contrast or objection. Not so strong as sed.

āthlēta, -ae, M. 1, *athlete.*

atque or ac, Conj., *and.* Of close connection, like -que.

auctōritās, -ātis, F. 3, *authority.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, *dare.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, *hear* [660].

Aurunculeius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

aut, Conj., *or.* Aut . . . aut . . . , *either . . . or . . .*

autem, Conj., postpositive, *on the other hand, but, however; now.* Of contrast, but not so strong as at **at**.

auxilium, -ī, N. 2, *aid, help.*

Baculus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian.*

beātus, -a, -um, *happy, blessed, fortunate.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

bellum, -ī, N. 2, *war.*

bene, Adv., *well.*

beneficium, -ī, N. 2, *well-doing, kindness.*

benignus, -a, -um, *good-natured, kind.* Word of Quality *and* Attitude, taking Dat.

bīduum, -ī, N. 2, *two-days.*

bonus, -a, -um, *good,* **117** [627].

bracchium, -ī, N. 2, (fore-) *arm.*

brevis, -e, *short, small.*

C., for Gāius.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3, *fall; befall, happen.*

caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *slaughter,* **271** [622].

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, 3, *cut, kill.*

Caesar, Caesaris, M. 3, a name.

caespes, -itis, M. 3, *sod, turf.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3, *take, take up.* Cōnsilium capiō, *form a plan* [659].

Capreae, -ārum, F. 1, *Capri.*

captīvus, -a, -um, *captive.*

caput, capitis, N. 3, *head,* **256** [617].

casa, -ae, F. 1, *cottage, cabin.*

castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, *chance, accident; case,* **369** [624].

Catuvolcus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

causa, -ae, F. 1, *cause, reason.* Causā with Gen. of Gerundive or Gerund, *for the purpose of.*

cautus, -a, -um, *cautious.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3, *yield; give way.* Word of Attitude, taking Dative.

celeritās, -ātis, F. 3, *swiftness, speed.*

celeriter, Adv., *swiftly, quickly.*

cēna, -ae, F. 1, *dinner.*

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *dine.*

centum, indecl. Adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, M. 3, *centurion* (commander of a company).

certāmen, -inis, N. 3, *contest.*

certē, Adv., *certainly, surely; at any rate, at least.*

certior, -ius, *surer, trustier.* Compar. of certus, *sure.* Certiōrem (or -ēs) faciō, *I inform.* Declension, **286** [629].

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *contend, strive.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure, assured, fixed; trusty.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

circiter, Prep. with Acc., and Adv., *about.*

circum, Prep. with Acc., *around, around in.* Also Adv., *around.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 1, *throw around, surround.*

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *send around.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *surround.*

citerior, -ius, *on this side, hither.* Compar.; cf. citrā, *on this side,* 531 [636].

citrā, Prep. with Acc., *on this side.*

cīvitās, -ātis, -ium (sometimes -um), F. 3, *state.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *keep crying out.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, M. 3, *shout.*

coāctus, -ūs, M. 4, *compulsion.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptum est, defective, *began, started.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think, plan.*

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3, *learn thoroughly, find out; recognize.*

cōgō, cōgere, cöēgī, coāctum, 3, *gather; compel.*

cohors, cohortis, -ium, F. 3, *cohort* (tenth part of a legion).

collis, -is, M. 3, *hill.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3, *cultivate.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *state, mention.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *join, commit.*

commodē, Adv., *conveniently, properly.*

commodum, -ī, N. 2, *advantage.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *communicate.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, *fortify.*

commūnis, -e, *common.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *completely change.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, 2, *fill thoroughly, fill up, fill.*

complūrēs, -plūria (or -a), -plūrium, *a good many,* 327 [633].

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, 3, *seize, catch.*

cōnātus, -ūs, M. 4, *attempt, undertaking.*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *yield, grant, concede.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *shout vigorously, shout out.*

concurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3, *run together, rush.*

concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *run to and fro.*

condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *terms, condition(s).*

condiscipulus, -ī, M. 2, *fellow-pupil, schoolmate.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded.*

cōnfestim, Adv., *immediately.*

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, 3, *finish, complete.*

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, 3, *trust (to), confide (in).* Word of Attitude, taking Dat. (also the Locative Abl.).

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *strengthen, establish.*

cōnfiteór, -fitērī, -fessus sum, 2, *confess.*

conicĭō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, *hurl*.

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3, *gather, collect*.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *place, station*.

conloquium, -ī, N. 2, *colloquy*.

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3, *confer*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *attempt, undertake*.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3, *follow vigorously, overtake; gain*.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *save, preserve*.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, 3, *sit down; halt; camp*.

cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2, *counsel, plan; judgment, wisdom; council*.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——— 3, *take position; halt*.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, 3, *see*.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *get sight of*.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3 (stronger than statuō), *establish, place; determine*.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3, *custom*.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, 3, *consult (for), look out for*.

cōnsultō, Adv., *purposely, intentionally*.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, sūmptum, 3, *consume, spend*.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, 3, *despise*.

contemptĭō, -ōnis, F. 3, *contempt*.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, 3, *strain; strive, hasten*.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, *hold in, hem in, keep*.

contrā, Prep. with Acc., *against*.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, 3, *contract*.

contrōversia, -ae, F. 1, *controversy*.

convallis, -is, F. 3, *valley, defile*.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *come together, meet*.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3, *turn about*. **Convertō signa**, *I wheel about*.

cōpia, -ae, F. 1, *abundance, supply*. In Pl., *resources*; (military) *forces*.

coqua, -ae, F. 1, *cook*.

Corfīnium, -ī, N. 2, *Corfinium*.

Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

cornū, -ūs, N. 4, *horn; wing* (of an army), **369** [624].

corpus, -oris, N. 3, *body*, **265** [620].

cotīdiē, Adv., *daily, every day*.

Cotta, -ae, M. 1, a name.

Crassus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, 3, *believe*. Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

culīna, -ae, F. 1, *kitchen*.

culpa, -ae, F. 1, *fault, blame*.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *blame, censure*.

cum, Prep. with Abl., *with*.

cum, Conj., *when, as; since; although*.

cūnctus, -a, -um, *all* (together), *whole*. In Pl., *all, everybody*.

cupidē, Adv., *eagerly*.

cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous*.

cupĭō, cupere, cupīvī (and cupiī), cupītum, 3, *desire, wish, want*.

cūr, Adv., *why?*

cūra, -ae, F. 1, *care, anxiety.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3, *run.*

cursus, -ūs, M. 4, *running, run.*

dē, Prep. with Abl., *down from, from* (of descent); *concerning about.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2, *owe; ought.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *go away, withdraw.*

decem, indecl. Adj., *ten.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *settle the war, fight it out.*

decimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *catch, deceive.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, 3, *give up.* Mē dēdō, *I give myself up* (to), *devote myself* (to); *surrender.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead off, lead away.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fatigue, tire out.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3, *defend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr., *carry off; report,* **522** [668].

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *fail.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3, *cast down.*

deinceps, Adv., *in succession, one after the other.*

deinde, Adv., *afterward, next; in the second place.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *deliberate.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *send down, let down.* Mē dēmittō, *descend, come down.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, 3, *take down.*

dēmum, Adv., *at last, finally.*

dēnique, Adv., *at last, finally; in short.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *desire.*

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, 3, *desist, stop.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *despair.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *despair (of).*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, irr., *be wanting, fail* [655].

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.* Dextra, -ae, as Noun, F. 1, *right hand.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3, *say, speak.*

dictum, -ī, N. 2, *saying, word.*

diēs, diēī, M. and F. 5, *day.* Diēs dictus, *day appointed,* **395** [625].

difficilis, -e, *difficult.* Compar. difficilior, Superl. difficillimus, **511**, 3 [634].

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.* Takes Abl.

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *decide (between).*

dīligēns, -ēns, Gen. -entis, *diligent, careful.* Compar., diligentior, Superl., dīligentissimus, **511**, 1 [634].

dīligenter, Adv., *diligently, carefully.* Compar., dīligentius, Superl., dīligentissimē, **538** [637].

dīligentia, -ae, F. 1, *diligence, carefulness.*

dīmicŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fight.*

discēdŏ, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *move off, depart.*

disciplīna, -ae, F. 1, *discipline.*

discipulus, -ī, M. 2, *pupil, schoolboy.*

discŏ, discere, didicī, ——, 3, *learn.*

displiceŏ, -plicēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, 2, *be displeasing, displease.* Verb of Quality, taking Dat.

disputātiŏ, -ōnis, F. 3., *discussion.*

distribuŏ, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, 3, *distribute.*

diū, Adv., *for a long time, long.*

dīversus, -a, -um, *different.*

dīvidŏ, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, 3, *divide.*

dŏ, dare, dedī, datum, 1, *give.* (For the short a, see **163**, ftn. 1).

doceŏ, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2, *teach, inform, tell, show.*

doleŏ, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2, *suffer, ache, grieve.*

dolor, -ōris, M. 3, *pain.*

dolus, -ī, M. 2, *trick, stratagem.*

domina, -ae, F. 1, *mistress.*

dominus, -ī, M. 2, *master.*

domus, -ūs and -ī, F. 4 and 2, *house, home,* **406** [626].

dōnec, Conj., *while; until.*

dōnum, -ī, N. 2, *gift, present,* **107** [615].

ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*

dūcŏ, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3, *lead.*

dum, Conj., *while; until.*

duo, -ae, -o, *two,* **328** [640].

duplex, duplex, Gen. duplicis, *twofold, double; ambiguous,* **293** [631].

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, stern, harsh.*

dux, ducis, M. 3, *leader, guide.*

ē or ex, Prep. with Abl., *out of, from; of* (in the sense of *from*). **Ex cōnsuētūdine suā,** *in accordance with his habit.* **Ex utrāque parte,** etc., *on either side,* etc.

Eburōnēs, -um, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

ēdūcŏ, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, 3, *lead out.*

efferŏ, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, irr., *carry out* or *away,* **522** [668].

efficiŏ, efficere, effēcī, effectum, 3, *make out, accomplish, bring about.*

ego, meī, *I,* **214** [654].

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, 3, *march out, go out.*

ēiciŏ, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, 3, *throw out.* **Mē ēiciŏ,** *I rush out.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3, *slip out, escape.*

ēligŏ, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, 3, *pick out, elect, choose.*

ēmittŏ, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissum, 3, *send out.*

enim, Conj., *for.* Like **nam,** but postpositive in its clause.

eŏ, īre, iī (or īvī), itum, irr., *go,* **503** [667].

eŏ, Adv., *thither, to that place.*

epistula, -ae, F. 1, *epistle, letter.*

eques, equitis, M. 3, *horseman, cavalryman.* In Pl., = *cavalry.*

equestris, -e, *cavalry* (as Adj.).

equitātus, -ūs, M. 4, *cavalry.*

equus, equī, M. 2, *horse.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3, *break out, sally out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *sally.*

Esuviī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

et, Conj., *and.* Et . . . et . . . *both . . . and . . .*

etiam, Conj. and Adv., *even, also.*

etsī, Conj., *even if; although.*

ex, see ē.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *come out (of), leave, withdraw.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *receive, pick up.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *rouse, rouse up, raise.*

exemplar, -āris, -ium, N. 3, *pattern,* **270** [621].

exemplum, -ī, N. 2, *example, precedent.*

exeō, -īre, -iī (or -īvī), -itum, irr., *go out, march out,* **503** [667].

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2, *exercise, practice, drill.*

exercitus, -ūs, M. 4, *army.*

exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, slight.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *estimate; think.*

experior, experīrī, expertus sum, 4, *try.*

explōrātor, -ōris, M. 3, *scout.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *explore, reconnoiter; find out.*

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3, *break out, arise.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *expect, await, wait for.*

extendō, extendere, extendī, extentum and extēnsum, 3, *stretch out, extend.*

exterior, -ius, *outer.* Compar. of exterus, *outside,* **531** [636].

exterus, -a, -um, *outside.*

extrēmus or extimus, *outermost, extreme, the edge of.* Superl. of exterus, *outside,* **531** [636].

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, *strip (of), deprive (of).*

Fabius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

facile, Adv., *easily,* Compar. facilius, Superl. facillimē, **538** [637].

facilis, -e, *easy.* Compar. facilior, Superl. facillimus, **511**, 3 [634].

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, *make, do, perform, act.* Factā potestāte, *opportunity being given.*

facultās, -ātis, F. 3, *facility; opportunity.*

fāma, -ae, F. 1, *fame, reputation.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2, *be favorable to, favor.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

fēmina, -ae, F. 1, *woman.*

ferē, Adv., *generally; about, almost.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, irr., *bear, bring, carry,* **522** [668].

ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, wild.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *heat red hot.*

fidēs, -eī, F. 5, *faith, loyalty; promise, word.*

fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, 3, *trust.*

fīlia, -ae, F. 1, *daughter.*

fīlius, fīlī, M. 2, *son.*

fīnis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *limit, end, boundary;* in Pl., *boundaries, territory,* **271** [622].

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring.* Pl. as Subst., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, irr., *become; be done; happen.* Used as Passive of faciō, **502** [666].

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *make firm, strengthen.*

flamma, -ae, F. 1, *flame, fire.*

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, 2, *weep, cry.*

flūmen, -inis, N. 3, *river.*

forsitan, Adv., *perhaps.* With Subjunctive of Possibility.

fortasse, Adv., *perhaps.*

forte, Adv., *by chance, perhaps.*

fortis, -e, *strong, brave,* **293** [630].

fortiter, Adv., *bravely.* Compar. fortius, Superl. fortissimē.

fortūna, -ae, F. 1, *fortune.*

frāter, frātris, M. 3, *brother.*

frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3, *forehead, front.*

frūmentum, -ī, N. 2, *grain.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, 3, *profit by, enjoy.* Takes Abl.

fuga, -ae, F. 1, *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3, *flee, run away.*

funda, -ae, F. 1, *sling.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, 3, *perform, discharge.* Takes Abl.

Gāius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Galba, -ae, M. 1, a name.

galea, -ae, F. 1, *helmet.*

Gallia, -ae, F. 1, *Gaul.*

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*

Gallus, *a Gaul.* Also a man's name, *Gallus.*

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, *rejoice, be glad of.*

gēns, gentis, -ium, F. 3, *race,* **271** [622].

genus, generis, N. 3, *race, kin; kind, class.*

Germānus, -ī, M. 2, *a German.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3, *carry, bear; carry on, wage, manage; do.*

gladius, -ī, M. 2, *sword.*

glōria, -ae, F. 1, *glory.*

gradus, -ūs, M. 4, *step.*

grātia, -ae, F. 1, *popularity, favor.*

grātus, -a, -um, *gratifying, pleasing, agreeable.* Word of Quality, taking Dat.

gravis, -e, *heavy, serious, grave.*

gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *be annoyed.*

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, *have; hold; regard.* Ōrātiōnem habeō, *deliver an address.* Prō certō habeō, *feel sure.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *inhabit, dwell, live.*

herī, Adv., *yesterday.*

hīberna, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2, *a winter camp, winter-quarters.*

hic, haec, hoc, *this; he, she, it; the latter,* **166** [648].

hīc, Adv., *in this place, here.*

hiemō, -āre,- āvī, -ātum, 1, *spend the winter, winter.*

hiems, hiemis, F. 3, *storm; winter.*

hodiē, Adv., *today.*

homō, hominis, 3, *man.* (The ordinary word for a man merely as a human being, whereas vir implies a compliment.)

honestus, -a, -um, *honorable.*

honor, -ōris, M. 3, *honor.*

hōra, -ae, F. 1, *hour.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *exhort, urge.*

hortus, -ī, M. 2, *garden.*

hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *enemy.*

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, 3, *throw.*

iaculum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin.*

iam, Adv., *by this time, already, now.*

ibi, Adv., *there.*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same,* **158** [647].

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit.* Compar. magis idōneus, Superl. maximē idōneus, **511,** 4 [634].

ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *fire* (Abl. Sing. -ī or -e), **278** [623].

ille, -a, -ud, *that; he, she, it; the former,* **145** [645].

imāgō, imāginis, F. 3, *image, likeness, representation.*

impedīmentum, -ī, N. 2, *hindrance.* In Pl., *baggage.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, 3, *impel.*

imperātor, -ōris, M. 3, *general* (in chief).

imperātum, -ī, N. 2, *command.*

imperium, -ī, N. 2, *command, sway; empire.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *command, order.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

impetus, -ūs, M. 4, *attack.*

impiger, -gra, -grum, *energetic, industrious.*

impigrē, Adv., *energetically, vigorously.*

īmus, see īnfimus.

in, Prep. with Abl. of rest, *in, on, upon;* with Acc. of motion (literal or figurative), *into, at, upon, against, for.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 3, *set on fire.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *begin.*

incolumis, -e, *unharmed, safe.*

incommodē, Adv., *disadvantageously, unfortunately.*

incommodum, -ī, N. 2, *trouble, misfortune.*

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy.* Takes Abl.

Indūtiomārus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

inermis, -e, *unarmed.*

īnferior, -ius, *lower.* Compar. of īnferus, *below,* **531** [636].

īnferus, -a, -um, *below.*

īnfimus, -a, -um, or īmus, -a, -um, *lowest.* Superl. of īnferior, *lower,* **531** [636].

ingenium, ingénī, N. 2, *intellect, ability.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

inimīcus, -ī, M. 2, *enemy.*

inīquus, -a, -um, *disadvantageous.*

initium, -ī, N. 2, *beginning.*

iniūria, -ae, F. 1, *injury, wrong.*

iniussū, Adv., *without orders.*

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *bind up.*

inopia, -ae, F. 1, *want, lack, scarcity.*

inquit, *says he,* or *said he.* Used in direct quotation, and always follows one or more words.

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, 3, *follow up, pursue.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, F. Pl., 1, *ambush, ambuscade.*

īnsigne, -is, -ium, N. 3, *decoration, badge, device; signal,* 270 [621].

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1, *press on.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, 3, *draw up.*

inter, Prep. with Acc., *between, among.* Inter sē, *with one another, together.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *come between, intervene.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, 3, *shut in, hem in, block.*

intereā, Adv., *meanwhile.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *kill.*

interim, Adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, *inner,* 531 [636].

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3, *intermit, stop.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3, *put between.* With fidem, *pledge.*

interpres, -pretis, M. 3, *mediator, interpreter.*

intervāllum, -ī, N. 2, *interval.*

intimus, -a, -um, *innermost.* Superlative of interior, *inner,* 531 [636].

intrā, Prep. with Acc., *within.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *enter.*

intus, Adv., *within.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *find, discover; invent.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *invite; attract.*

ipse, -a, -um, *self,* 139 [644].

īrātus, -a, -um, *angry.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

is, ea, id, *this, that, the; he, she, it,* 153 [646].

iste, -a, -ud, *this (of yours)* or *that (of yours); he, she, it,* 145, *a* [645].

ita, Adv., *in such a way, thus, so.* Ita ut (so as), *as.*

Italia, -ae, F. 1, *Italy.*

itaque, Adv., *and so, therefore, accordingly.*

iter, itineris, N. 3, *way, road, journey; march.* Magnum iter, *forced march.*

iterum, Adv., *again.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, 2, *bid, order.* Takes Infin.

iūdex, iūdicis, M. 3, *judge.*

iūdicium, -ī, N. 2, *judgment, opinion.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *judge.*

Iūlia, -ae, F. 1, *Julia.*

Iūlius, -ī, M. 2, *Julius.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, 3, *join.*

Iūnius, -ī, M. 2, *a name.*

iūstus, -a, -um, *just.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, 1, *help*

L., for Lūcius.

Labiēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

labor, labōris, M. 3, *labor, work, exertion.*

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, 3, *slip.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *labor, work.*

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, 3, *worry.*

laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *be delighted, rejoice.*

laetus, -a, -um, *joyous, glad, happy.*

lapillus, -ī, M. 2, *pebble.*

latus, -eris, N. 3, *side; lung.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *praise.*

lēgātus, -ī, M. 2, *ambassador; lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *legion* (division of an army).

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3, *pick, choose; read.*

lēx, lēgis, F. 3, *law, rule.*

libenter, Adv., *willingly.*

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, 2, impers., *be permitted.*

littera, -ae, F. 1, *letter* (of the alphabet). Pl., *a letter.*

locus, -ī, M. 2, *place.* Pl. loca, locōrum, N. 2.

longē, Adv., *far.* Compar. longius, Superl. longissimē.

longitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *length.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, *talk, converse.*

Lūcānius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Lūcius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

lūdus, -ī, M. 2, *play, sport, game.*

lūx, lūcis, F. 3, *light.* Prīma lūx, *daybreak.*

M., for Mārcus.

magis, Adv., *more.* Compar. of magnopere and multum, *much,* 539 [638].

magister, -trī, M. 2, *master* (= teacher).

magnopere, Adv., *greatly.*

magnus, -a, -um, *great, large, big.*

maior, maius, *greater, bigger.* Compar. of magnus, *great,* 530 [635].

male, Adv., *badly.*

maleficium, -ī, N. 2, *wrong-doing.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, ———, irr., *want more, prefer,* 493 [665].

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

māne, Adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2, *remain, continue.*

manus, -ūs, F. 4, *hand; band.*

Mārcus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

māter, mātris, F. 3, *mother.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *make ripe; hasten, make haste.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe.*

maximē, Adv., *in the largest degree, very greatly, exceedingly, very.* Superl. of magnopere and multum, *greatly, much,* 539 [638].

maximus, -a, -um, *greatest, largest, biggest; oldest.* Superl. of magnus, *great,* 530 [635].

meī, Reflexive, *of me,* 215 [654].

medius, -a, -um, *middle,* or *the-middle-of.*

melior, melius, *better.* Compar. of bonus, *good,* 530 [635].

melius, Adv., *better.* Compar. of bene, *well,* 539 [638].

meminī, -isse, defective, *remember.*

memoria, -ae, F. 1, *memory.*

merīdiēs, -ēī, M. 5, *midday.*

metus, -ūs, M. 4, *fear.*

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*

mīles, mīlitis, M. 3, *soldier,* **256** [617].

mīlitāris, -e, *military.* Ars mīlitāris, *art of war, tactics.*

mīlle, indecl. Adj., or Noun, *a thousand.* Pl. as Noun, mīlia, -ium, N. 3. Mīlle passuum = 5,000 feet, or a Roman mile.

minimē, Adv., *in the smallest degree, not at all; no.* Superl. of parum, *little,* **539** [638].

minimus, -a, -um, *smallest,* or *very small.* Superl. of parvus, *small,* **530** [635].

minor, minus, *smaller, less.* Compar. of parvus, *small,* **530** [635].

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, 3, *lessen, diminish.*

minus, Adv. *less.* Compar. of parum, *little,* **539** [638].

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *admire* [662].

miser, misera, miserum, *miserable, unhappy,* **117** [628].

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3, *send; throw* (a weapon).

modo, Adv., *just, only; just now.*

modus, -ī, M. 2, *measure; method, way, manner, fashion; kind.* Eius modī (huius modī), *of this kind, of such a kind, such.*

monēns, *warning,* Pres. Act. Partic. of moneō. Declension, **300** [632].

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2, *admonish, warn, chide, instruct* [657].

mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3, *mountain.*

mora, -ae, F. 1, *delay.*

Morinī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *die.* Partic. mortuus=*dead.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *delay.*

mōs, mōris, M. 3, *custom, way, habit, manner,* **265** [620].

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, *move.*

mox, Adv., *soon.*

multitūdō, -inis, F. 3, *multitude, great number,* **264** [619].

multus, -a, -um, *much.* In Pl. *many.* Multum, Acc. of Degree, *much;* equivalent to Adv.

Mūnātius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, *construct, fortify.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *fortification.*

mūrus, -ī, M. 2, *wall.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *change, alter.*

nam, Conj., *for.*

nātūra, -ae, F. 1, *nature.*

-ne, interrogative enclitic, implying nothing about the answer.

nē, as Adv., *not;* as Conj., *that not, lest.* Nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

nec, see neque.

necesse, indecl. neut. Noun, *necessity.* In predicate,=*necessary.*

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3, *neglect, pass by, disregard.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *say no, say . . . not, deny, refuse.*

negōtium, -ī, N. 2, *business, occupation.*

nēmō, Dat. nēminī, Acc. nēminem (Gen. and Abl. supplied by nūllīus and nūllō), M. 3, *no one, nobody.*

neque or nec, Conj., *neither or nor.* Neque . . . neque . . . , *neither . . . nor . . .*

Nerviī, -ōrum, name of a Gallic nation. Also Sing. Nervius, *a Nervian.*

neu (also nēve), Conj., *and not, nor.* Corresponds to nē, as nec to nōn.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (of two), **129** [642].

nihil, indecl. Noun, *nothing.*

nimis, Adv., *too much, too.*

nisi, Conj., *unless.* Without a verb = *except.*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, 2, *be hurtful to, hurt, injure.* Verb of Quality, taking Dat.

noctū, Adv., *at night, by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ———, irr., *not want, be unwilling,* **493** [665].

nōmen, nōminis, N. 3, *name,* **264** [619].

nōn, Adv., *not.*

nōndum, Adv., *not yet.*

nōnne, *not?* interrog. Adv., implying "yes."

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, *some.* In Pl., *some, several, not a few.* Declined like nūllus, **129** [642].

nōnnumquam, Adv., *sometimes.*

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, *get acquainted with, come to know, learn.*

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*

novus, -a, -um, *new.*

nox, noctis, -ium, F. 3, *night,* **271** [622].

nūllus, -a, -um, *none, no,* **129** [642].

num, interrog. Adv., implying "no."

numerus, -ī, M. 3, *number.*

numquam, Adv., *never.*

nunc, Adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *announce.*

nūntius, -ī, M. 2, *messenger; message.*

nūper, Adv., *recently.*

ō, *O,* or *Oh* (often used in address).

ob, Prep. with Acc., *against, before; on account of.*

obeō, obīre, obiī (or -īvī), obitum, irr., *attend to,* **503** [667].

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *observe.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege.*

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus, 1, *oppose, prevent.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3, *block up, obstruct.*

occāsiō, ōnis, F. 3, *occasion, opportunity.*

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīsī, -cīsum, 3, *kill.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *take possession of, occupy.*

occurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3, *meet.*

octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*

oculus, -ī, M. 2, *eye.*

officium, -ī, N. 2, *office, duty.*

omnīnō, Adv., *in all, at all.*

omnis, -e, *all, the whole; every, any.*

opīniō, -ōnis, F. 3, *opinion, expectation.*

oppidum, -ī, N. 2, *town.*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *siege.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *besiege.*

ops, opis, F. 3, *help.* In Pl., *resources, means.*

optimē, Adv., *in the best way, best.* Superl. of bene, *well,* **539** [638].

optimus, -a, -um, *best.* Superl. of bonus, *good,* **530** [635].

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wish, hope.*

opus, operis, N. 3, *work, task.* With est and Abl.=*there is need of.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *speech, argument.*

orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3, *circle.* In orbem cōnsistō, *take position in a circle.*

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M. 3, *order, rank.*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4 (in several forms, 3), *rise, arise.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *beg, entreat.*

ōs, ōris, N. 3, *mouth; face, countenance.*

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum, 3, *show.*

ōtium, ōtī, N. 2, *ease, repose; leisure; peace.*

paene, Adv., *almost.*

palūs, -ūdis, F. 3, *swamp.*

pār, pār, Gen. paris, *equal, even.*

parātus, -a, -um (from parō), *prepared,* = *ready.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī or parsī, parsūrus, 3, *spare.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *prepare, get.*

pars, partis, -ium, F. 3, *part; party, side* (in this sense either Sing. or Pl.).

partim, Adv., *partly.*

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum, 4, *share* [662].

parum, Adv., *little, too little.*

parvus, -a, -um, *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, M. 4, *pace* (with both feet; =about five English feet).

pater, patris, M. 3, *father,* **257** [618].

patior, patī, passus sum, 3, *suffer, allow, permit.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few, a few (only).*

paulātim, Adv., *little by little, gradually.*

paulisper, Adv., *a little (while), for a little (while).*

paulum, -ī, N. 2, *a little.* Paulō, *(by) a little,* Abl. of Measure of Difference.

pecūnia, -ae, F. 1, *money.*

peior, peius, *worse.* Compar. of malus, *bad,* **530** [635].

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3, *drive (out or off).*

per, Prep. with Acc., *through, during.*

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *prolong.*

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *take refuge, desert.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *full of danger, dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī, N. 2, *peril, danger.*

perītus, -a, -um, *having experience (of), experienced (in).* Takes Objective Genitive.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2, *move deeply.*

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, 3, *write fully, write out.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *persevere.*

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2, *persuade.* Takes Dat.; see suādeō.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2, *thoroughly frighten, terrify.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, *reach (to); pertain (to).*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *throw into confusion.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *arrive.*

pēs, pedis, M. 3, *foot.*

pessimus, -a, -um, Superl. of malus, *bad,* **530** [635].

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3, *aim at, attack; seek, ask.*

pietās, -ātis, F. 3, *loyalty, patriotism.*

piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy,* **117** [628].

pīlum, -ī, N. 2, *javelin.* A heavy missile, about six feet long.

pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pīctum, 3, *paint.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, *be pleasing, please.* Word of Quality, taking Dat.

Plancus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

plūrimum, *most, a great deal.* Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Superl. of multum, *much,* **539** [638].

plūrimus, -a, -um, *most, a great deal.* Pl. *a great many.* Superl. of multus, *much,* **530** [635].

plūs, Gen. plūris, *more.* Declension, **327** [633]. Compar. of multus, *much,* **530** [635].

plūs, *more,* Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Compar. of multum, *much,* **539** [638].

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, *promise.*

Pompeī, -ōrum, M. 2, *Pompeii,* a town.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3, *place.*

pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3, *bridge.*

populus, -ī, M. 2, *people.*

porta, -ae, F. 1, *gate.*

possum, posse, potuī, ——, irr., *be able, can.* With plūs, etc., *be more able, can do more,* etc., **485** [664].

post, Prep. with Acc., *behind.* As Adv., *afterward, after, later.*

posteā, Adv., *after that, afterward* (posteā quam, = post quam).

posterior, -ius, *later.* Compar. of posterus, *following,* **531** [636].

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next.*

postquam, Conj., *after.*

postrēmus, -a, -um, or postumus, -a, -um, *latest.* Superl. of posterus, *following,* **531** [636].

potēns, -ēns, Gen. potentis, *having power, influential.*

potestās, -ātis, F. 3, *power, control, opportunity.*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, 4, *gain possession of, get, possess.* Takes Abl.

potius, Adv., *preferably, rather.*

prae, Prep. with Abl., *in front of.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *precede.*

praeceptum, -ī, N. 2, *direction.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *order, direct.*

praecō, -ōnis, M. 3, *herald.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *put in command (of).*

praemium, -ī, N. 2, *reward.*

praesentia, -ae, F. 1, *presence.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., *be in command over; command; be present* [655]. Participle praesēns, *being present;* as Adj., *present.*

praeter, Prep. with Acc., *beside, along, past; besides.*

prīdiē, Adv., *the day before.*

prīmō, Adv., *at first.*

prīmum, Adv., *first, in the first place.* Superl. of prius, *before,* **539** [638].

prīmus, -a, -um, Superl. of prior, *first,* **531** [636].

prior, prius, *former, first; in front, leading.* Compar.; cf. prae and prō, **531** [636].

prīstinus, -a, -um, *pristine, former.*

prius, Compar. Adv., *before, first, sooner,* **539** [638].

prius quam or priusquam, Conj., *sooner than, before.*

prō, Prep. with Abl., *in front of;* hence *as a representative of, in behalf of, for, in return for; in place of, as.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *approve.*

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *proceed, advance.*

procul, Adv., *at a distance, from a distance.*

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī and -cucurrī, -cursum, 3, *run forward, charge.*

prōdeō, -īre, -iī (or -īvī), -itum, irr., *come forth,* **503** [667].

prōdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead forth; draw up, muster.*

proelium, -ī, N. 2, *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *departure.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3, *set out, depart.*

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3, *go forward, advance.*

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2, *prohibit, prevent, keep (from).*

prōmptus, -a, -um, *ready* (in sense of ready to do a thing).

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *proclaim.*

prope, Prep. with Acc., *near.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hurry, hasten.*

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring.* Word of Relation, taking Dat.

propior, -ius, *nearer.* Compar.; cf. prope, *near,* **531** [636].

propius, *nearer*, Compar. of prope, *near*, **539** [638]. Adv., used also as Prep.

propter, Prep. with Acc., *along, beside; on account of.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3, *follow after, pursue.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2, *foresee, provide.*

proximē, Adv., *nearest, next.* Superl. of prope, *near*, **539** [638].

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, close by.* Superl. of prope, *near*, **531** [636].

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*

Pūblius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

puella, -ae, F. 1, *girl.*

puer, -ī, M. 2, *boy*, **111** [616].

pugna, -ae, F. 1, *fight.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*

pulvis, pulveris, M. 3, *dust*, **265** [620].

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *think.*

Q., for Quīntus.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, *inquire, seek, ask.*

quam, Adv., *how, as, than.* Thus: quam multī? *how many?* quam diū, *as long as;* tam quam, *so (much) as, as (much) as;* magis quam, *more than;* minus quam, *less than.* With Superl., *as . . . as possible.*

quamquam, Conj., *although.*

quandō, Conj., *since, as.*

quantus, -a, -um, Interrog. and Rel., *how great, as great as.*

quārē, Rel. and Interrog. Adv., *for which reason, wherefore, why.*

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.*

quasi, Conj. and Adv., *as if, almost.*

quattuor, indecl. Adj., *four.*

-que, enclitic Conj., *and.* Represents closer connection than et.

quī, quae, quod, as Interrog. Adj., *what? which?* as Rel. Pron., *who, which, that*, **184** [649].

quī? Adv., *how?*

quia, Conj., *because.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever*, **192** [649, a].

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *a certain*, **193** [650].

quidem, Adv., *indeed, at any rate.* Nē . . . quidem, *not even.*

quīn, Conj., *by which not, that not.*

quīndecim, indecl. Adj., *fifteen.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. Adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. Adj., *five.*

Quīntus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

quis, quid (Adj. forms quī, quae, quod), Interrogative, *who? what? which?* **184** [649].

quis, quid (Adj. forms quī, qua, quod), Indefinite, *any (one), some (one)*, **207**, *b* [653, a]. Used chiefly with sī, nisi, nē, and interrogative and relative words.

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (quodpiam), *any*, **200**, *c* [652, a].

quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), *any at all*, **199** [651].

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quod-
 que) *each, every one,* **200**
 [652].

quŏ, *by which, in order that.*
 Conj., used with Comparatives.

quoad, Conj., *until.*

quod, Conj., *that; as to the fact
 that, as regards; because.*

quŏminus, Conj., *by which the
 less, that not.*

quoniam, Conj., *since.*

quoque, Conj., *also, too.* Postpos.

quotiēns, Adv. and Conj., *how
 often, as often as.*

ratiŏ, -ŏnis, F. 3 (thinking;
 hence), *theory, science; man-
 ner.* Ratiŏnem habeŏ, *I have
 regard for.*

recidŏ, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, 3,
 fall back; be reduced to.

recipiŏ, recipere, recēpī, recep-
 tum, 3, *take back.* Mē recipiŏ,
 I return, I retreat.

redūcŏ, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,
 3, *lead back.*

referŏ, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, irr.,
 bring back. Pedem referŏ,
 retreat, retire, **522** [668].

refugiŏ, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitū-
 rus, 3, *run back, retreat.*

rēgīna, -ae, F. 1, *queen.*

regiŏ, -ŏnis, F. 3, *region.*

rēgnum, -ī, N. 2, *kingship, king-
 dom.*

regŏ, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 3,
 direct, guide, rule.

relinquŏ, -linquere, -līquī, -lic-
 tum, 3, *leave.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining,
 left.* As Subst. in Pl., *the rest.*

Rēmī, -ŏrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a
 Gallic nation.

remittŏ, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
 sum, 3, *send back.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

reprehendŏ, -hendere, -hendī,
 -hēnsum, 3, *censure.*

rēs, reī, F. 5, *thing, matter.* Rēs
 mīlitāris, *warfare,* **395** [625].

resistŏ, resistere, restitī, resti-
 tūrus, 3, *make a stand; resist,
 make resistance.* Word of Atti-
 tude, taking Dat.

respiciŏ, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
 tum, 3, *look back, look around.*

respondeŏ, -spondēre, -spondī,
 -spōnsum, 2, *respond, answer.*

revertor, revertī (Infin.), revertī
 (Perf.), reversum, 3, *return.*
 Not deponent in Perf.

rēx, rēgis, M. 3, *king,* **256** [617].

Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2, *the Rhine.*

rīvus, -ī, M. 2, *stream.*

rŏbur, rŏboris, N. 3, *oak; strength,*
 257 [618].

rogŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *ask, re-
 quest.*

Rŏma, -ae, F. 1, *Rome.*

Rŏmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

Rŏscius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

rumpŏ, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, 3,
 break.

rūrsus, Adv., *back, again.*

rūs, rūris, N. 3, *country.*

rūsticus, -a, -um, *rustic, country.*

Sabīnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

saepe, Adv., *often.* Compar. sae-
 pius, Superl. saepissimē, **539**
 [638].

saltem, Adv., *at least.*

salūs, -ūtis, F. 3, *salvation, safety.*

satis, Adv., and indecl. Noun, *sufficiently, enough.* In predicate, = Adj., *enough, sufficient.*

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3, *do enough (for), satisfy.*

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

saxum, -ī, N. 2, *stone, rock.*

schola, -ae, F. 1, *school.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, *tear, tear down.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4, *know.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3, *write.*

scūtum, -ī, N. 2, *shield.*

sē and sēsē, Acc. and Abl., Sing. and Pl., of suī.

secundum, Prep. with Acc., *along.*

sed, Conj., *but.*

semper, Adv., *always.*

sententia, -ae, F. 1, *feeling, idea, view.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4, *perceive* (by the senses); *feel, think.* Sentiō dē, *become aware of.*

septem, indecl. Adj., *seven.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, 3, *follow, follow up* [662].

sermō, -ōnis, M. 3, *talk, conversation*, 264 [619].

sērō, Adv., *late, too late.*

serva, -ae, F. 1 (woman or girl) *servant* or *slave*, 86 [614].

Servius, -ī, M. 2, *Servius*, a name.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *preserve, save, guard, keep.*

servus, -ī, M. 2, (man or boy) *servant* or *slave*, 107 [615].

seu, see sīve.

sex, indecl. Adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. Adj., *sixty.*

Sextius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Sextus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

sī, Conj., *if.*

sibi, Dat. Sing. and Pl. of suī.

sīc, Adv., *in this way, thus, so.*

signum, -ī, N. 2, *sign, signal; standard.* Convertō signa, *turn the standards about, wheel.*

silva, -ae, F. 1, *wood, forest.*

similis, -e, *like, similar.*

simul, Adv., *simultaneously, at the same time, together.* Simul atque, *as soon as.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, F. 3, *pretense.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *simulate, pretend.*

sine, Prep. with Abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, *single, one at a time; one each.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left.* Sinistra, -ae, as Noun, F. 1, *left hand.*

sīve or seu, Conj., *or if, or;* sīve . . . sīve . . . (seu . . . seu . . .), *whether . . . or . . .*

socius, -ī, M. 2, *associate, ally.*

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2, *be accustomed.*

sōlum, Adv., *only.* Nōn sōlum . . . , sed etiam . . . , *not only . . . but also . . .*

sōlus, -a, -um, *sole, alone*, 129 [642].

sonus, -ī, M. 2, *sound.*

soror, sorōris, F. 3, *sister.*

spatium, -ī, N. 2, *space, distance; period* (of time).

specto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *look at, witness, watch.*

spēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *hope.*

spēs, -eī, F. 5, *hope.* In spem veniō, *I come to hope.*

splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid.*

statim, Adv., *immediately, at once.*

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, 3, *set up; decide.*

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, 1, *stand.*

strāmentum, -ī, N. 2, *straw.*

strepitus, -ūs, M. 4, *noise.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, ———, 2, *be zealous for, be eager for, be devoted to; study.* Word of Attitude, taking Dat.

studium, studī, N. 2, *zeal, interest; study.*

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *advise, urge.* Takes Dat., because it originally meant *make agreeable to.* Cf. suāvis, *agreeable.*

suāvis, -e, *sweet, agreeable.* Word of Quality, taking Dat.

sub, Prep., *under.* With Acc. of Motion, and Abl. of Rest.

subitō, Adv., *suddenly.*

subsidium, -ī, N. 2, *reserve, reïnforcement, help.*

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *come to aid.*

suī, Reflexive, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves,* **215** [654].

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, irr., *be* [655].

summus, -a, -um, *highest.* Superl. of superior, *higher,* **531** [636].

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, 3, *take up, take, assume.*

super, Prep. with Acc., *above.*

superior, -ius, *higher; superior; former.* Compar. of superus, *above,* **531** [636].

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *overcome, defeat, conquer.*

superus, -a, -um, *above.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *highest.* Superl. of superior, *higher,* **531** [636].

suspīciō, -ōnis, F. 3, *suspicion.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *suspect.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *sustain.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2, *sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, Reflexive Possessive Adj., *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2, *tent.*

tālis, -e, *such.*

tam, Adv., *so.*

tamen, Conj. and Adv., *still, nevertheless, yet.*

tandem, Adv., *at last.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, 3, *touch.*

tantulus, -a, -um, *so small, so little.*

tantummodo, Adv., *merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*

tardē, Adv., *slowly, late.* Compar. tardius, Superl. tardissimē, **538** [637].

tardus, -a, -um, *slow, tardy; disinclined.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, 3, *cover; shield, hide, protect* [658].

tēlum, -ī, N. 2, *missile.*

temerārius, -a, -um, *rash, thoughtless.*

temerē, Adv., *rashly, thoughtlessly.*

tempestās, -ātis, F. 3, *weather; bad weather, storm.*

tempus, temporis, N. 3, *time.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2, *hold.*

tergum, -ī, N. 2, *back; rear* (of an army).

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2, *terrify, frighten.*

terror, terrōris, M. 3, *terror, fright.*

tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

Tībur, Tīburis, N. 3, *Tivoli.*

timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, 2, *fear, be afraid.*

timor, -ōris, M. 3, *fear.*

Titūrius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

Titus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, 2, *scorch, burn.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *total, whole,* **130** [643].

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, 3, *hand over.*

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3, *lead across.*

trāgula, -ae, F. 1, (Gallic) *javelin.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, 3, *draw, drag; drag out.*

tranquillus, -a, -um, *tranquil.*

trāns, Prep. with Acc., *across, beyond.*

trānseō, -īre, -iī (or -īvī), -itum, irr., *go across, cross over, go over,* **503** [667].

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3, *cross.*

Trebōnius, -ī, M. 2, a name.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *be in a flutter, lose one's head.*

trēs, tria, Gen. trium, *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2, name of a Gallic nation. Also Sing., Trēvir, *a Treviran.*

tribūnus, -ī, M. 2, *tribune.*

triplex, -ex, Gen. -icis, *triple.*

triumphus, -ī, M. 2, *triumph.*

tū, tuī, *thou, you* (in speaking to a single person), **214** [654].

tuī, Reflexive, *of thyself, of yourself,* **215** [654].

tum, Adv., *at that time, then.*

tumultus, -ūs, M. 4, *disturbance.*

tumulus, -ī, M. 2, *mound, low hill.*

tunc, Adv., *then,* a stronger **tum.**

turba, -ae, F. 1, *crowd, mob.*

turris, -is, -ium, F. 3, *tower,* **278** [623].

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine, your, yours* (in speaking to a single person).

ubi, Adv., *where; when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any,* **129** [642].

ulterior, -ius, *on the other side, farther.* Compar., **531** [636].

ultimus, -a, -um, *farthest.* Superl. of ulterior, *farther,* **531** [636].

ultrā, Prep. with Acc., *beyond; on the other side of.*

umquam, Adv., *ever.*

ūnā, Adv., *in unison, together.*

unde, Adv., *from what, whence; out of what.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

undique, Adv., *on all sides.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, *all* (without exception).

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, only,* **129** [642].

urbs, -is, -ium, F. 3, *city.*

ūsus, -ūs, M. 4, *use; experience.*

ut or utī, Conj., *in which way, as; when; whereby, in order that, that; so that.*

uter, ūtra, utrum, *which* (of two)? **130** [643].

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of two). Declined like uter, + -que.

utī, see ut.

utinam, *would that.* Particle often used in wishes.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *use.* Takes Abl.

vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, 1, *roam, wander about.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2, *be strong* or *powerful, be well.*

validior, -ius, *stronger.* Compar. of validus, *strong.*

validus, -a, -um, *strong.*

vallis, -is, -ium, F. 3, *valley.*

vāllum, -ī, N. 2, *wall, rampart.*

vel ... vel ..., Conj., *either ... or ...* (where a choice is offered).

vēlōciter, Adv., *swiftly.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *come.*

verbum, -ī, N. 2, *word.*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 2, *fear, respect* [662].

vērō, Adv., *in truth, really, indeed, in fact.* Often merely emphasizes; to be translated by emphasis of voice.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *keep turning, hover; be busy, be engaged.*

Verticō, -ōnis, M. 3, a name.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3, *turn, change.*

vērus, -a, -um, *true, real.*

vēscor, vēscī, ——, 3, *feed oneself with, live on; eat.* Takes Abl.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (in speaking to two or more persons).

vestrum, -trī, *of you,* Gen. Pl. of tū.

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, 1, *forbid.* Takes Infinitive.

vetus, -us, *old; old-fashioned,* **286** [629].

via, -ae, F. 1, *way, street, road.*

victor, -ōris, M. 3, *victor,* **257** [618].

victōria, -ae, F. 1, *victory.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, 2, *see.*

videor, passive of videō, *seem, seem good.*

vigilia, -ae, F. 1, *watch, vigil.*

vīgintī, indecl. Adj., *twenty.*

vīlla, -ae, F. 1, *villa.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, 3, *vanquish, conquer, win.*

vir, virī, M. 2, *man,* **111** [616]. (Implies compliment; cf. homō.)

virtūs, -ūtis, F. 3, *manliness, courage, prowess.*

vīs, vīs, F. 3, *force, violence;* Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, *strength,* **326** [626].

vīta, -ae, F. 1, *life.*

vix, Adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *call.*

volō, velle, voluī, ——, irr., *want, will,* **493** [665].

voluntās, -ātis, F. 3, *will.*

Volusēnus, -ī, M. 2, a name.

vōx, vōcis, F. 3, *voice.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *wound.*

vulnus, vulneris, N. 3, *wound.*

EARLY WALL AND CITY GATE, ALATRI
In the mountains, southeast of Rome

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The references are to sections. Figures in brackets refer to the Summary of Forms.

a, an, *not translated.*

ability, ingenium, ingénī, N. 2.

(be) able, possum, posse, potuī, *irr.,* **485** [664].

about, dē *with Abl.*

(be) about to, *expressed by Fut. Act. Partic. with* sum.

(be) absent, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (*also* abfuī, abfutūrus), *irr.* [655].

accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.

accomplish, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

according to, *Abl.* (*of certain words,* **455,** *a*), *or* dē *or* ex, *with Abl.*

(on) account of, ob *or* propter, *with Acc.; Abl. of Cause or Reason.*

accustom, adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3.

(be) accustomed, soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2.

ache, doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2.

act, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3; faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, *with Object.*

admonish, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

advance, prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, 3.

(give) advice, suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

advise, suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

(be) afraid of, timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, 2; vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 2 [662].

after, *Prep.,* post *with Acc.;* **after this fashion,** ad hunc modum.

after, *Conj.,* postquam *with Indic.,* **506** [597, IV].

after a while, post aliquantum temporis.

after that, posteā.

again, iterum; rūrsus.

against, contrā *with Acc.*

agreeable, grātus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

aid, auxilium, auxílī, N. 2.

aid, adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.

(come to) aid, subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.*

aim at, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3.

all, omnis, -e; cūnctus, -a, -um; tōtus, -a, -um, **130** [643].

all (without exception), ūniversus, -a, -um.

at all, omnīnō.

allow, patior, patī, passus sum, 3.

ally, socius, -ī, M. 2.

almost, ferē.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um, **129** [642].

along, *Prep.,* praeter *with Acc.;* secundum *with Acc.*

along (*with*), *Adv.,* ūnā.

already, iam.

also, quoque, *postpositive;* etiam.

although (though), quamquam, etsī, *with Indic.;* cum *with Subj.*

always, semper.

am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *irr.* [655].

am to be . . . . , *expressed by Fut. Pass. Partic. with* sum.

ambiguous, duplex, -ex, -icis, **293** [631].

Ambiorix, Ambiorīx, -īgis, M. 3.

ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, F. 1.

among, inter *with Acc.;* apud *with Acc.*

and, et; **both** . . . . **and,** et . . . . et; -que, *enclitic;* atque.

and so, itaque.

angry, īrātus, -a, -um.

animal, animal, -ālis, -ium, N. 3, **270** [621].

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) annoyed, gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

another, alius, -a, -ud, **130** [643]; (*of two*) alter, -a, -um, **130** [643].

answer, respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, 2.

anxiety, cūra, -ae, F. 1.

any, *Adj.,* ūllus, -a, -um, **129** [642]; aliquī, -qua, -quod, **207** [653]; quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, **200,** *c* [652, *a*]; quī,

qua, quod, *Adj. form of Indefinite* quis, *used with* sī, nisi, nē, etc., **207,** *b* [653, *a*].

any one, any thing, *Substantive,* quisquam, quicquam, **199** [651]; aliquis, -quid, **207** [653]; quispiam, quidpiam, **200,** *c* [652, *a*]; quis, quid, *used with* sī, nisi, nē, etc., **207,** *b* [653, *a*].

appoint, cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

approach, adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *with Dat.;* accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *with* ad *or* propius; adeō, adīre, adiī (*or* adīvī), aditum, *irr.,* **503** [667].

approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

are to be . . . . , *see* am to be . . . .

argument, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

arise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4 (*in several forms,* 3).

arm, bracchium, -ī, N. 2.

arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

arms, arma, -ōrum, N. 2.

army, exercitus, -ūs, M. 4; **army** (*on the march*) agmen, -inis, N. 3.

around, circum, *Prep. with Acc., and Adv.*

around in, circum *with Acc.*

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.

art, ars, artis, -ium, F. 3.

as, *Adv.,* quam; **as much . . as,** tam . . . quam; **as . . . as possible,** quam *with Superl. and* possum, *or Superl. only;* **as much as possible,** quam maximē; **as long as,** quam diū.

as, *Conj.*, (=*in the way in which, just as*)ut *with Indic.*;(=*when*) ut*with Indic.*;(=*since*)quandō *with Indic.*; cum *with Subj.*

ask, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3; quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3; ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; rogō, -āre,-āvī,-ātum, 1.

assist, adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.

assured, certus, -a, -um.

at, *of Motion*, in *with Acc.*; *of Rest*, in *with Abl.* (*but the Locative of names of towns, etc.*), **409**, 3 [594, 3]; ad *with Acc.*; (*of time*) *Abl.*

at all, omnīnō.

at any rate, quidem, certē.

(be) at hand, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus,*irr.* [655].

at last, dēnique.

at least, saltem.

at night, noctū.

at once, statim.

at that time, tum; tunc.

at the house of, apud *with Acc.*

athlete, āthlēta, -ae, M. 1.

attack, impetus, -ūs, M. 4.

attack, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3; adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, 3; **attack** (*a fortified place*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

attempt, cōnor, -ārī, ātus sum, 1.

attend to, obeō, obīre, obiī (*or* obīvī), obitum, *irr.*, **503** [667].

authority, auctōritās, -ātis, F. 3.

await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2.

be away, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (*also* abfuī, abfutūrus), *irr.* [655].

away from, ā *with Abl.*; (*from inside of*) ex *with Abl.*

bad, malus, -a, -um.

badly, male.

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

band, manus, -ūs, F. 4.

barbarian, barbarus, -a, -um.

(line of) battle, aciēs, aciēī, F. 5.

battle, proelium, -ī, N. 2.

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *irr.* [655].

bear (*arms*), gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

beat,vincō,vincere,vīcī,victum,3.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, quia, *with Indic.*; cum *with Subj.*

before, ante, *Prep. with Acc., and Adv.*

before, *Conj.*, priusquam *or* prius quam, antequam, *with Indic. of actual past act* [597, III], *and Subjunctive of act anticipated.*

before that, before this, anteā.

beg, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

begin, incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; coepī, coepisse, coeptum est, *defective.*

be here, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *irr.* [655].

behind, post, *Prep. with Acc.,and Adv.*

believe, crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, 3, *with Dat. of the person, or Acc. of the thing, or both.*

be permitted, licet, licēre, licuit *and* licitum est, 2, *impersonal.*

beside, propter *with Acc.*

besiege, oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

best, optimus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* bonus, **530** [635].

better, *Adj.*, melior, melius, *Compar. of* bonus, **530** [635]; *Adv.*, melius, *Compar. of* bene, **539** [638].

between, inter *with Acc.*

beyond, trāns *with Acc.*

big, magnus, -a, -um.

bigger, maior, maius, *Compar. of* magnus, **530** [635].

blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

body, corpus, corporis, N. 3, **265** [620].

both, *Pron.*, ambō, -ae, -ō, **328** [640].

both . . . and, *Conjs.*, et . . . et.

boundaries, fīnēs, fīnium, M. 3, *Pl. of* fīnis, **271** [622].

boy, puer, puerī, M. 2, **111** [616].

brave, fortis, -e.

brains (=*judgment*), cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

bravely, fortiter.

break, rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, 3.

bridge, pōns, pontis, -ium, M. 3.

bring about, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

bring to, adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum, *irr.*, **522** [668].

brother, frāter, frātris, M. 3.

business, negōtium, -ī, N. 2.

(be) busy in, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *with* in.

but, sed; at.

by, *of Agent*, ā *or* ab *with Abl.*, *or Dat. with Fut. Pass. Partic.*; *of Means or Instrument, Abl.*; (close) by, ad *with Acc.*

by chance, cāsū; forte.

by far, multō, *Abl. of Measure of Difference, equivalent to an Adv.*

cabin, casa, -ae, F. 1.

Caesar, Caesar, Caésaris, M. 3.

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

can, possum, posse, potuī, *irr.*, **485** [664]; *also rendered in various uses by the Subjunctive of Possibility.*

Capri, Capreae, -ārum, F. 1.

captive, captīvus, -ī, M. 2.

care, cūra, -ae, F. 1.

careful, dīligēns, -ēns, -entis.

carefulness, dīligentia, -ae, F. 1.

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *irr.*, **522** [668]; dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *irr.*, **522** [668].

carry on, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

case, cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, **369** [624].

(in that) case, tum.

catch, comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, 3.

Catuvolcus, Catuvolcus, -ī, M. 2.

cause, causa, -ae, F. 1.

cautious, cautus, -a, -um.

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M. 4; equitēs, -um, M. 3, *Pl. of* eques.

cavalry, *as Adj.*, equestris, -tre.

censure, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

centurion, centuriō. -ōnis, M. 3.

certain, quīdam, quaedam, quod-
   dam (quiddam), **193** [650]; cer-
   tus, -a, -um.
certainly, certē.
chance, cāsus, -ūs, M. 4, **369**
   [624].
(by) chance, cāsū; forte.
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1;
   vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3.
charge, prōcurrō, -currere, -cur-
   rī *or* -cucurrī, -cursum, 3.
chide, moneō, monēre, monuī,
   monitum, 2 [657].
choose, legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum,
   3; ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēc-
   tum, 3.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, M. 3.
circle, orbis, -is, -ium, M. 3.
city, urbs, urbis, -ium, F. 3.
close by, proximus, -a, -um.
   Superl. of propior, **531** [636].
class, genus, generis, N. 3.
cohort, cohors, -rtis, -ium, F. 3.
collect, conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēc-
   tum, 3.
come, veniō, venīre, vēnī, ven-
   tum, 4.
come down, mē dēmittō, -mit-
   tere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.
come over, trānseō,-īre,-iī (*or* -īvī),
   -itum, *irr.*, **503** [667].
come to aid, subveniō, -venīre,
   -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.*
come to hope, in spem veniō,
   venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4.
come together, conveniō, -venīre,
   -vēnī, -ventum, 4.
command, imperātum, -ī, N. 2;
   imperium, -ī, N. 2.
command, imperō, -āre, -āvī,
   -ātum, 1.

(be in) command, praesum, -esse,
   -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.* [655], *with
   Dat.*
common, commūnis, -e.
communicate, commūnicō, -āre,
   -āvī, -ātum, 1.
compulsion, coāctus, -ūs, M. 4.
concede, concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
   -cessum, 3, *with Dat.*
(safe) conduct, tūtum iter.
confer, conloquor, -loquī, -locū-
   tus sum, 3.
conference, conloquium, -ī, N. 2.
conquer, vincō, -vincere, -vīcī,
   -victum, 3; superō, -āre, -āvī,
   -ātum, 1.
conqueror, victor, -ōris, M. 3,
   257 [618].
construct, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum,
   4.
contempt, contemptiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
contend, certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
contest, certāmen, -minis, N. 3.
continue, maneō, manēre, mānsī,
   mānsum, 2.
controversy, contrōversia, -ae,
   F. 1.
cook, coqua, -ae, F. 1.
Corfinium, Corfīnium, -ī, N. 2.
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, M. 2.
Cotta, Cotta, -ae, M. 1.
cottage, casa, -ae, F. 1.
council, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.
country, rūs, rūris, N. 3; loca,
   -ōrum, N. Pl. 2; country of . . . ,
   *may be translated by name of
   tribe alone.*
country, *as Adj.*, rūsticus, -a,
   -um.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, F. 3.
Crassus, Crassus, -ī, M. 2.

cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī (*or* -īvī), -itum, *irr.,* **503** [667].

crowd, turba, -ae, F. 1.

cry, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, 2.

cultivate, colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3; mōs, mōris, M. 3.

cut, caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, 3.

danger, perīculum, -ī, N. 2.

dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.

dare, audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2.

daughter, fīlia, -ae, F. 1.

day, diēs, diēī, M. and F., 5, **395** [625].

(every) day, cotīdiē.

(late in the) day, magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā.

daybreak, prīma lūx.

deceive, dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.

decide, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, 3; cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

decide (between), diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

decoration, īnsigne, -is, -ium, N. 3, **270** [621].

defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3.

delay, mora, -ae, F. 1.

delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

deliberate, dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) delighted, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

depart, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3; **(accomplish a) de-**parture, profectiōnem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

departure, profectiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

desire, dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, 3.

desirous, cupidus, -a, -um, *with Objective Gen.*

desist, dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3.

desperate (=*extreme*), extrēmus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* exterior, **531** [636].

determine, cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

devote, mē dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum.

(be) devoted to, studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, *with Dat.*

different, dīversus, -a, -um.

differently, aliter.

difficult, difficilis, -e.

(with) difficulty, aegrē.

diligence, dīligentia, -ae, F. 1.

diligent, dīligēns, -ēns, -entis.

diligently, dīligenter.

dine, cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

dinner, cēna, -ae, F. 1.

direct, praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3, *with Dat. of Person.*

disadvantageous, inīquus, -a, -um.

discharge, fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, 3, *with Abl.*

discipline, disciplīna, -ae, F. 1.

display, prae mē gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

displease, displiceō, -plicēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, 2, *with Dat.*

disregard, neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3.

from a distance, procul.

distribute, distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, 3.

divide, dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, 3.

do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3; agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3.

(be) done, fīō, fierī, factus sum, *irr.*, **502** [666].

do harm, iniūriam faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

draw up, īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3; prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3.

drill, exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2.

drive, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3.

drive out, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3.

dust, pulvis, pulveris, M. 3, **265** [620].

duty, officium, -ī, N. 2.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), **200** [652]; **each of two,** uterque, utraque, utrumque (*declined like* uter, **130** [643] + -que).

eager, alacer, -cris, -cre.

(be) eager for, studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, 2, *with Dat.*

eagerly, cupidē.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e.

Eburónes, Eburōnēs, -um, M. 3.

(the) edge of, extrēmus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* exterior, **531** [636].

effect, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

either (*of two*), *Pron.*, uterque, utraque, utrumque (*declined like* uter, **130** [643] + -que).

either . . . or, *Conjs.,* aut . . . aut; (*giving choice*) vel . . . vel.

elect, ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3.

end, fīnis, -is, -ium, M. 3, **271** [622].

enemy, (*of the state*) hostis, -is, -ium, M. 3; (*of an individual*) inimīcus, -ī, M. 2.

energetic, impiger, -gra, -grum.

energetically, impigrē.

enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, 3, *with Abl.*

engage in *or* **(be) engaged in,** versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

enough, satis.

enter, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

equal, pār, pār, paris; aequus, -a, -um.

equally, aequē.

escape, ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3.

establish, cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3.

Esuvii, Esuviī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.

even, etiam.

(not) even, nē . . . . quidem.

ever, umquam.

every, omnis, -e; quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque), **200** [652].

everybody, cūnctī, -ōrum, M.Pl. 2; omnēs, -ium, M. Pl. 3, *from* omnis.

every day, cotīdiē.

every one, omnēs, -ium, M. Pl. 3, *from* omnis.

(on) every side, undique.

everything, omnia, -ium, N. Pl. 3, *from* omnis.

example, exemplum, -ī, N. 2.

exceedingly, maximē, *Superl. of* magnopere *and* multum, **539** [638].

except, nisi.

exercise, exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2.

expect, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

experienced, perītus, -a, -um, *with Objective Gen.*

explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

extend, extendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum *and* -tēnsum, 3.

eye, oculus, -ī, M. 2.

(in the) eyes (of), *Dat. of the Person Judging.*

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, M. 2.

face, ōs, ōris, N. 3.

(full in the) face, in adversum ōs.

fact, rēs, reī, F. 5, **395** [625].

fail, dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

fair, aequus, -a, -um.

faith, fidēs, fideī, F. 5.

fall, cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3.

fame, fāma, -ae, F. 1.

(by) far, multō, *Abl. of Measure of Difference.*

far, longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, M. 1.

fashion, modus, -ī, M. 2.

father, pater, patris, M. 3, **257** [618].

fault, culpa, -ae, F. 1.

favor, faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2, *with Dat.*

favorable, aequus, -a, -um.

fear, timor, -ōris, M. 3; metus, -ūs, M. 4.

fear, timeō, timēre, timuī, —, 2; vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 2.

feel, sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4.

feel sure, pro certō habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2.

feel well, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

feeling, sententia, -ae, F. 1.

(a) few (only), paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agrī, M. 2, **111** [616].

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre, **293** [630]; ferus, -a, -um.

fiercely, ācriter.

fight, pugna, -ae, F. 1.

fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

fight it out, dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

fighter, pugnāns, -āns, -antis, *Pres. Act. Partic. of* pugnō.

fill, compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, 2.

finally, dēnique.

find, inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.

finish, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

fire, ignis, -is, -ium, M. 3, **278** [623]; flamma, -ae, F. 1.

(set on) fire, incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 3.

first, prīmus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* prior, **531** [636].

(at) first, prīmō.

(in the) first place, prīmum.

fit, aptus, -a, -um.

fitted, aptus, -a, -um.

five, quīnque, *indecl. Adj.*

fixed, certus, -a, -um.

flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitū-
rus, 3.

flight, fuga, -ae, F. 1.

(take to) flight, mē in fugam dō,
dare, dedī, datum, 1.

fly (to), advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus
sum, 3.

following (= *next*), posterus, -a,
-um.

follow up, sequor, sequī, secūtus
sum, 3, īnsequor, -sequī, -secū-
tus sum, 3.

fool, verba dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

foot, pēs, pedis, M. 3.

for, *Prep., expressed by Dat.; by*
ad *or in with Acc.;* (=*through
a period of time*) per *with Acc.,
or Acc. of Extent of Time.*

for, *Conj.,* enim, *postpos.;* nam.

for a little (while), paulisper.

for nothing, sine ūllā causā.

for the purpose of, causā *or*
grātiā *with Gen. of Gerundive
or Gerund;* ad *with Gerun-
dive or Gerund;* quī, quō, ut,
with Subj.

for the sake of, causā *or* grātiā
with Gen.

for this reason, ob eam causam.

for which reason, quārē.

forbid, prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī,
-hibitum, 2; vetō, vetāre,
vetuī, vetitum, 1, *with Infin.*

force, forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. 1,
Pl. of cōpia.

forced march, magnum iter.

forehead, frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3.

foresee, prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī,
-vīsum, 2.

forest, silva, -ae, F. 1.

form (*a plan*), capiō, capere,
cēpī, captum, 3 [659].

former, prīstinus, -a, -um; prior,
-us, *Compar.,* 531 [636].

formerly, anteā.

fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

fortify, commūniō, -mūnīre,
-mūnīvī, -mūnītum, 4.

fortunate, beātus, -a, -um.

four, quattuor, *indecl. Adj.*

four hundred, quadringentī, -ae,
-a.

friend (*man or boy*), amīcus, -ī, M.
2; (*woman or girl*), amīca, -ae,
F. 1.

(in a) fright, territus, -a, -um,
Perf. Pass. Partic. of terreō,
terrēre, terruī, territum, 2.

(thoroughly) frighten, perterreō,
-terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.

from, (= *away from*) ā *or* ab, *with
Abl.;* (= *down from*) dē *with
Abl.;* (= *out of*) ē *or* ex, *with
Abl.*

from a distance, procul.

front, frōns, frontis, -ium, F. 3.

(in) front of, prae *with Abl.;* prō
with Abl.; ante *with Acc.*

full in the face, in adversum ōs.

further, amplius, *Neut. Acc. of
Degree, equivalent to an Adv.*

gain, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus
sum, 3.

Gaius, Gāius, -ī, M. 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, M. 1.

Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.

Gallus, Gallus, -ī, M. 2.

game, lūdus, -ī, M. 2.

garden, hortus, -ī, M. 2.

gate, porta, -ae, F. 1.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F. 1.

(a) Gaul, Gallus, -ī, M. 2.

general, dux, ducis, M. 3; general (*in chief*), imperātor, -ōris, M. 3.

generally, ferē.

German, Germānus, -ī, M. 2.

get (possession of), potior, potīrī, potītus sum, 4, *with Abl.*

get into condition, vīrēs cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

get sight of, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

girl, puella, -ae, F. 1.

give, dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

give advice, suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

give way, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3, *with Dat.*

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

(be) glad of, gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2.

glory, glōria, -ae, F. 1.

go, eō, īre, iī (*or* īvī), itum, *irr.*, **503** [667].

go on (=be done), fīō, fierī, factus sum, *irr.*, **502** [666].

going to, *expressed by Fut. Act. Partic.*

good, bonus, -a, -um, **117** [627].

good-bye, valē.

(a) good many, complūrēs, complūria *or* -a, **327** [633].

good-will, voluntās, -ātis, F. 3.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, N. 2.

great, magnus, -a, -um; *often* tantus, -a, -um.

(a) great many, plūrimī, -ae, -a, *Superl. of* multus, **530** [635].

greater, maior, maius, *Compar. of* magnus, **530** [635].

greatest, maximus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* magnus, **530** [635].

(how) great, quantus, -a, -um.

(so) great, tantus, -a, -um.

greatly, magnopere.

grieve, doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2.

ground, locus, -ī, M. 2, *Pl.* loca, -ōrum; regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

guide, dux, ducis, M. 3.

guide, regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 3.

habit, mōs, mōris, M. 3; cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F. 3.

halt, cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, 3.

hand, manus, -ūs, F. 4.

happy, beātus, -a, -um; laetus, -a, -um.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um.

hardly, vix.

harm, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, 2, *with Dat.;* do harm (*to a person*), iniūriam faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3; no harm is done him, eī nihil nocētur, nocērī, nocitum est, 2.

harsh, dūrus, -a, -um.

(make) haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

hasten, contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, 3.

hate (to do a thing), gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, *with Infin.*

have, habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2; *Dat. of Possession with* sum.

have regard for, ratiōnem habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, *with Gen.*

he, is, **153** [646]; ille, **145** [645]; iste, **145**, *a* [645]; hic, **166** [648].

head, caput, capitis, N. 3.

hear, audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, 4.

heavy, gravis, -e.

helmet, galea, ae, F. 1.

help, auxilium, auxílī, N. 2.

help, iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, 1; adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 1.

(come to) help, subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4, *with Dat.;* auxiliō veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *with Dat.*

hem in, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2.

her, *Gen. Sing. of* is, **153** [646], ille, **145** [645], iste, **145**, *a* [645], *or* hic, **166** [648]; *Reflexive,* her (own), suus, -a, -um.

herald, praecō, -ōnis, M. 3.

here, hīc.

(be) here, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *irr.* [655].

high, altus, -a, -um.

highest, suprēmus, -a, -um, *or* summus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* superior, **531** [636].

hill, collis, -is, -ium, M. 3.

(of, etc.) himself, *Reflexive,* suī, etc., **215** [654]; **(he) himself,** *Intensive,* ipse, -a, -um, **139** [644].

hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, N. 2.

his, *Gen. Sing. of* is, **153** [646], ille, **145** [645], iste, **145**, *a* [645], *or* hic, **166** [648]; his (own), suus, -a, -um.

hold, teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2.

home, domus, -ūs *and* -ī, 4 and 2, **406** [626].

(at) home, domī, **409**, 3, *a.*

honor, honor, -ōris, M. 3.

honorable, honestus, -a, -um.

hope, spēs, speī, F. 5; **(come to) hope,** in spem veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4.

hope, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

horn, cornū, -ūs, N. 4, **369** [624].

horse, equus, -ī, M. 2.

horseman, eques, -itis, M. 3.

hour, hōra, -ae, F. 1.

(at the) house (of), apud *with Acc.*

how, quam; (= *in what way, by what means*) quī.

how great, quantus, -a, -um.

however, autem, *postpositive.*

hurl, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3.

hurry, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

hurt, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, 2, *with Dat.*

I, ego, meī, **214** [654].

if, sī.

if not (= *unless*), nisi.

ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.

image, imāgō, -inis, F. 3.

immediately, cōnfestim; statim.

in, *of Place,* in *with Abl.* (*or the Locative of names of Towns, etc.,* **409**, 3, *a* [594, 3]); *of Respect, Abl. of Respect; of Time, Abl. of Time.*

in accordance with, *see* **according to.**

(be) in command, praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.* [655], *with Dat.*

in front of, ante *with Acc.*, prō *with Abl.*

in order to, ut *with Subj.*; in order not to, nē *with Subj.*

in person, per mē, tē, *or* sē.

in return for, prō *with Abl.*

in succession, deinceps.

in that case, tum.

in the eyes of, *expressed by Dat. of the Person Judging.*

in the first place, prīmum.

in the second place, deinde.

in the morning, māne.

in this way, ita; sīc.

indeed, vērō; quidem.

influence, grātia, -ae, F. 1.

influential, potēns, -ēns, -entis.

inform, doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2; certiōrem (-ēs) faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

injure, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, 2, *with Dat.*

injury, iniūria, -ae, F. 1.

inquire, quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3.

instruct, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

interest, studium, -ī, N. 2; rēs, reī, F. 5, **395** [625].

interpreter, interpres, -pretis, M. 3.

intervene, intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

into, in *with Acc.*

invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

it, id, **153** [646]; illud *or* istud, **145** and *a* [645]; hoc, **166** [648].

Italy, Ītalia, -ae, F. 1.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, N. 2; iaculum, -ī, N. 2.

(Gallic) javelin, trāgula, -ae, F. 1.

join, iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, 3; adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, 3; join battle, proelium committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

judge, iūdex, iūdicis, M. 3.

judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

judgment, iūdicium, -ī, N. 2; cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

Julia, Iūlia, -ae, F. 1.

Julius, Iūlius, -ī, M. 2.

just, iūstus, -a, -um.

just now, modo.

keep, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

keep out (= *stay away from*), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (*and* abfuī, abfutūrus), *irr.* [655].

keep (*some one from*) prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2.

kill, caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, 3; occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, 3; interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

kind, benignus, -a, -um.

kind, genus, generis, N. 3.

kindness, beneficium, -ī, N. 2.

king, rēx, rēgis, M. 3, **256** [617].

kingship, rēgnum, -ī, N. 2.

kitchen, culīna, -ae, F. 1.

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4; *Perfect tenses of* noscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, *and* cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3.

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M. 2.

large, magnus, -a, -um.

larger, maior, maius, *Compar. of* magnus, **530** [635].

(at) last, dēnique.

late in the day, magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā.

(too) late, sērō.

later, posteā; post.

lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.

lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, 3.

lead off, dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3.

leader, dux, ducis, M. 3.

learn, discō, discere, didicī, ——, 3; nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3; cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 3.

(at) least, saltem.

leave, (*transitive*) relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, 3; (*intransitive*), dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3; discēdō, -cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3; excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

left, reliquus, -a, -um.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

leisure, ōtium, -ī, N. 2.

less, *Adj.*, minor, minus, *Compar. of* parvus, **530** [635].

less, *Adv.*, minus, *Compar. of* parum, **539** [638].

less than, minus quam.

lest, nē *with Subj.*

let (me *or* **us),** *generally expressed by Subj.*

letter (*of correspondence*), epistula, -ae, F. 1; litterae, -ārum, F. 1, *Pl. of* littera.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M. 2.

life, vīta, -ae, F. 1.

like, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, F. 5.

line of march, agmen, -inis, N. 3.

listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4.

little, parvus, -a, -um.

little, *Adv.,* parum; *Substantive,* paulum, -ī, N. 2.

(by a) little, paulō, *Abl. of Measure of Difference, equivalent to an Adv.*

(a) little while, (for) a little while, paulisper.

live, habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

live on, vēscor, vēscī, ——, 3, *with Abl.*

lofty, altus, -a, -um.

long, longus, -a, -um.

long (= *for a long time*), diū.

(no) longer, nōn iam; nec iam.

(as) long as, quam diū.

love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

lowest, īnfimus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* īnferior, **531** [636].

Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, M. 2.

lung, latus, lateris, N. 3.

make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3; (= *bring about that*) efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3, *with* ut *or* ut nōn, *and Subj.*

make haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

man, vir, virī, M. 2, **111** [616]; homō, hominis, M. 3; **men** (*our men, his men, etc.*), nostrī, suī, *etc.*

(to a) man, ad ūnum.

manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

many, multī, -ae, -a, *Pl. of* multus.

(a good) many, complūrēs, complūria *or* -a, **327** [633].

(line of) march, agmen, agminis, N. 2.

Mark, Mārcus, -ī, M. 2.

master,(*of a household*) dominus, -ī, M. 2; (*of a school*) magister, -trī, M. 2.

matter, rēs, reī, F. 5, **395** [625].

(by) means of, *expressed by Abl. of Means.*

meanwhile, interim; intereā.

meet, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4.

memory, memoria, -ae, F. 1.

men (*our men, his men, etc.*), nostrī, suī, etc.

merely, tantummodo.

message, nūntius, -ī, M. 2.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, M. 2.

method, modus, -ī, M. 2.

midday, merīdiēs, -ēī, M. 5.

(the) middle of, medius, -a, -um.

mile, mīlle passuum, *Pl.* mīlia passuum.

military, mīlitāris, -e.

mind, animus, -ī, M. 2.

mine, meus, -a, -um.

misfortune, incommodum, -ī, N. 2.

missile, tēlum, -ī, N. 2.

mistress, domina, -ae, F. 1.

mob, turba, -ae, F. 1.

mock (=*pretended*), simulātus, -a, -um, *from* simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

money, pecūnia, -ae, F. 1.

more,*Substantive*, plūs,*Gen.* plūris; *in Pl.*, plūrēs, plūra, plūrium, **327** [633], *Compar. of* multus, **530** [635].

more, *Adv.*, magis; plūs *and* amplius, *Compar. Adjs. in Acc. of Degree, equivalent to Advs.*

(in the) morning, māne.

(this) morning, hodiē māne.

most, *Adv., expressed by Superlative form; also by* maximē, *Superl. of* magnopere *and* multum, **539** [638].

most, *as Substantive*, maxima pars.

mother, māter, -tris, F. 3.

mountain, mōns, montis, -ium, M. 3.

mouth, ōs, ōris, N. 3.

move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2.

much, *Adj.*, multus, -a, -um.

much, *Adv.*, multum, *Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv.;* much (= *by much*), multō, *Abl. of Measure of Difference, equivalent to an Adv.*

(as) much . . . as, tam . . . quam.

(too) much, nimis.

(very) much, plūrimum, *Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv. Superl. of* multum, **539** [638].

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, F. 3.

must be . . . (= *is to be . . .*) *expressed by Fut. Pass. Partic. with* sum.

my, meus, -a, -um.

(of) myself, *Reflexive*, meī (*from* ego, **214** [654]).

(my)self, *Intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, **139** [644].

name, nōmen, -inis, N. 3.

name (= *call*), appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

nature, nātūra, -ae, F. 1.

near, propinquus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

near, prope *with Acc.*

nearer, propius, *Compar. Adv.*, **539** [638]; *used also as Prep. with Acc.*

nearest, proximus, -a, -um, *Compar. of* propior, **531** [636].

(is *or* **are) necessary,** necesse est *or* sunt.

(it is) necessary, necesse est.

need, opus, *indecl. Noun with Abl.*

neglect, neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3.

neighboring, propinquus, -a, -um.

neighborhood, loca propinqua.

neither, *Pronoun,* neuter, -tra, -trum, **129** [642].

neither (= *and not*), *Conj.*, neque (nec).

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec . . .).

Nervian, Nervius, -ī, M. 2.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

news, aliquid novī.

night, nox, noctis, -ium, F. 3, **271** [622].

(at) night, noctū.

no, *Adj.*, nūllus, -a, -um, **129** [642].

no, *in Answers,* nōn, minimē, *Superl. of* parum, **539** [638]; *implied in Questions,* num.

no longer, nōn iam; nec iam.

no one, nēmō, nūllīus, **290**.

noise, strepitus, -ūs, M. 4.

none, nūllus, -a, -um, **129** [642]; nemō, nūllīus, **290**; nihil, *indecl. Noun.*

nor, neque (nec).

not, nē *for Imperative, Volitive, and Optative ideas (except in questions);* nōn *for all other ideas and all questions.*

not, in questions, nōnne, *interrog. Adv. implying* "yes."

not at all, minimē, *Superl. of* parum, **539** [638].

not even, nē . . . quidem.

not only . . . but also, nōn sōlum *or* nōn modo . . . sed etiam.

not yet, nōndum.

nothing, nihil, *indecl. Noun.*

(for) nothing, sine ūllā causā.

notice, animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3.

now, (= *at this time*) nunc; (= *by this time*), iam.

(just) now, modo.

number, numerus, -ī, M. 2; multitūdō, -inis, F. 3.

(a) number of, complūrēs, -plūria *or* -a, -ium, **327** [633].

o, ō.

oak, rōbur, rōboris, N. 3, **257** [618].

observe, observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

of, *of Possession, expressed by Gen.; of the Whole, expressed by Gen., or* dē *or* ex *with Abl.; of Separation; by* ā *with Abl., or Abl. alone; of Cause or Reason by Abl.*

of war, mīlitāris, -e.

often, saepe.

(very) often, saepissimē, *Superl. of* saepe, **539** [638].

oh, ō.

old, vetus, vetus, veteris, **286** [629].

oldest, maximus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* magnus, **530** [635].

old-fashioned, vetus, vetus, veteris, **286** [629].

on, *of Place*, in *with Abl.; of Time, Abl.;* on (*the front,* etc.), ab *or* ex *with Abl.*

on account of, ob *or* propter *with Acc.; Abl. of Cause or Reason.*

on all sides, undique.

on every side, undique.

(at) once, statim.

one, ūnus, -a, -um, **129** [642]; one (*of two*), alter, -a, -um, **130** [643]; one (*who or that*), tālis (quī) *or* is (quī).

one after another, deinceps.

one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.

one in ten, decimus quisque.

only, *Pronom. Adj.,* sōlus, -a, -um, **129** [642].

only, *Adv.,* sōlum; modo; tantummodo.

(not) only . . . but also, nōn sōlum *or* nōn modo . . . sed etiam.

opportunity, facultās, -ātis, F. 3; potestās, -ātis, F. 3.

oppose, obstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1.

opposed, adversus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

or, aut, vel (*giving choice*); an (*in se·ond part of question*). Either . . . or, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel; whether . . . or, sīve . . . sīve (seu . . . seu).

order, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *with Dat. and Subj.;* iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, 2, *with Acc. and Infin.*

(in) order to, ut *with Subj.;* (in) order not to, nē *with Subj.*

(without) orders, iniussū, *Adv.*

other, alius, alia, aliud, **130** [643]; other (*of two*), alter, altera, alterum, **130** [643]; some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.

otherwise, aliter.

ought, *translated by Future Passive Participle with* sum, *or by Subj.; also by* dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, 2.

our, noster, nostra, nostrum.

our men, nostrī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.

(of, *etc.*) ourselves, *Reflexive,* nostrī, *etc.,* **215** [654].

out of, ex *or* ē, *with Abl.*

out of what, unde.

pace, passus, -ūs, M. 4.

paint, pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pīctum, 3.

part, pars, partis. -ium, F. 3; regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

party, pars, partis, *or* partēs, partium, F. 3.

pass, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3.

past, praeter *with Acc.*

pattern, exemplar, -āris, -ium, N. 3, **270** [621].

peace, ōtium, -ī, F. 2.

pebble, lapillus, -ī, M. 2.

people, populus, -ī, M. 2.

perhaps, forte *or* fortasse *with Indic.;* forsitan *with Subj. of Possibility.*

peril, perīculum, -ī, N. 2.

period, spatium, -ī, N. 2.

(be) permitted, licet, licēre, licuit *and* licitum est, 2, *impers.*

persevere, persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(in) person, per mē, tē, *or* sē.

persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2, *with Dat.*

pertain, pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, 2.

pick up, excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.

place, locus, -ī, M. 2; *Pl.* loca, -ōrum, N. 2.

(in the first) place, prīmum.

place, pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3; cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, 3; conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

plan, cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) pleasing, = please (*next word*).

please, placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, *with Dat.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

pledge (*one's word*), (fidem) interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3.

Pompeii, Pompeī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.

popularity, grātia, -ae, F. 1; (be in great *or* greater) popularity, sum in magnā *or* maiōre grātiā.

(take) position, consistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, 3.

possess (= *get possession of*), potior, potīrī, potītus sum, 4.

power, potestās, -ātis, F. 3.

(be) powerful, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

practice, exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum, 2.

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

precede, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *irr.*, **493** [665].

prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

prepared, parātus, -a, -um, *Perf. Pass. Partic. of* parō.

presence, praesentia, -ae, F. 1.

present, dōnum, -ī, N. 2.

(be) present, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, *irr.* [655].

preserve, cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

pretend, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

pretense, simulātiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

prevent, prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, 2; obstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, 1.

proceed, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

proclaim, prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

profit by, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, 3, *with Abl.*

promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, 2.

properly, commodē.

protect, tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, 3.

Publius, Pūblius, -ī, M. 2.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, M. 2.

(for the) purpose of, causā *or* grātiā, *with Gen. of Gerundive or Gerund;* ad, *with Gerundive or Gerund;* ut *or* nē, *with Subj.*

pursue, īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, 3.

put an end to, fīnem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F. 1.
quickly, celeriter; vēlōciter.

race, gēns, gentis, -ium, F. 3, **271** [622].
raise, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.
ramparts, vāllum, -ī, N. 2.
rank, ōrdō, -inis, M. 3.
rash, temerārius, -a, -um.
rashly, temerē.
(at any) rate, certē; quidem.
read, legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3.
read up, legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, 3.
ready (=*prepared*), parātus, -a, -um, *from* parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; prōmptus, -a, -um.
real, vērus, -a, -um.
really, vērō.
rear, tergum, -ī, N. 2.
reason, causa, -ae, F. 1.
(for this) reason, ob eam causam.
(for which) reason, quārē.
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3.
recently, nūper.
recognize, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, 3.
(take) refuge with, perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus 3, *with* ad.
(have) regard for, ratiōnem habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, *with Gen.*
region, regiō, -ōnis, F. 3.
rejoice, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1; gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2.

(be) reluctant, gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.
remain, maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um. (Those) remaining, *Pl. of* reliquus.
remedy, auxilium, -ī, N. 2.
remember, meminī, meminisse, *defective*.
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.
report, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *irr.*, **522** [668].
reputation, fāma, -ae, F. 1.
resist, resistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3.
resources, opēs, opum, F. 3, *Pl. of* ops, opis.
(the) rest, reliquī, -ae, -a.
retire, mē recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *irr.*, **522** [668].
retreat, mē recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3; pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, **522** [668].
return, revertor, revertī (*Infin.*), revertī (*Perf.*), reversum, 3. (*Not deponent in Perfect.*)
(in) return for, prō *with Abl.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M. 2.
rise, orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4 (*in several forms*, 3).
river, flūmen, -inis, N. 3.
road, via, -ae, F. 1.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *as Noun*, Rōmānus, -ī, M. 2.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F. 3.
rule, lēx, lēgis, F. 3.
run, currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3.

run **away**, fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, 3.

run **forward**, prōcurrō, -currere, -currī *and* -cucurrī, -cursum, 3.

run **to and fro**, concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

Sabinus, Sabīnus, -ī, M. 2.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

safe conduct, tūtum iter.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, F. 3.

(for the) sake of, causā *or* grātiā, *with Gen.*

sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

sally out, ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3.

salvation, salūs, -ūtis, F. 3.

same, īdem, eadem, idem, **158** [647].

satisfy, satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, 3.

save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

say, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3; **he says**, *or* **says he**, inquit, *following one or more words.*

say no, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

scarcity, inopia, -ae, F. 1.

scheme, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 3.

school, schola, -ae, F. 1.

schoolboy, discipulus, -ī, M. 2.

schoolmate, condiscipulus, -ī, M. 2.

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M. 3.

(in the) second place, deinde.

see, videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, 2.

seek, petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, 3.

seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, 2.

select, ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3.

self, *Intensive*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, **139** [644]; *Reflexive (myself, yourself, himself, themselves, etc.)*, meī, tuī, suī, **215** [654].

send, mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3.

send around, circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

send back, remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

send out, ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

serious, gravis, -e.

servant, (*man*) servus, -ī, M. 2; (*woman*) serva, -ae, F. 1.

served (= *ready*) parātus, -a, -um, *Perf. Pass. Partic. of* parō.

Servius, Servius, -ī, M. 2.

set on fire, incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, 3.

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, 3.

set up, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, 3.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

several, aliquot, *indecl.;* aliquī, -quae, -qua, **207** [653]; quīdam, quaedam, quaedam, **193** [650].

Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M. 2.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre, **293** [630].

she, ea, **153** [646]; illa, **145** [645]; ista, **145***a* [645]; haec, **166** [648].

shield, scūtum, -ī, N. 2.

shout, shout out, clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

show, doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2.

side, latus, lateris, N. 3; (=*party*) pars, partis, -ium, F. 3, *or* partēs, partium, F. 3, Pl.

side by side, paribus gradibus.

(on every) side, undique.

siege, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F. 3; obsidiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

(get) sight of, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

simultaneously, simul.

since, cum *with Subj.;* quoniam *or* quandō *with Indic.;* since he, *etc.,* quī, *etc., with Subj.*

sister, soror, sorōris, F. 3.

six, sex, *indecl. Adj.*

slaughter, caedēs, -is, -ium, F. 3.

slave, *(man)* servus, -ī, M. 2, **107** [615]; *(woman)* serva, -ae, F. 1, **86** [614].

sling, funda, -ae, F. 1.

slow, tardus, -a, -um.

slowly, tardē.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

smaller, minor, minus, *Compar. of* parvus, **530** [635].

smallest, minimus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* parvus, **530** [635].

so, ita; sīc; tam.

(and) so, itaque.

so great, tantus, -a, -um.

so that, ut *with Subj.*

soldier, mīles, mīlitis, M. 3.

some, *Adj.,* aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, **207** [653]; aliquantus, -a, -um.

some, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.

some .... others, aliī .... aliī.

some one, *Substantive,* aliquis, **207** [653]; quis, *used with* sī, nisi, nē, *etc.,* **397,** *a* [653].

something, aliquid, **207** [653].

sometimes, nōnnumquam.

somewhat, aliquantum, *Acc. of Degree, equivalent to an Adv.*

son, fīlius, -ī, M. 2.

soon, mox.

sound, sonus, -ī, M. 2.

space, spatium, -ī, N. 2.

spare, parcō, parcere, pepercī *or* parsī, parsūrus, 3, *with Dat.*

speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3.

spend, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3.

spirit, animus, -ī, M. 2.

splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.

sport, lūdus, -ī, M. 2.

stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, 1.

state, cīvitās, -ātis, F. 3.

step, gradus, -ūs, M. 4.

stern, dūrus, -a, -um.

still, tamen.

stone, saxum, -ī, N. 2.

stop, dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, 3; intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, 3.

storm, tempestās, -ātis, F. 3.

stratagem, dolus, -ī, M. 2.

stream, rīvus, -ī, M. 2.

street, via, -ae, F. 1.

strength, vīrēs, -ium, F. 3, *Pl. of* vīs, **326** [626].

strengthen, firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

strive, contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, 3.

strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.

(be) strong, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

study, studium, -ī, N. 2.

study, studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, 2.

(in) succession, deinceps.

such, tālis, -e; is, ille, etc., *often with Descriptive* quī-*Clause, in Subj.*

sudden, repentīnus, -a, -um.

suffer, doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, 2.

sufficiently, satis.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, F. 3.

superior, superior, superius, *Compar. of* superus, **531** [636].

supper, cēna, -ae, F. 1.

supply, cōpia, -ae, F. 1.

sure, certus, -a, -um.

(feel) sure, prō certō habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2.

surround, circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 1.

swiftly, celeriter; vēlōciter.

sword, gladius, -ī, M. 2.

take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3 [659].

take to flight, mē in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum, 1.

take position, cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, 3.

take refuge, perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, 3, *with ad.*

take up, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3 [659].

talk, sermō, -ōnis, M. 3.

talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3; conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, 3.

task, opus, operis, N. 3.

teach, doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2.

teacher, magister, -trī, M. 2.

tear down, scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3.

tell, doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2; dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3.

ten, decem, *indecl. Adj.*

tent, tabernāculum, -ī, N. 2.

terms, condiciō, -ōnis, F. 3.

terrify, terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, 2.

(thoroughly) terrify, perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.

territory, fīnēs, fīnium, M. 3, *Pl. of* fīnis, **271** [622].

terror, terror, -ōris, M. 3.

than, quam; *also expressed by Abl. after Comparatives.*

that, *Determinative Pron.,* ille, illa, illud, **145** [645]; is, ea, id, **153** [646].

that, *Relative Pron.,* quī, quae, quod, **184** [649].

that, *Conj. after ideas of Will, Wish, Request, or Consent,* ut *with Subj.;* that not, nē *with Subj.*

that (*English more generally from . . . ing, etc.*) *after ideas of Hindrance or Prevention,* nē, quōminus, *or* quīn, *with Subj.* (*Originally* that not.)

that (= *lest*), *after ideas of Fear,* nē *with Subj.;* that not, ut *with Subj.*

that, *of Purpose* (= *in order that*), ut *with Subj.* (*with a Comparative,* quō); that not, nē *with Subj.*

that, *of Result* (*after* so, such, *etc.*), ut *with Subj.;* that not, ut nōn *with Subj.* (*Consecutive Clauses of Fact*).

that, *in Substantive Clauses of Fact of Consecutive origin (originally full Result),* ut *with Subj.;* **that not,** ut nōn *with Subj.*

that, *in Substantive Clauses of Fact not of Consecutive origin,* quod *with Indic.;* **that not,** quod nōn *with Indic.*

that, *in Principal Statements in Indirect Discourse, expressed by using Infin.*

that of yours, iste, -a, -ud, **145,** *a* [645].

their, *Gen. Pl. of* is, **153** [646], ille, **145** [645], iste, **145,** *a* [645], *or* hic, **166** [648]; **their (own),** *Reflexive,* suus, -a, -um.

(they) themselves, *Intensive, Pl. of* ipse, -a, -um, **139** [644].

(of, *etc.*) themselves, *Reflexive,* suī, *etc.,* **215** [654].

then, tum; tunc.

theory, ratiō, -ōnis, F. 3.

there, *Expletive, not translated.*

there, *of Place,* ibi.

therefore, itaque.

thing *or* **things,** rēs, reī, F. 5, **395** [625]; *often translated by Neut. Pl. of Adjectives or Pronouns.*

think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4.

(way of) thinking, sententia, -ae, F. 1.

third, tertius, -a, -um.

this, hic, haec, hoc, **166** [648]; is, ea, id, **153** [646].

this morning, hodiē māne.

this of yours, iste, ista, istud, **145,** *a* [645].

thither, eō.

thoroughly frighten, thoroughly terrify, perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, 2.

though, *see* **although.**

thoughtless, temerārius, -a, -um.

three, trēs, tria, trium.

through, per *with Acc.*

throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, 3; mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3.

throw down, abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3.

thus, sīc; ita.

time, tempus, temporis, N. 3.

(at that) time, tum; tunc.

tire out, dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

Tivoli, Tībur, Tīburis, N. 3.

to, *generally expressed by Dat.; of Motion,* ad *with Acc.;* (=*into*) in *with Acc.*).

to, *of Purpose, translated by Dat.;* quī, quō, ut, *or* nē *with Subj.; Supine in* -um; ad *with Gerundive or Gerund;* causā *or* grātiā *with Gen. of Gerundive or Gerund; Fut. Pass. Partic. in agreement with object of verb.*

to a man, ad ūnum.

today, hodiē.

together, ūnā; inter sē.

too (=*also*), quoque, *postpos.*

too (= *too much*), nimis; *often translated by Compar.*

too late, sērō.

too much, nimis.

toward, ad *with Acc.;* in *with Acc.*

tower, turris, -is, -ium, F. 3, **278** [623].

town, oppidum, -ī, N. 2.

tranquil, tranquillus, -a, -um.

Treviri, Trēvirī, -ōrum, M. Pl. 2.

tribune, tribūnus, -ī, M. 2.

triumph, triumphus, -ī, M. 2.

trouble, incommodum, -ī, N. 2.

true, vērus, -a, -um.

trust, fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, 3, *and* cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, 3, *with Abl. or Dat. (of a Person, Dat. only).*

try, experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, 4.

turn, vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, 3.

two, duo, duae, duo, **328** [640].

two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

unarmed, inermis, -e.

under, sub, *of Motion toward with Acc.; of Place in which with Abl.*

under compulsion, coāctū, *Abl. of* coāctus, -ūs, M. 4.

undertake, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

undertaking, cōnātus, -ūs, M. 4.

unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um, *with Dat.*

unhappy, miser, misera, miserum.

unless, nisi.

until, dum, dōnec, quoad, *with Indic. of actual past acts, and Subj. of anticipated acts.*

unworthy, indignus, -a, -um, *with Abl.*

upon, in, *of Motion toward with Acc.; of Rest with Abl.*

upon *with a Participial Noun, translated by* cum *with Subj.;* ubi, ut, postquam, *or* simul atque, *with Indic.; Abl. Absolute; Perf. Pass. Partic. of Deponent Verb.*

urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

us, nōs, *Nom.-Acc. Pl. of* ego, **214** [654].

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, *with Abl.*

valley, vallis, -is, -ium, F. 3; convallis, -is, -ium, F. 3.

Vertico, Verticō, -ōnis, M. 3.

very, *Adj.*, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, **139** [644].

very, *Adv., expressed by Superl. or* maximē.

very much, plūrimum, *Acc. of degree, equivalent to an Adv. Superl. of* multum, *much,* **539** [638].

victory, victōria, -ae, F. 1.

vigorously, impigrē.

villa, vīlla, -ae, F. 1.

wage (*war*), gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

wait, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

wait for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

wall, mūrus, -ī, M. 2; vāllum, -ī, N. 2.

wander, vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1.

want, cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, 3; volō, velle, voluī, ——, *irr.,* **493** [665].

(not) want (*be unwilling*), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *irr.,* **493** [665].

war, bellum, -ī, N. 2.

(of) war, mīlitāris, -e.

warn, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, 2 [657].

watch, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

way (=*road or journey*), via, -ae, F. 1; iter, itineris, N. 3.

way (=*habit*), mōs, mōris, M. 3.

way (=*manner*), modus, -ī, M. 2.

way of thinking, sententia, -ae, F. 1.

(give) way, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3.

(in this) way, sīc; ita.

we, nōs, *Nom. Pl. of* ego, **214** [654].

weapons, arma, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2; (missile) **weapon,** tēlum, -ī, N. 2.

wear (=*carry, bear*), gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3.

weary, dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

(be) well, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

(feel) well, valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, 2.

well, bene.

what, *Interrog. Pron.,* quis, quid, *and Interrog. Adj.,* quī, quae, quod, **184** [649]; **what** (=*how great*), quantus, -a, -um.

whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, **192** [649, *a*].

wheel about, signa convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, 3.

when, ubi *or* ut, *with Indic.;* cum *with Indic. in Determinative Clause, Subj. in Descriptive; Abl. Absolute.*

where, ubi; **where** (=*from which*), unde.

whether .... or, sīve .... sīve (seu .... seu).

which (*of two*), uter, -tra, -trum, **130** [643].

which, *Rel.,* quī, quae, quod; *Interrog.,* quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), **184** [649].

while, dum, *with Present Indic. in narration.*

(after a) while, post aliquantum temporis.

(for a little) while, paulisper.

who, *Rel.,* quī, quae, quod, *Interrog.,* quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), **184** [649].

whole, tōtus, -a, -um, **130** [643]; omnis, -e.

why, cūr.

will, voluntās, -ātis, F. 3.

willingly, libenter.

wing, cornū, -ūs, N. 4, **369** [624].

winter, hiems, hiemis, F. 3.

winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

winter-camp, **winter-quarters,** hīberna, -ōrum, N. Pl. 2.

wisdom, cōnsilium, -ī, N. 2.

wish, cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, 3; volō, velle, voluī, ——, *irr.,* **493** [665].

with, cum *with Abl.; by Abl. alone to express Means, and (often) Manner,* **513,** *and Accompaniment,* **507,** *a;* (=*at the house of or among*) apud *with Acc.*

withdraw, dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3.

within, intrā *with Acc.*

without, sine *with Abl.*

without orders, iniussū.

witness, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

woman, fēmina, -ae. F. 1.

wood, woods, silva, -ae, F. 1.

word, verbum, -ī, N. 2; dictum, -ī, N. 2; (=*promise, faith, pledge*) fidēs, -eī, F. 5.

work, opus, operis, N. 3; labor, -ōris, M. 3.

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

worry, lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, 3.

worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *Superl. of* malus, **530** [635].

worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with Abl.*

would that, utinam *with Subj.*

wound, vulnus, vulneris, N. 3.

wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1.

write, scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, F. 1.

wrong-doing, maleficium, -ī, N. 2.

year, annus, -ī, M. 2.

yes, ita, etiam, vērō, certē, *etc.; or the answer may be given by repeating the verb.*

yesterday, herī.

yet, tamen.

not yet, nōndum.

yield, cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, 3, *with Dat.;* concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, 3, *with Dat.*

you, tū, tuī; *Pl.* vōs, *etc.,* **214** [654].

your, yours, *in speaking to one person,* tuus, -a, -um; *in speaking to more than one,* vester, -tra, -trum.

yourself, *Reflexive,* tuī, *etc., Pl.* vestrī, *etc.,* **215** [654].

zeal, studium, -ī, N. 2.

GIRLS PLAYING AT JACKSTONES
From a Painting found in Herculaneum
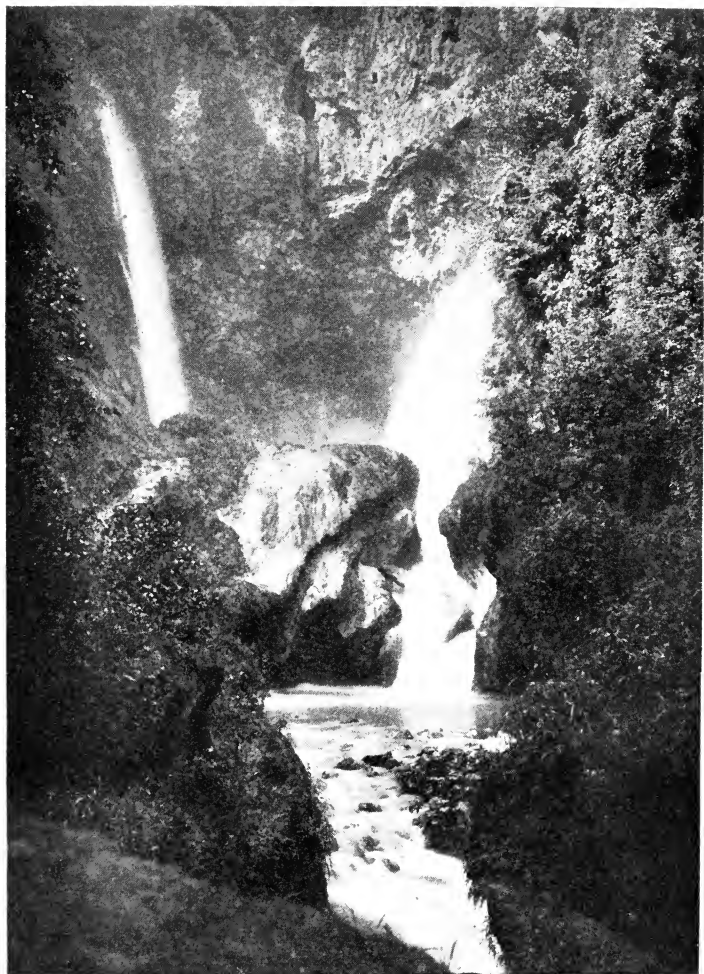
THE ANIO, AS IT FALLS BELOW TIVOLI

INDEX